World Health Organization Classification of Tumours

International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)

Pathology and Genetics of Tumours of the Digestive System

Edited by
Stanley R. Hamilton
Lauri A. Aaltonen

IARCPress
Lyon, 2000
World Health Organization Classification of Tumours

Series Editors  Paul Kleihues, M.D.
               Leslie H. Sobin, M.D.

Pathology and Genetics of Tumours of the Digestive System

Editors  Stanley R. Hamilton, M.D.
          Lauri A. Aaltonen, M.D., Ph.D.

Clinical Editor  René Lambert, M.D

Editorial Assistance  Wojciech Biernat, M.D.
                      Norman J. Carr, M.D.
                      Anna Sankila, M.D.

Layout  Sibylle Söring
        Felix Krönert

Illustrations  Georges Mollon
              Sibylle Söring

Printed by  Team Rush
            69603 Villeurbanne, France

Publisher  IARCPress
           International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)
           69372 Lyon, France
This volume was produced in collaboration with the

International Academy of Pathology (IAP)

and

with support from the

Swiss Federal Office of Public Health, Bern

The WHO Classification of Tumours of the Digestive System presented in this book reflects the views of a Working Group that convened for an Editorial and Consensus Conference in Lyon, France, November 6-9, 1999.

Members of the Working Group are indicated in the List of Contributors on page 253.
Contents

Diagnostic terms and definitions 8

1 Tumours of the oesophagus 9
   WHO and TNM classifications 10
   Squamous cell carcinoma 11
   Adenocarcinoma 20
   Endocrine tumours 26
   Lymphoma 27
   Mesenchymal tumours 28
   Secondary tumours and melanoma 30

2 Tumours of the oesophagogastric junction 31
   Adenocarcinoma 32

3 Tumours of the stomach 37
   WHO and TNM classifications 38
   Carcinoma 39
   Endocrine tumours 53
   Lymphoma 57
   Mesenchymal tumours 62
   Secondary tumours 66

4 Tumours of the small intestine 69
   WHO and TNM classifications 70
   Carcinoma 71
   Peutz-Jeghers syndrome 74
   Endocrine tumours 77
   B-cell lymphoma 83
   T-cell lymphoma 87
   Mesenchymal tumours 90
   Secondary tumours 91

5 Tumours of the appendix 93
   WHO and TNM classifications 94
   Adenocarcinoma 95
   Endocrine tumours 99
   Miscellaneous tumours 102

6 Tumours of the colon and rectum 103
   WHO and TNM classifications 104
   Carcinoma 105
   Familial adenomatous polyposis 120
   Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer 126
   Juvenile polyposis 130
   Cowden syndrome 132
   Hyperplastic polyposis 135
   Endocrine tumours 137
   B-cell lymphoma 139
   Mesenchymal tumours 142

7 Tumours of the anal canal 145
   WHO and TNM classifications 146
   Tumours of the anal canal 147

8 Tumours of the liver and intrahepatic bile ducts 157
   WHO and TNM classifications 158
   Hepatocellular carcinoma 159
   Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma 173
   Combined hepatocellular and cholangiocarcinoma 181
   Bile duct cystadenoma and cystadenocarcinoma 182
   Hepatoblastoma 184
   Lymphoma 190
   Mesenchymal tumours 191
   Secondary tumours 199

9 Tumours of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts 203
   WHO and TNM classifications 204
   Carcinoma 206
   Endocrine tumours 214
   Neural and mesenchymal tumours 216
   Lymphoma 217
   Secondary tumours and melanoma 217

10 Tumours of the exocrine pancreas 219
    WHO and TNM classifications 220
    Ductal adenocarcinoma 221
    Serous cystic neoplasms 231
    Mucinous cystic neoplasms 234
    Intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasm 237
    Acinar cell carcinoma 241
    Pancreatoblastoma 244
    Solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm 246
    Miscellaneous carcinomas 249
    Mesenchymal tumours 249
    Lymphoma 250
    Secondary tumours 250

Contributors 253
Source of charts and photographs 261
References 265
Subject index 307
Diagnostic terms and definitions

Intraepithelial neoplasia
A lesion characterized by morphological changes that include altered architecture and abnormalities in cytology and differentiation. It results from clonal alterations in genes and carries a predisposition for progression to invasion and metastasis.

High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia.
A mucosal change with cytologic and architectural features of malignancy but without evidence of invasion into the stroma. It includes lesions termed severe dysplasia and carcinoma in situ.

Polyp.
A generic term for any excrescence or growth protruding above a mucous membrane. Polyps can be pedunculated or sessile, and are readily seen by macroscopic examination or conventional endoscopy.

Adenoma.
A circumscribed benign lesion composed of tubular and/or villous structures showing intraepithelial neoplasia. The neoplastic epithelial cells are immature and typically have enlarged, hyperbasophilic and stratified nuclei.

Tubulovillous adenoma. An adenoma composed of both tubular and villous structures, each comprising more than 20% of the tumour.

Serrated adenoma. An adenoma composed of saw-toothed glands.

Intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia) associated with chronic inflammatory diseases.
A neoplastic glandular epithelial proliferation occurring in a patient with a chronic inflammatory bowel disease, but with macroscopic and microscopic features that distinguish it from an adenoma, e.g. patchy distribution of dysplasia and poor circumcision.

Peutz-Jeghers polyp.
A hamartomatous polyp composed of branching bands of smooth muscle covered by normal-appearing or hyperplastic glandular mucosa indigenous to the site.

Juvenile polyp.
A hamartomatous polyp with a spherical head composed of tubules and cysts, lined by normal epithelium, embedded in an excess of lamina propria. In juvenile polyposis, the polyps are often multilobulated with a papillary configuration and a higher ratio of glands to lamina propria.

Adenocarcinoma.
A malignant epithelial tumour with glandular differentiation.

Mucinous adenocarcinoma.
An adenocarcinoma containing extracellular mucin comprising more than 50% of the tumour. Note that ‘mucin producing’ is not synonymous with mucinous in this context.

Signet-ring cell carcinoma.
An adenocarcinoma in which the predominant component (more than 50%) is composed of isolated malignant cells containing intracytoplasmic mucin.

Squamous cell (epidermoid) carcinoma.
A malignant epithelial tumour with squamous cell differentiation.

Adenosquamous carcinoma.
A malignant epithelial tumour with significant components of both glandular and squamous differentiation.

Small cell carcinoma.
A malignant epithelial tumour similar in morphology, immunophenotype and behaviour to small cell carcinoma of the lung.

Medullary carcinoma.
A malignant epithelial tumour in which the cells form solid sheets and have abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm and large, vesicular nuclei with prominent nucleoli. An intraepithelial infiltrate of lymphocytes is characteristic.

Undifferentiated carcinoma.
A malignant epithelial tumour with no glandular structures or other features to indicate definite differentiation.

Carcinoid.
A well differentiated neoplasm of the diffuse endocrine system.

---

1 This list of terms is proposed to be used for the entire digestive system and reflects the view of the Working Group convened in Lyon, 6 – 9 November, 1999. Terminology evolves with scientific progress; the terms listed here reflect current understanding of the process of malignant transformation in the digestive tract. The Working Group anticipates a further convergence of diagnostic terms throughout the digestive system.

2 In an attempt to resolve confusion surrounding the terms ‘dysplasia,’ ‘carcinoma in situ,’ and ‘atypia’, the Working Group adopted the term ‘intraepithelial neoplasia’ to indicate preinvasive neoplastic change of the epithelium. The diagnosis does not exclude the possibility of coexisting carcinoma. Intraepithelial neoplasia should not be used as a generic description of epithelial abnormalities due to reactive or regenerative changes.
CHAPTER 1

Tumours of the Oesophagus

Carcinomas of the oesophagus pose a considerable medical and public health challenge in many parts of the world. Morphologically and aetiologically, two major types are distinguished:

Squamous cell carcinoma
In Western countries, oesophageal carcinomas with squamous cell differentiation typically arise after many years of tobacco and alcohol abuse. They frequently carry G:C >T:A mutations of the \textit{TP53} gene. Other causes include chronic mucosal injury through hot beverages and malnutrition, but the very high incidence rates observed in Iran and some African and Asian regions remain inexplicable.

Adenocarcinoma
Oesophageal carcinomas with glandular differentiation are typically located in the distal oesophagus and occur predominantly in white males of industrialized countries, with a marked tendency for increasing incidence rates. The most important aetiological factor is chronic gastro-oesophageal reflux leading to Barrett type mucosal metaplasia, the most common precursor lesion of adenocarcinoma.
### WHO histological classification of oesophageal tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Epithelial tumours</th>
<th>Non-epithelial tumours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell papilloma</td>
<td>Leiomyma 8890/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
<td>Lipoma 8850/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous</td>
<td>Granular cell tumour 9580/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glandular (adenoma)</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal stromal tumour 8936/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma</td>
<td>benign 8936/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td>uncertain malignant potential 8936/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verrucous (squamous) carcinoma</td>
<td>malignant 8936/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basaloid squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td>Leiomyosarcoma 8890/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spindle cell (squamous) carcinoma</td>
<td>Rhabdomyosarcoma 8900/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma 9140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenosquamous carcinoma</td>
<td>Malignant melanoma 8720/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucopidermoid carcinoma</td>
<td>Others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenoid cystic carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small cell carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoid tumour</td>
<td>8240/3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### TNM classification of oesophageal tumours

#### TNM classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T – Primary Tumour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N – Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M – Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For tumours of upper thoracic oesophagus:
- M1a Metastasis in cervical lymph nodes |
- M1b Other distant metastasis

For tumours of mid-thoracic oesophagus:
- M1a Not applicable |
- M1b Non-regional lymph node or other distant metastasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage Grouping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (542) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour, /2 for in situ carcinomas and grade III intraepithelial neoplasia, and /3 for malignant tumours.

2. Intraepithelial neoplasia does not have a generic code in ICD-O. ICD-O codes are available only for lesions categorized as glandular intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8148/2), squamous intraepithelial neoplasia, grade III (8077/2), and squamous cell carcinoma in situ (8070/2).

---

1. (1) (66). This classification applies only to carcinomas.

A help desk for specific questions about the TNM classification is available at http://tnm.uicc.org.
Squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus

Definition
Squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) of the oesophagus is a malignant epithelial tumour with squamous cell differentiation, microscopically characterised by keratinocyte-like cells with intercellular bridges and/or keratinization.

ICD-O Code 8070/3

Epidemiology
Squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus shows great geographical diversity in incidence, mortality and sex ratio. In Western countries, the age-standardized annual incidence in most areas does not exceed 5 per 100,000 population in males and 1 in females. There are, however, several well-defined high-risk areas, e.g. Normandy and Calvados in North-West France, and Northern Italy, where incidence may be as high as 30 per 100,000 population in males and 2 in females (1020, 1331). This type of cancer is much more frequent in Eastern countries and in many developing countries. Regions with very high incidence rates have been identified in Iran, Central China, South Africa and Southern Brazil. In the city of Zhengzhou, capital of Henan province in China, the mortality rate exceeds 100 per 100,000 population in males and 50 in females (1116, 2191).

In both high-risk and low-risk regions, this cancer is exceedingly rare before the age of 30 and the median age is around 65 in both males and females. Recent changes in the distribution pattern in France indicate that the rate of SCC has increased steadily in low-risk areas, particularly among females, whereas there may be a slight decrease in high-risk areas. In the United States, a search in hospitalisation records of military veterans indicates that SCC is 2-3 times more frequent among blacks than among Asians, Whites or Native Americans (453).

Aetiology
Tobacco and alcohol. In Western countries, nearly 90% of the risk of SCC can be attributed to tobacco and alcohol. Each of these factors influences the risk of oesophageal cancer in a different way. With regard to the consumption of tobacco, a moderate intake during a long period carries a higher risk than a high intake during a shorter period, whereas the reverse is true for alcohol. Both factors combined show a multiplicative effect, even at low alcohol intake. In high-risk areas of North-West France and Northern Italy, local drinking customs may partially explain the excess incidence of SCC (523, 1020). In Japanese alcoholics, a polymorphism in ALDH2, the gene encoding aldehyde dehydrogenase 2, has been shown to be significantly associated with several cancers of the upper digestive tract, including squamous cell cancer. This observation suggests a role for acetaldehyde, one of the main carcinogenic metabolites of alcohol in the development of oesophageal carcinoma (2177).

Nutrition. Risk factors other than tobacco and alcohol play significant roles in other regions of the world. In high-risk areas of China, a deficiency in certain trace elements and the consumption of pickled or mouldy foods (which are potential sources of nitrosamines) have been suggested.

Hot beverages. Worldwide, one of the most common risk factors appears to be the consumption of burning-hot beverages (such as Mate tea in South America) which cause thermal injury leading to chronic oesophagitis and then to precancerous lesions (1116, 2191, 387).

HPV. Conflicting reports have proposed a role for infectious agents, including human papillomavirus (HPV) infection. Although HPV DNA is consistently detected in 20 to 40% of SCC in high-risk areas of China, it is generally absent in the cancers arising in Western countries (954, 679).

Fig. 1.01 Worldwide annual incidence (per 100,000) of oesophageal cancer in males. Numbers on the map indicate regional average values.

Fig. 1.02 Squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus. Age-standardized incidence rates per 100,000 and proportions (%) due to alcohol and tobacco (dark-blue).
Associations between achalasia, Plummer-Vinson syndrome, coeliac disease and tylosis (focal nonepidermolytic palmo-plantar keratoderma) with oesophageal cancer have also been described.

**Localization**

Oesophageal SCC is located predominantly in the middle and the lower third of the oesophagus, only 10-15% being situated in the upper third (1055).

**Clinical features**

**Symptoms and signs**

The most common symptoms of advanced oesophageal cancer are dysphagia, weight loss, retrosternal or epigastric pain, and regurgitation caused by narrowing of the oesophageal lumen by tumour growth (606). Superficial SCC usually has no specific symptoms but sometimes causes a tingling sensation, and is, therefore, often detected incidentally during upper gastrointestinal endoscopy (464, 1874).

**Endoscopy and vital staining**

Superficial oesophageal cancer is commonly observed as a slight elevation or shallow depression on the mucosal surface, which is a minor morphological change compared to that of advanced cancer. Macroscopically, three types can be distinguished: flat, polypoid and ulcerated. Chromoendoscopy utilizing toluidine blue or Lugol iodine spray may be of value (465, 481). Toluidine blue, a metachromatic stain from the thiazine group, has a particular affinity for RNA and DNA, and stains areas that are richer in nuclei than the normal mucosa. Lugol solution reacts specifically with glycogen in the normal squamous epithelium, whereas precancerous and cancerous lesions, but also inflamed areas and gastric heterotopia, are not stained. However, the superficial extension of carcinomas confined to the mucosa can not be clearly recognized by simple endoscopy.

**Endoscopic ultrasonography**

Endoscopic ultrasonography is used to evaluate both depth of tumour infiltration and para-oesophageal lymph node involvement in early and advanced stages of the disease (1509, 1935). For the evaluation of the depth of infiltration, high frequency endoscopic ultrasonography may be used (1302). In general,
oesophageal carcinoma presents on endosonography as a circumscribed or diffuse wall thickening with a predominantly echo-poor or echo-inhomogeneous pattern. As a result of tumour penetration through the wall and into surrounding structures, the endosonographic wall layers are destroyed.

**Computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)**

In advanced carcinomas, CT and MRI give information on local and systemic spread of SCC. Tumour growth is characterized as swelling of the oesophageal wall, with or without direct invasion to surrounding organs (1518). Cervical, abdominal and mediastinal node enlargement is recorded. Three-dimensional CT or MRI images may be presented as virtual endoscopy, effectively demonstrating T2-T4 lesions, but not T1 lesions.

**Macrosopic**

The gross appearance varies according to whether it is detected in an early or an advanced stage of the disease. Among early SCC, polypoid, plaque-like, depressed and occult lesions have been described (161, 2183). For the macroscopic classification of advanced oesophageal SCC, Ming (1236) has proposed three major patterns: fungating, ulcerative, and infiltrating. The fungating pattern is characterized by a predominantly exophytic growth, whereas in the ulcerative pattern, the tumour growth is predominantly intramural, with a central ulceration and elevated ulcer edges. The infiltrative pattern, which is the least common one, also shows a predominantly intramural growth, but causes only a small mucosal defect. Similar types of macroscopic growth patterns have been defined in the classification of the Japanese Society for Esophageal Diseases (58).

**Tumour spread and staging**

For the staging of SCC, the TNM system (tumour, node, metastasis) established by the International Union Against Cancer (UICC) is the most widely used system. Its usefulness in the planning of treatment and in the prediction of prognosis has been validated (1104, 895, 66, 1, 772).

**Superficial oesophageal carcinoma.** When the tumour is confined to the mucosa or the submucosa, the term superficial oesophageal carcinoma is used irrespective of the presence of regional lymph node metastases (58, 161). In China and in Japan, the term early oesophageal carcinoma is often used defining a carcinoma that invades no deeper than the submucosa but has not metastasised (609). In several studies from Japan, superficial carcinomas accounted for 10-20% of all resected carcinomas, whereas in Western countries superficial carcinomas are much less frequently reported (543). About 5% of superficial carcinomas that have invaded the lamina propria display lymph node metastases, whereas in carcinomas that invade the submucosa the risk of nodal metastasis is about 35% (1055). For tumours that have infiltrated beyond the submucosa, the term advanced oesophageal carcinoma is applied.

**Intramural metastases.** A special feature of oesophageal SCC is the occurrence of intramural metastases, which have been found in resected oesophageal specimens in 11-16% of cases (896, 987). These metastases are thought to result from intramural lymphatic spread with the establishment of secondary intramural tumour deposits. Intramural metastases are associated with an advanced stage of disease and with shorter survival.

**Second primary SCC.** Additionally, the occurrence of multiple independent SCC has been described in between 14 and 31% of cases, the second cancers being mainly carcinomas in situ and superficial SCC (1154, 989, 1507).

**Treatment groups.** Following the clinical staging, patients are usually divided into two treatment groups: those with locoregional disease in whom the tumour is potentially curable (e.g. by surgery, radiotherapy, multimodal therapy), and those with advanced disease (metastases outside the regional area or invasion of the airway) in whom only palliative treatment is indicated (606). Oesophageal SCC limited to the mucosa may be treated by endoscopic mucosal resection due to its low risk of nodal metastasis. Endoscopic mucosal resection is also indicated for high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia. Tumours that have invaded the submucosa or those in more advanced tumour stages have
Tumours of the oesophagus

more than 30% risk of lymph node metastasis, and endoscopic therapy is not indicated (465). Additionally, clinical staging is performed in order to determine the success of treatment, e.g. following radio- and/or chemotherapy.

Tumour spread
The most common sites of metastasis of oesophageal SCC are the regional lymph nodes. The risk of lymph node metastasis is about 5% in carcinomas confined to the mucosa but over 30% in carcinomas invading the submucosa and over 80% in carcinomas invading adjacent organs or tissues (772). Lesions of the upper third of the oesophagus most frequently involve cervical and mediastinal lymph nodes, whereas those of the middle third metastasise to the mediastinal, cervical and upper gastric lymph nodes. Carcinomas of the lower third preferentially spread to the lower mediastinal and the abdominal lymph nodes (28). The most common sites of haematogenous metastases are the lung and the liver (1153, 1789). Less frequently affected sites are the bones, adrenal glands, and brain (1551). Recently, disseminated tumour cells were identified by means of immunostaining in the bone marrow of about 40% of patients with oesophageal SCC (1933). Recurrence of cancer following oesophageal resection can be locoregional or distant, both with approximately equal frequency (1185, 1027).

Histopathology
Oesophageal SCC is defined as the penetration of neoplastic squamous epithelium through the epithelial basement membrane and extension into the lamina propria or deeper tissue layers. Invasion commonly starts from a carcinoma in situ with the proliferation of rete-like projections of neoplastic epithelium that push into the lamina propria with subsequent dissociation into small carcinomatous cell clusters. Along with vertical tumour cell infiltration, usually a horizontal growth undermines the adjacent normal mucosa at the tumour periphery. The carcinoma may already invade intramural lymphatic vessels and veins at an early stage of disease. The frequency of lymphatic and blood vessel invasion increases with increasing depth of invasion (1662). Tumour cells in lymphatic vessels and in blood vessels may be found progressively several centimetres beyond the gross tumour. The carcinoma invades the muscular layers, enters the loose fibrous adventitia and may extend beyond the adventitia, with invasion of adjacent organs or tissues, especially the trachea and bronchi, eventually with the formation of oesophagegotracheal or oesophagobronchial fistulae (1789).

Oesophageal SCC displays different microscopic patterns of invasion, which are categorised as ‘expansive growth’ or ‘infiltrative growth’. The former pattern is characterised by a broad and smooth invasion front with little or no tumour cell dissociation, whereas the infiltrative pattern shows an irregular invasion front and a marked tumour cell dissociation. The degree of desmoplastic or inflammatory stromal reaction, nuclear polymorphism and keratinization is extremely variable. Additionally, otherwise typical oesophageal SCC may contain small foci of glandular differentiation, indicated by the formation of tubular glands or mucin-producing tumour cells (987).

Verrucous carcinoma (ICD-O 8051/3)
This rare variant of squamous cell carcinoma (19) is histologically comparable to verrucous carcinomas arising at other sites (969). On gross examination, its appearance is exophytic, warty, cauliflower-like or papillary. It can be found in any part of the oesophagus. Histologically, it is defined as a malignant papillary tumour composed of well differentiated and keratinized squamous epithelium with minimal cytological atypia, and pushing rather than infiltrating margins (2066). Oesophageal verrucous carcinoma grows slowly and invades locally, with a very low metastasising potential.

Spindle cell carcinoma (ICD-O 8094/3)
This unusual malignancy is defined as a squamous cell carcinoma with a variable sarcomatoid spindle cell component. It is also known by a variety of other terms, including carcinosarcoma, pseudosarcomatous squamous cell carcinoma, polypoid carcinoma, and squamous cell carcinoma with a spindle cell component (1055). Macroscopically, the tumour is characterized by a polypoid growth pattern. The spindle cells may be capable of maturation, forming bone, cartilage and skeletal muscle cells (662). Alternatively, they may be more pleomorphic, resembling malignant fibrous histiocytoma. In the majority of cases a gradual transition between carcinomatous and sarcomatous components has been observed on the light microscopic level. Immunohistochemical and electron microscopic studies indicate that the sarcomatous spindle cells show various degrees of epithelial differentiation. Therefore, the sarcoma-
tous component may be metaplastic. However, a recent molecular analysis of a single case of a spindle cell carcinoma showed divergent genetic alterations in the carcinomatous and in the sarcomatous tumour component suggesting two independent malignant cell clones [823].

**Basaloid squamous cell carcinoma (ICD-O 8083/3)**

This rare but distinct variant of oesophageal SCC [1961] appears to be identical to the basaloid squamous cell carcinomas of the upper aerodigestive tract [109]. Histologically, it is composed of closely packed cells with hyperchromatic nuclei and scant basophilic cytoplasm, which show a solid growth pattern, small gland-like spaces and foci of comedo-type necrosis. Basaloid squamous cell carcinomas are associated with intraepithelial neoplasia, invasive SCC, or islands of squamous differentiation among the basaloid cells [2036]. The proliferative activity is higher than in typical SCC. However, basaloid squamous cell carcinoma is also characterized by a high rate of apoptosis and its prognosis does not differ significantly from that of the ordinary oesophageal SCC [1663].

**Precursor lesions**

Most studies on precursor lesions of oesophageal SCC have been carried out in high-risk populations, especially in Iran and Northern China, but there is no evidence that precursor lesions in low-risk regions are substantially different. The development of oesophageal SCC is thought to be a multistage process which progresses from the conversion of normal squamous epithelium to that with basal cell hyperplasia, intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia and carcinoma in situ), and, finally, invasive SCC [354, 1547, 377].

**Intraepithelial neoplasia.** This lesion is about eight times more common in high cancer-risk areas than in low-risk areas [1547], and is frequently found adjacent to invasive SCC in oesophagectomy specimens [1154, 988]. Morphological features of intraepithelial neoplasia include both architectural and cytological abnormalities. The architectural abnormality is characterized by a disorganization of the epithelium and loss of normal cell polarity. Cytologically, the cells exhibit irregular and hyperchromatic nuclei, an increase in nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio and increased mitotic activity. Dysplasia is usually graded as low or high-grade. In low-grade dysplasia, the abnormalities are often confined to the lower half of the epithelium, whereas in high-grade dysplasia the abnormal cells also occur in the upper half and exhibit a greater degree of atypia. In carcinoma in situ, the atypical cells are present throughout the epithelium without evidence of maturation at the surface of the epithelium [1154]. In a two-tier system, severe dysplasia and carcinoma-in-situ are included under the rubric of high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia, and may have the same clinical implications [1055]. Epidemiological follow-up studies suggest an increased risk for the subsequent development of invasive SCC for patients with basal cell hyperplasia (relative risk: 2.1), low-grade dysplasia (RR: 2.2), moderate-grade dysplasia (RR: 15.8), high-grade dysplasia (RR: 72.6) and carcinoma in situ (RR: 62.5) [377].

---

![Fig. 1.10 Spindle cell carcinoma. A Typical polypoid appearance. B Transition between conventional and spindle cells areas. C Malignant fibrous histiocytoma-like area in a spindle cell carcinoma.](image1)

![Fig. 1.11 Basaloid squamous cell carcinoma. A Typical comedo-type necrosis. B Small gland-like structures.](image2)

![Fig. 1.12 Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia with an increase in basal cells, loss of polarity in the deep epithelium and slight cytological atypia.](image3)
Basal cell hyperplasia

This lesion is histologically defined as an otherwise normal squamous epithelium with a basal zone thickness greater than 15% of total epithelial thickness, without elongation of lamina propria papillae (377). In most cases, basal cell hyperplasia is an epithelial proliferative lesion in response to oesophagitis, which is frequently observed in high-risk populations for oesophageal cancer (1547).

Squamous cell papilloma (ICD-O 8052/0)

Squamous cell papilloma is rare and usually causes no specific symptoms. It is a benign tumour composed of hyperplastic squamous epithelium covering finger-like processes with cores derived from the lamina propria. The polypoid lesions are smooth, sharply demarcated, and usually 5 mm or less in maximum diameter (249, 1428). Rarely, giant papillomas have been reported, with sizes up to 5 cm (2037). Most squamous cell papillomas represent single isolated lesions, typically located in the distal to middle third of the oesophagus, but multiple lesions occur.

Histologically, cores of fibrovascular tissue are covered by mature stratified squamous epithelium. The aetiological role of human papillomavirus (HPV) infection has been investigated in several studies, but the results were inconclusive (248). Malignant progression to SCC is extremely rare.

In Japan, oesophageal squamous cell carcinoma is diagnosed mainly based on nuclear criteria, even in cases judged to be non-invasive intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia) in the West. This difference in diagnostic practice may contribute to the relatively high rate of incidence and good prognosis of superficial squamous cell carcinoma reported in Japan (1682).

Grading

Grading of oesophageal SCC is traditionally based on the parameters of mitotic activity, anisonucleosis and degree of differentiation.

Well differentiated tumours have cytological and histological features similar to those of the normal oesophageal squamous epithelium. In well differentiated oesophageal SCC there is a high proportion of large, differentiated, keratinocyte-like squamous cells and a low proportion of small basal-type cells, which are located in the periphery of the cancer cell nests (1055). The occurrence of keratinization has been interpreted as a sign of differentiation, although the normal oesophageal squamous epithelium does not keratinize.

Poorly differentiated tumours predominantly consist of basal-type cells, which usually exhibit a high mitotic rate.

Moderately differentiated carcinomas, between the well and poorly differentiated types, are the most common type, accounting for about two-thirds of all oesophageal SCC. However, since no generally accepted criteria have been identified to score the relative contribution of the different grading parameters, grading of SCC suffers from a great interobserver variation.

Undifferentiated carcinomas are defined by a lack of definite light microscopic features of differentiation. However, ultrastructural or immunohistochemical investigations may disclose features of squamous differentiation in a subset of light-microscopically undifferentiated carcinomas (1881).
Genetic susceptibility
Familial predisposition of oesophageal cancer has been only poorly studied except in its association with focal non-epidermolytic palmo-plantar keratoderma (NEPPK or tylosis) [1279, 1278, 752]. This autosomal, dominantly inherited disorder of the palmar and plantar surfaces of the skin segregates together with oesophageal cancer in three pedigrees, two of which are extensive [456, 1834, 693]. The causative locus has been designated the tylosis oesophageal cancer (TOC) gene and maps to 17q25 between the anonymous microsatellite markers D17S1839 and D17S785 [1594, 899]. The genetic defect is thought to be in a molecule involved in the physical structure of stratified squamous epithelia whereby loss of function of the gene may alter oesophageal integrity thereby making it more susceptible to environmental mutagens. Several structural candidate genes such as envoplakin (EVPL), integrin β4 (ITGB4) and plakoglobin have been excluded as the TOC gene following integration of the genetic and physical maps of this region [1595]. The importance of this gene in a larger population than those afflicted with the familial disease is indicated by the association of the genomic region containing the TOC gene with sporadic squamous cell oesophageal carcinomas [2020, 823], Barrett adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus [439], and primary breast cancers [549] using loss of heterozygosity studies.

Genetics
Alterations in genes that encode regulators of the G1 to S transition of cell cycle are common in SCC. Mutation in the TP53 gene (17p13) is thought to be an early event, sometimes already detectable in intraepithelial neoplasia. The frequency and type of mutation varies from one geographic area to the other, suggesting that some TP53 mutations may occur as the result of exposure to region-specific, exogenous risk factors. However, even in SCC from Western Europe, the TP53 mutation spectrum does not show the same tobacco-associated mutations as in lung cancers [1266]. Amplification of cyclin D1 (11q13) occurs in 20-40% of SCC and is frequently detected in cancers that retain expression of the Rb protein, in agreement with the notion that these two factors cooperate within the same signalling cascade [859]. Inactivation of CDKN2A occurs essentially by homozygous deletion or de novo methylation and appears to be associated with advanced cancer. Other potentially important genetic alterations include transcriptional inactivation of the FHIT gene (fragile histidine triad, a presumptive tumour suppressor on 3p14) by methylation of 5’ CpG islands, and deletion of the tylosis oesophageal cancer gene on 17q25 [2020, 1264]. Furthermore, analysis of clones on 3p13.3, where frequent LOH occurs in oesophageal cancer [1274], recently led to identification of a novel gene termed DLC1 (deleted in lung and oesophageal cancer-1) [365]. Although the function of the DLC1 gene remains to be clarified, RT-PCR experiments indicated that 33% of primary cancers of lung and oesophagus lacked DLC1 transcripts entirely or contained increased levels of non-functional DLC1 mRNA. Recent evidence suggests that LOH at a new, putative tumour suppressor locus on 5p15 may occur in a majority of SCC [1497]. Amplification of several proto-oncogenes has also been reported (HST-1, HST-2, EGFR, MYC) [1266]. How these various genetic events correlate with phenotypic variations in SCC is not yet clear.

Fig. 1.15 Squamous cell carcinoma. A Moderately differentiated. B Well differentiated with prominent lymphoid infiltrate. C Well differentiated areas (left) contrast with immature basal-type cells of a poorly differentiated carcinoma (right).

Fig. 1.16 Location of the tylosis oesophageal cancer gene on chromosome 17q.
changes and co operate in the sequence of events leading to SCC is still speculative.

Prognosis and prognostic factors
Overall, the prognosis of oesophageal SCC is poor and the 5-year survival rates in registries are around 10%. Cure is foreseen only for superficial cancer. The survival varies, depending upon tumour stage at diagnosis, treatment received, patient’s general health status, morphological features and molecular features of the tumour. In the past, studies on prognostic factors were largely focused on patients who were treated by surgery, whereas factors influencing survival of patients treated by radiotherapy or by multimodal therapy have been investigated only rarely.

Morphological factors
The extent of spread of the oesophageal SCC is the most important factor for prognosis, the TNM classification being the most widely used staging system.

Staging. All studies indicate that the depth of invasion and the presence of nodal or distant metastases are independent predictors of survival [1104, 895, 772]. In particular, lymph node involvement, regardless of the extent of the primary tumour, indicates a poor prognosis [1862, 912, 1873]. More recently, the prognostic significance of more sophisticated methods for the determination of tumour spread have been evaluated, including the ratio of involved to resected lymph nodes (1603), immunohistochemically determined lymph node micrometastases (824, 1327) and micrometastases in the bone marrow (1933). However, current data are still too limited to draw final conclusions on the prognostic value.

Differentiation. The prognostic impact of tumour differentiation is equivocal, possibly due to the poor standardisation of the grading system and to the high prognostic power of tumour stage. Although some studies have shown a significant influence of tumour grade on survival [709, 772], the majority of studies have not [443, 1858, 1601, 1660]. Other histopathological features associated with a poor prognosis include the presence of vascular and/or lymphatic invasion [772, 1662] and an infiltrative growth pattern of the primary tumour [1660].

Lymphocytic infiltration. Intense lympho-
cytic response to the tumour has been associated with a better prognosis [1660, 443].

Proliferation. The cancer cell proliferation index, determined immunohistochemically by antibodies such as PCNA or Ki-67/MIB-1, have been studied extensively. However, the proliferation index does not appear to be an independent prognostic factor [2189, 1005, 1659, 779].

DNA ploidy. Aneuploidy of cancer cells, as determined by flow cytometry or by image analysis, has been identified in 55% to 95% of oesophageal SCC [935]. Regarding the prognostic impact, patients with diploid tumours usually survive longer than those with aneuploid tumours. However, a prognostic impact independent of tumour stage has been shown only in two studies [422, 1195], whereas the majority of studies have not verified this.

Table 1.01
Genetic alterations in squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Tumor abnormality</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TP53</td>
<td>17p13</td>
<td>Point mutation, LOH</td>
<td>G1 arrest, apoptosis, genetic stability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p16, p15, ARF/CDKN2</td>
<td>9p22</td>
<td>Homozygous loss, Promoter methylation</td>
<td>CDK inhibitor (cell cycle control)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclin D1</td>
<td>11q13</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>Cell cycle control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR</td>
<td>17p13</td>
<td>Amplification, overexpression</td>
<td>Signal transduction (membrane Tyr kinase)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c-myc</td>
<td>8q24.1</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>Transcription factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rb</td>
<td>13q14</td>
<td>LOH, Absence of expression</td>
<td>Cell cycle control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOC</td>
<td>17q25</td>
<td>LOH</td>
<td>Tumour suppressor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEZ1</td>
<td>8p22</td>
<td>Transcription shutdown</td>
<td>Transcription factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DLC1</td>
<td>3p21.3</td>
<td>Transcription shutdown</td>
<td>Growth inhibition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Fig. 1.17 Spectrum of TP53 mutations in squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) and adenocarcinoma (ADC) of the oesophagus.](image-url)
finding (935). Therefore, the determination of DNA ploidy is currently not considered to improve the prognostic information provided by the TNM system (1055).

**Extent of resection.** The frequency of locoregional recurrence is negatively correlated with the distance of the primary tumour to the proximal resection margin and possibly to preoperative chemotherapy (1890, 1027).

**Molecular factors**

The TP53 gene is mutated in 35% to 80% of oesophageal SCC (1266). Whereas some studies indicated a negative prognostic influence of p53 protein accumulation in cancer cell nuclei (1743, 277), others did not observe any prognostic value of either immunoreexpression or TP53 mutation (2014, 1661, 1008, 779, 319). Other potential prognostic factors include growth factors and their receptors (927), oncogenes, including c-erbB-2 and int-2 (778), cell cycle regulators (1748, 1297), tumour suppressor genes (1886), redox defence system components, e.g., metallothionein and heat shock proteins (897), and matrix proteinases (1303, 1947, 2155). Alterations of these factors in oesophageal SCC may enhance tumour cell proliferation, invasiveness, and metastatic potential, and thus may be associated with survival. However, none of the factors tested so far has entered clinical practice.

---

**Fig. 1.18** TP53 immunoreactivity in squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus.

**Fig. 1.19** Immunoreactivity for epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) in oesophageal squamous cell carcinoma.

**Fig. 1.20** Fluorescence in situ hybridisation demonstrating cyclin D1 in squamous carcinoma cells.

**Fig. 1.18**

TP53 immunoreactivity in squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus.

**Fig. 1.19**

Immunoreactivity for epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) in oesophageal squamous cell carcinoma.

**Fig. 1.20**

Fluorescence in situ hybridisation demonstrating cyclin D1 in squamous carcinoma cells.

**Fig. 1.21** Putative sequence of genetic alterations in the development of squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus.

---

Multiple LOH
Amplification of CMYC, EGFR, CYCLIN D1, HST1...

Overexpression of CYCLIN D1
LOH at 3p21; LOH at 9p31

TP53 mutations

LOH 3p14 (FHIT); LOH 17q25 (TOC)

Normal oesophagus  Oesophagitis  Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia  High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia  Invasive SCC
**Adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus**

**Definition**
A malignant epithelial tumour of the oesophagus with glandular differentiation arising predominantly from Barrett mucosa in the lower third of the oesophagus. Infrequently, adenocarcinoma originates from heterotopic gastric mucosa in the upper oesophagus, or from mucosal and submucosal glands.

**ICD-O Code** 8140/3

**Epidemiology**
In industrialized countries, the incidence and prevalence of adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus has risen dramatically (1827). Population based studies in the U.S.A. and several European countries indicate that the incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma has doubled between the early 1970s to the late 1980s and continues to increase at a rate of about 5% to 10% per year (152, 153, 370, 405, 1496). This is paralleled by rising rates of adenocarcinoma of the gastric cardia and of subcardial gastric carcinoma. It has been estimated that the rate of increase of oesophageal and oesophagogastric junction adenocarcinoma in the U.S.A. during the past decade surpassed that of any other type of cancer (152). In the mid 1990s the incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma has been estimated between 1 and 4 per 100,000 per year in the U.S.A. and several European countries and thus approaches or exceeds that of squamous cell oesophageal cancer in these regions. In Asia and Africa, adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus is an uncommon finding, but increasing rates are also reported from these areas.

In addition to the rise in incidence, adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus and of the oesophagogastric junction share some epidemiological characteristics that clearly distinguish them from squamous cell oesophageal carcinoma and adenocarcinoma of the distal stomach. These include a high preponderance for the male sex (male:female ratio 7:1), a higher incidence among whites and an average age at the time of diagnosis of around 65 years (1756).

**Aetiology**
**Barrett oesophagus**
The epidemiological features of adenocarcinoma of the distal oesophagus and oesophagogastric junction match those of patients with known intestinal metaplasia in the distal oesophagus, i.e. Barrett oesophagus (1605, 1827), which has been identified as the single most important precursor lesion and risk factor for adenocarcinoma of the distal oesophagus, irrespective of the length of the segment with intestinal metaplasia.

**Intestinal metaplasia** of the oesophagus develops when the normal squamous oesophageal epithelium is replaced by columnar epithelium during the process of healing after repetitive injury to the oesophageal mucosa, typically associated with gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (1798, 1799). Intestinal metaplasia can be detected in more than 80% of patients with adenocarcinoma of the distal oesophagus (1756, 1824). A series of prospective endoscopic surveillance studies in patients with known intestinal metaplasia of the distal oesophagus has shown an incidence of oesophageal adenocarcinoma in the order of 1/100 years of follow up (1799). This translates into a life-time risk for oesophageal adenocarcinoma of about 10% in these patients. The length of the oesophageal segment with intestinal metaplasia, and the presence of ulcerations and strictures have been implicated as further risk factors for the development of oesophageal adenocarcinoma by some authors, but this has not been confirmed by others (1799, 1797, 1827). The biological significance of so-called ultrashort Barrett oesophagus or intestinal metaplasia just beneath a normal Z line has yet to be fully clarified (1325).

Whether adenocarcinoma of the gastric cardia or subcardial gastric cancer is also related to foci of intestinal metaplasia at or immediately below the gastric cardia (715, 1797, 1722) is discussed in the chapter on adenocarcinoma of the oesophago gastric junction. Despite the broad advocation of endoscopic surveillance in patients with known Barrett oesophagus, more than 50% of patients with oesophageal adenocarcinoma still have locally advanced or metastatic disease at the time of presentation (1826).

**Chronic gastro-oesophageal reflux** is the usual underlying cause of the repetitive mucosal injury and also provides an abnormal environment during the healing process that predisposes to intestinal metaplasia (1799). Data from Sweden have shown an odds ratio of 7.7 for oesophageal adenocarcinoma in persons with recurrent reflux symptoms, as compared with persons without such symptoms (1002, 1001). The more frequent, more severe, and longer-lasting the symptoms of reflux, the greater the risk. Among persons with long-standing and severe symptoms of reflux, the odds ratio for oesophageal adenocarcinoma was 43.5. Based on these data a strong and probably causal relation between gastro-oesophageal reflux, one of the most common benign disorders of the digestive tract, and oesophageal adenocarcinoma has been postulated.

Factors predisposing for the development of Barrett oesophagus and subsequent adenocarcinoma in patients with gastrointestinal reflux disease include a markedly increased oesophageal exposure time to refluxed gastric and duodenal contents due to a defective barrier function of the lower oesophageal sphincter and ineffective clearance function of the tubular oesophagus (1823, 1827). Experimental and clinical data indicate that combined oesophageal exposure to gastric acid and duodenal contents ( bile acids and pancreatic enzymes) appears to be more detrimental than isolated exposure to gastric juice or duodenal contents alone (1241, 1825). Combined reflux is thought to increase cancer risk
by promoting cellular proliferation, and by exposing the oesophageal epithelium to potentially genotoxic gastric and intestinal contents, e.g. nitrosamines (1825).

**Tobacco**

Smoking has been identified as another major risk factor for oesophageal adenocarcinoma and may account for as much as 40% of cases through an early stage carcinogenic effect (562, 2204).

**Obesity**

In a Swedish population-based case control study, obesity was also associated with an increased risk for oesophageal adenocarcinoma. In this study the adjusted odds ratio was 7.6 among persons in the highest body mass index (BMI) quartile compared with persons in the lowest. Obese persons (BMI > 30 kg/m²) had an odds ratio of 16.2 as compared with the leanest persons (persons with a BMI < 22 kg/m²) (1002). The pathogenetic basis of the association with obesity remains to be elucidated (310).

**Alcohol**

In contrast to squamous cell oesophageal carcinoma, there is no strong relation between alcohol consumption and adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus.

**Helicobacter pylori**

This infection does not appear to be a predisposing factor for the development of intestinal metaplasia and adenocarcinoma in the distal oesophagus. According to recent studies, gastric H. pylori infection may even exert a protective effect (309).

**Localization**

Adenocarcinoma may occur anywhere in a segment lined with columnar metaplastic mucosa (Barrett oesophagus) but develops mostly in its proximal verge. Adenocarcinoma in a short segment of Barrett oesophagus is easily mistaken for adenocarcinoma of the cardia. Since adenocarcinoma originating from the distal oesophagus may infiltrate the gastric cardia and carcinoma of the gastric cardia or subcardial region may grow into the distal oesophagus these entities are frequently difficult to discriminate (see chapter on tumours of the oesophago-gastric junction). As an exception, adenocarcinoma occurs also in the middle or proximal third of the oesophagus, in the latter usually from a congenital islet of heterotopic columnar mucosa (that is present in up to 10% of the population).

### Barrett oesophagus

**Symptoms and signs**

Barrett oesophagus as the precursor of most adenocarcinomas is clinically silent in up to 90% of cases. The symptomatology of Barrett oesophagus, when present, is that of gastro-oesophageal reflux (1011). This is the condition where the early stages of neoplasia (intraepithelial and intramucosal neoplasia) should be sought.

**Endoscopy**

The endoscopic analysis of the squamocolumnar junction aims at the detection of columnar metaplasia in the distal oesophagus. At endoscopy, the squamocolumnar junction (Z-line) is in the thorax, just above the narrowed passage across the diaphragm. The anatomical landmarks in this area are treated in the chapter on tumours of the oesophago-gastric junction.

**Macroscopy**

If the length of the columnar lining in this distal oesophageal segment is ≤ 3 cm, it is termed a long type of Barrett metaplasia. When the length is < 3 cm, it is a short type. Single or multiple finger-like (1-3 cm) protrusions of columnar mucosa are classified as short type. In patients with short segment (< 3 cm) Barrett oesophagus the risk for developing adenocarcinoma is reported to be lower compared to those with long segment Barrett oesophagus (1720). As Barrett oesophagus is restricted to cases with histologically confirmed intestinal metaplasia, adequate tissue sampling is required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1.02</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pattern of endoscopic ultrasound in oesophageal cancer. There are three hyper- and two hypo-echoic layers; the tumour mass is hypoechoic.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Histopathology

Barrett epithelium is characterized by two different types of cells, i.e. goblet cells and columnar cells, and has also been termed ‘specialized,’ ‘distinctive’ or Barrett metaplasia. The goblet cells stain positively with Alcian blue at low pH (2.5). The metaplastic epithelium has a flat or villiform surface, and is identical to gastric intestinal metaplasia of the incomplete type (type II or III). Rarely, foci of complete intestinal metaplasia (type I) with absorptive cells and Paneth cells may be found. The mucous glands beneath the surface epithelium and pits may also contain metaplastic epithelium. Recent studies suggest that the columnar metaplasia originates from multipotential cells located in intrinsic oesophageal glands (1429).

### Intraepithelial neoplasia in Barrett oesophagus

#### Microscopy

Epithelial atypia in Barrett mucosa is usually assessed according to the system
devised for atypia in ulcerative colitis, namely: negative, positive or indefinite for intraepithelial neoplasia. If intraepithelial neoplasia is present, it should be classified as low-grade (synonymous with mild or moderate dysplasia) or high-grade (synonymous with severe dysplasia and carcinoma in situ) [1582, 1685]. The criteria used to grade intraepithelial neoplasia comprise cytological and architectural features [75].

**Negative for intraepithelial neoplasia**

Usually, the lamina propria of Barrett mucosa contains a mild accompanying inflammatory infiltrate of mononuclear cells. There may be mild reactive changes with enlarged, hyperchromatic nuclei, prominence of nucleoli, and occasional mild stratification in the lower portion of the glands. However, towards the surface there is maturation of the epithelium with few or no abnormalities. These changes meet the criteria of atypia negative for intraepithelial neoplasia, and can usually be separated from low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia.

**Atypia indefinite for intraepithelial neoplasia.** One of the major challenges for the pathologist in Barrett oesophagus is the differentiation of intraepithelial neoplasia from reactive or regenerative epithelial changes. This is particularly difficult, sometimes even impossible, if erosions or ulcerations are present [1055]. In areas adjacent to erosions and ulcerations, the metaplastic epithelium may display villiform hyperplasia of the surface foveolae with cytological atypia and architectural disturbances. These abnormalities are usually milder than those observed in intraepithelial neoplasia. There is a normal expansion of the basal replication zone in regenerative epithelium versus intraepithelial neoplasia, where the proliferation shifts to more superficial portions of the gland [738]. If there is doubt as to whether reactive and regenerative changes or intraepithelial neoplasia is present in a biopsy, the category atypia indefinite for intraepithelial neoplasia is appropriate and a repeat biopsy after reflux control by medical acid suppression or anti-reflux therapy is indicated.

**Low-grade and high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia.** Intraepithelial neoplasia in Barrett metaplastic mucosa is defined as a neoplastic process limited to the epithelium [1582]. Its prevalence in Barrett mucosa is approximately 10%, and it develops only in the intestinal type metaplastic epithelium. Cytological abnormalities typically extend to the surface of the mucosa. In low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia, there is decreased mucus secretion, nuclear pseudostratification confined to the lower half of the glandular epithelium, occasional mitosis, mild pleomorphism, and minimal architectural changes. High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia shows marked pleomorphism and decrease of mucus secretion, frequent mitosis, nuclear stratification extending
to the upper part of the cells and glands, and marked architectural aberrations. The most severe architectural changes consist of a cribriform pattern that is a feature of high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia as long as the basement membrane of the neoplastic glands has not been disrupted. The diagnostic reproducibility of intraepithelial neoplasia is far from perfect; significant interobserver variation exists [1572].

**Adenocarcinoma**

**Symptoms and signs**

Dysphagia is often the first symptom of advanced adenocarcinoma in the oesophagus. This may be associated with retrosternal or epigastric pain or cachexia.

**Endoscopy**

The endoscopic pattern of the early tumour stages may be that of a small polypoid adenomatous-like lesion, but more often it is flat, depressed, elevated or occult [1011, 1009]. Areas with high grade intraepithelial neoplasia are often multicentric and occult. Therefore a systematic tissue sampling has been recommended when no abnormality is evident macroscopically [483]. The usual pattern of advanced adenocarcinoma at endoscopy is that of an axial, and often tight, stenosis in the distal third of the oesophagus; with a polypoid tumour, bleeding occurs at contact.

**Radiology**

This approach is still proposed in the primary diagnosis of oesophageal cancer when endoscopic access is not easily available [1058]. Today, barium studies are helpful mostly for the analysis of stenotic segments; they are less efficient than endoscopy for the detection of flat abnormalities. Computerised tomography will detect distant thoracic and abdominal metastases.

**Endoscopic ultrasonography**

At high frequency, some specificities in the echoic pattern of the mucosa and submucosa of the columnar lined oesophagus are displayed. However, the procedure is only suitable for the staging of tumours previously detected at endoscopy; the tumour is hypoechoic. Lymph nodes adjacent to the oesophageal wall can also be visualised by this technique [1614].

**Macroscopy**

The majority of primary adenocarcinomas of the oesophagus arise in the lower third of the oesophagus within a segment of Barrett mucosa [1055]. Adjacent to the tumour, the typical salmon-pink mucosa of Barrett oesophagus may be evident, especially in early carcinomas. In the early stages, the gross findings of Barrett adenocarcinoma may be subtle with irregular mucosal bumps or small plaques. At the time of diagnosis, most tumours are advanced with deep infiltration of the oesophageal wall. The advanced carcinomas are predominantly flat and ulcerated with only one third having a polypoid or fungating appearance. Occasionally, multifocal tumours
Tumours of the oesophagus may be present \(1055, 1770\). The rare adenocarcinomas arising independently of Barrett oesophagus from ectopic gastric glands and oesophageal glands display predominantly ulceration and polypoid gross features, respectively. These tumours are also found in the upper and middle third of the oesophagus \(265, 1204\), but are rare.

**Histopathology**

Adenocarcinomas arising in the setting of Barrett oesophagus are typically papillary and/or tubular. A few tumours are of the diffuse type and show rare glandular formations, and sometimes signet ring cells \(1458, 1770\). Differentiation may produce endocrine cells, Paneth cells and squamous epithelium. Mucinous adenocarcinomas, i.e. tumours with more than 50% of the lesion consisting of mucin, also occur.

**Grading**

Most adenocarcinomas arising from Barrett mucosa are well or moderately differentiated \(1458\), and display well formed tubular or papillary structures. The well differentiated tumours may pose a diagnostic problem in biopsy specimens because the infiltrating component may be difficult to recognize as invasive \(1055\) since Barrett mucosa often has irregular dispersed glands. Glandular structures are only slightly formed in poorly differentiated adenocarcinomas and absent in undifferentiated tumours. *Small cell carcinoma* may show foci of glandular differentiation. It is discussed in the chapter on endocrine neoplasms of the oesophagus.

**Tumour spread and staging**

Adenocarcinomas spread first locally and infiltrate the oesophageal wall. Distal spread to the stomach may occur. Extension through the oesophageal wall into adventitial tissue, and then into adjacent organs or tissues is similar to squamous cell carcinoma. Common sites of local spread comprise the mediastinum, tracheobronchial tree, lung, aorta, pericardium, heart and spine \(1055, 1789\). Barrett associated adenocarcinoma metastasizes to para-oesophageal and paracardial lymph nodes, those of the lesser curvature of the stomach and the celiac nodes. Distant metastases occur late. The TNM classification used for SCC is applicable to Barrett adenocarcinoma and provides prognostically significant data \(1945\).

**Other carcinomas**

**Adenosquamous carcinoma**

*ICD-O code: 8560/3*

This carcinoma has a significant squamous carcinomatous component that is intermingled with a tubular adenocarcinoma.

**Mucoepidermoid carcinoma**

*ICD-O code: 8430/3*

This rare carcinoma shows an intimate mixture of squamous cells, mucus secreting cells and cells of an intermediate type.

**Adenoid cystic carcinoma**

*ICD-O code: 8200/3*

This neoplasm is also infrequent and believed to arise, like the mucoepidermoid variant, from oesophageal glands \(265, 2066\). Both lesions tend to be of salivary gland type, and small tumours may be confined to the submucosa. However, the ordinary oesophageal adenocarcinoma can also arise from ectopic gastric glands, or oesophageal glands \(1204, 1055\).
**Genetic susceptibility**
Several lines of evidence suggest that there is a genetic susceptibility to oesophageal adenocarcinoma arising from Barrett oesophagus. The almost exclusive occurrence of Barrett oesophagus in whites and its strong male predominance hint at the involvement of genetic factors. Several reports describe familial clustering of Barrett oesophagus, adenocarcinoma and reflux symptoms in up to three generations, with some families showing an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance with nearly complete penetrance. Although shared dietary or environmental factors in these families could play a role, the earlier age of onset of Barrett in some families suggests the influence of genetic factors. The molecular factors that determine this genetic susceptibility are largely unknown and linkage analysis in families has not been reported. Recently, an association between a variant of the GSTP1 (glutathione S-transferase P1) gene and Barrett oesophagus and adenocarcinoma has been demonstrated. GSTs are responsible for the detoxification of various carcinogens, and inherited differences in carcinogen detoxification capacity may contribute to the development of Barrett epithelium and adenocarcinoma.

**Genetics**
In Barrett oesophagus a variety of molecular genetic changes has been correlated with the metaplasia-dysplasia-carcinoma sequence. Prospective follow-up of lesions biopsied at endoscopy show that alterations in TP53 and CDKN2A occur at early stages.

**TP53.** In high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia a prevalence of TP53 mutations of approximately 60% is found, similar to adenocarcinoma. Mutation in one allele is often accompanied by loss of the other. Mutations occur in diploid cells and precede aneuploidy. The pattern of mutations differs significantly from that in squamous cell carcinomas. This is particularly evident for the high frequency of G:C>A:T transition mutations, which prevail in adenocarcinomas but are infrequent in SCC. Alterations of CDKN2A, a locus on 9p21 encoding two distinct tumour suppressors, p16 and p19arf, include hypermethylation of the p16 promoter and, more rarely, mutations and LOH. FHIT. Among other early changes in the premalignant stages of metaplasia are alterations of the transcripts of FHIT, a presumptive tumour suppressor gene spanning the common fragile site FRA3B.

**LOH and gene amplification.** A number of other loci are altered relatively late during the development of adenocarcinoma, with no obligate sequence of events. Prevalent changes (> 50%) include LOH on chromosomes 4 (long arm) and 5 (several loci including APC) and amplification of ERBB2. Phenotypic changes in Barrett oesophagus are shown in Fig. 1.29 and Table 1.03.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tumour suppressor genes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP53</td>
<td>80% Mutation – high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia and carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APC</td>
<td>Late in intraepithelial neoplasia-carcinoma sequence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN2A (p16)</td>
<td>Common, early abnormalities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN2A</td>
<td>Hypermethylation common in intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth factor receptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD95/APC/Fas</td>
<td>Shift to cytoplasm in carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR</td>
<td>Expressed in 60% carcinomas, gene amplification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c-erbB2</td>
<td>Late in dysplasia-carcinoma sequence, gene amplification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cell adhesion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E-cadherin</td>
<td>Loss of expression in intraepithelial and invasive carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catenins</td>
<td>Similar loss of expression to E-cadherin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proteases</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPA</td>
<td>Prognostic factor in carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proliferation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ki-67</td>
<td>Abnormal distribution in high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Membrane trafficking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rab11</td>
<td>High expression in low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Endocrine tumours of the oesophagus

C. Capella
E. Solcia
L.H. Sobin
R. Arnold

Definition
Endocrine tumours of the oesophagus are rare and include carcinoid (well differentiated endocrine neoplasm), small cell carcinoma (poorly differentiated endocrine carcinoma), and mixed endocrine-exocrine carcinoma.

ICD-O codes
Carcinoid 8240/3
Small cell carcinoma 8041/3
Mixed endocrine-exocrine carcinoma 8244/3

Epidemiology
In an analysis of 8305 carcinoid tumours of different sites, only 3 (0.04%) carcinoids of the oesophagus were reported [1251]. They represented 0.05% of all gastrointestinal carcinoids reported in this analysis and 0.02% of all oesophageal cancers. All cases were in males and presented at a mean age of 56 years [1251]. Small cell carcinoma occurs mainly in the sixth to seventh decade and is twice as common in males as females [190, 421, 765, 1026]. The reported frequencies among all oesophageal cancers were between 0.05% to 7.6 % [190, 421, 765, 1026].

Clinical features
Dysphagia, severe weight loss and sometimes chest pain are the main symptoms of endocrine tumours of the oesophagus. Patients with small cell carcinomas often present at an advanced stage [765, 1026]. Inappropriate antidiuretic hormone syndrome and hypercalcemia have been reported [421]. In addition, a case of watery diarrhoea, hypokalaemia-achlor-hydria (WDHA) syndrome, due to ectopic production of VIP by a mixed-cell (squamous-small cell) carcinoma of the oesophagus has been described [2070].

Prognostic factors
The major prognostic factors in adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus are the depth of mural invasion and the presence or absence of lymph node or distant metastasis [734, 1049, 1458, 1945]. Gross features and histological differentiation do not influence prognosis. The overall 5-year survival rate after surgery is less than 20% in most series including a majority of advanced carcinomas. The survival rates are better in superficial (pT1) adenocarcinoma, ranging from 65% to 80% in different series [735, 1219]. Since the stage at the time of diagnosis is the most important factor affecting outcome, endoscopic surveillance of Barrett patients with early detection of their adenocarcinomas, results in better prognosis in most cases [1995].

Fig. 1.30 Small cell carcinoma of the oesophagus.
Macroscopy
All reported oesophageal carcinoids were of large size (from 4 to 7 cm in diameter) and infiltrated deeply the oesophageal wall (1329, 1567, 1754). Small cell carcinomas usually appear as fungating or ulcerated masses of large size, measuring from 4 to 14 cm in greatest diameter.

Histopathology
Carcinoid (well differentiated endocrine neoplasm)
All carcinoids so far reported in the literature have been described as deeply infiltrative tumours, with high mitotic rate and metastases (1329, 1567, 1754). Microscopically, they are composed of solid nests of tumour cells that show positive stain for Grimelius and neuron-specific enolase (1567), and characteristic membrane-bound neurosecretory granules at ultrastructural examination (1754).

Small cell carcinoma (poorly differentiated endocrine carcinoma)
Small cell carcinoma of the oesophagus is indistinguishable from its counterpart in the lung according to histological and immunohistochemical features as well as clinical behaviour. The cells may be small with dark nuclei of round or oval shape and scanty cytoplasm, or be larger with more cytoplasm (intermediate cells) forming solid sheets and nests. There may be foci of squamous carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, and/or mucoepidermoid carcinoma, a finding that raises the possibility of an origin of tumour cells from pluripotent cells present in the squamous epithelium or ducts of the submucosal glands (190, 1887). Argyrophilic granules can be demonstrated by Grimelius stain, and small dense-core granules are always detected by electron microscopy (781). Immunohistochemical reactions for neuron-specific enolase, synaptophysin, chromogranin and leu7 usually are positive and represent useful diagnostic markers (723). Some cases have been associated with calcitonin and ACTH production (1272).

Mixed endocrine-exocrine carcinoma
In the few reported cases (256, 301), the tumours combined a gastrointestinal-type adenocarcinoma with the trabecular-acinar component of a carcinoid. In one case the carcinoid component was positive for Grimelius stain, Fontana argentaffin reaction and formaldehyde induced fluorescence for amines (301).

Prognostic factors
Two of three oesophageal carcinoids from the analysis of 8305 cases of carcinoid tumours (1251) were associated with distant metastases and one (1567) of the three reported cases (1329, 1567, 1754) died 29 months after surgery. The prognosis of small cell carcinoma of the oesophagus is poor, even when the primary growth is limited (190, 421). The survival period is usually less than 6 months (816 and thus similar to that of patients with small cell carcinoma of the colon (765, 1026). Multidrug chemotherapy may offer temporary remission (765, 816, 1026, 1678).

Lymphoma of the oesophagus

Definition
Primary lymphoma of the oesophagus is defined as an extranodal lymphoma arising in the oesophagus with the bulk of the disease localized to this site (796). Contiguous lymph node involvement and distant spread may be seen but the primary clinical presentation is in the oesophagus with therapy directed at this site.

Clinical features
The oesophagus is the least common site of involvement with lymphoma in the digestive tract, accounting for less than 1% of lymphoma patients (1399). Oesophageal involvement is usually secondary either from the mediastinum, from nodal disease or from a primary gastric location. Patients are frequently male and usually over 50 years old. Tumours involving the distal portion of the oesophagus may cause dysphagia (644).

Histopathology
Primary oesophageal lymphomas may be of the large B-cell type or may be low-grade B-cell MALT lymphomas (1794). MALT lymphomas show morphological and cytological features common to MALT lymphomas found elsewhere in the digestive tract. Lymphoid follicles are surrounded by a diffuse infiltrate of centrocyte-like (CCL) cells showing a variable degree of plasma cell differentiation. Infiltration of these cells into the overlying epithelium is usually seen. Characteristically the CCL cells express pan-B-cell markers CD20 and CD79a and they are negative for CD5 and CD10. They express bcl-2 protein and may be positive with antibodies to CD43. Due to the rarity of these lesions, molecular genetics data are not available. In common with other sites in the digestive tract, secondary involvement of the oesophagus may occur in dissemination of any type of lymphoma. Primary oesophageal T-cell lymphoma has been described but is exceedingly rare (547).
Mesenchymal tumours of the oesophagus

Definition
A variety of rare benign and malignant mesenchymal tumours that arise in the oesophagus. Among these, tumours of smooth muscle or 'stromal' type are most common.

ICD-O codes
Leiomyoma 8890/0
Leiomyosarcoma 8890/3
Gastrointestinal stromal tumour (GIST) 8936/3
Granular cell tumour 9580/0
Rhabdomyosarcoma 8900/3
Kaposi sarcoma 9190/3

Classification
The morphological definitions of these lesions follow the WHO histological classification of soft tissue tumours [2086]. Stromal tumours are described in detail in the chapter on gastric mesenchymal tumours.

Epidemiology
Leiomyoma is the most common mesenchymal tumour of the oesophagus. It occurs in males at twice the frequency as females and has a median age distribution between 30 and 35 years [1712, 1228]. Sarcomas of the oesophagus accounted for 0.2% of malignant oesophageal tumours in SEER data from the United States from 1973 to 1987. Males were more frequently affected than females by nearly 2:1 (1928). Adults between the 6th and 8th decades are primarily affected. Oesophageal stromal tumours show demographics similar to those of sarcomas [1228].

Localization
Leiomyomas and stromal tumours are most frequent in the lower oesophagus and begin as intramural lesions. The larger tumours can extend to mediastinum and form a predominantly mediastinal mass. Leiomyomatosis forms worm-like intramural structures that may extend into the upper portion of the stomach.

Clinical features
Dysphagia is the usual complaint, but many leiomyomas and a small proportion of stromal tumours are asymptomatic and are incidentally detected by X-ray as mediastinal masses. Since most sarcomas project into the lumen, they are relatively easy to diagnose by endoscopy or imaging studies. The endoscopic pattern is that of a submucosal tumour with a swelling of a normal mucosa. Endoscopic ultrasound helps in determining the actual size of the tumour, its position in the oesophageal wall and its eventual position in the mediastinum. A CT scan of the mediastinum is then a useful compliment. Most tumours less than 3 cm in diameter are benign. Endoscopic tissue sampling (large biopsy or fine needle aspiration) is difficult and not very reliable for the assessment of malignancy.

Macroscopy
Leiomyomas vary in size from a few millimeters up to 10 cm in diameter (average 2-3 cm). They may be spherical, or when larger they can form sausage-like masses with a large longitudinal dimension or dumb-bell shaped masses with circular involvement. Many oesophageal sarcomas protrude into the mediastinum.

Histopathology
Leiomyoma is composed of bland spindle cells and shows low or moderate cellularity and slight if any mitotic activity. There may be focal nuclear atypia. The cells have eosinophilic, fibrillary, often clumped cytoplasm. Eosinophilic granulocytes and spherical calcifications are sometimes present. Leiomyomas are typically globally positive for desmin and smooth muscle actin, and are negative for CD34 and CD117 (KIT) [1228].

Fig. 1.31 Leiomyoma of oesophagus. A Haematoxylin and eosin stain. B Immunoreactivity for desmin.

Fig. 1.32 Stromal tumour of the oesophagus, involving the oesophageal muscle layer beneath a normal mucosa.
Mesenchymal tumours

Leiomyosarcoma, a malignant tumour featuring differentiated smooth muscle cells, is rare in the oesophagus. In a recent series, such tumours comprised 4% of all combined smooth muscle and stromal tumours. They were large tumours that presented in older adults, and all patients died of disease. Diagnosis is based on demonstration of smooth muscle differentiation by α-smooth muscle actin, desmin or both, and lack of KIT expression \({}^{1228}\). Stomal tumours (GISTs) are rare in the oesophagus, and comprise 20-30% of the combined cases of smooth muscle and stromal tumours. Like elsewhere in the digestive system, they predominantly occur in older adults between the 6th and 8th decades; oesophageal stromal tumours may have a male predominance. Most oesophageal examples are spindle cell tumours, and a minority are epithelioid. Oesophageal GISTs are identical with their gastric counterparts by their positivity for KIT and CD34, and immunohistochemistry is required for the diagnosis.

Granular cell tumours are usually detected endoscopically as nodules or small sessile polyps predominantly in the distal oesophagus \({}^{1216, 7}\). Benign behaviour is the rule, but a case of malignant oesophageal granular cell tumour has been reported. The tumours are usually small, up to 1-2 cm in diameter, and are grossly yellow, firm nodules. Histologically they are composed of sheets of oval to polygonal cells with a small central nucleus and abundant granular slightly basophilic cytoplasm. This is due to extensive accumulation of lysosomes filled with lamellar material. Granular cell tumours are typically PAS- and S100-protein positive and negative for desmin, actin, CD34 and KIT. Tumours that encroach upon the mucosa may elicit a pseudocarcinomatous squamous hyperplasia \({}^{862, 1710}\).

Rhabdomyosarcoma has been reported in older adult patients in distal oesophagus. A few well-documented cases have shown features similar to embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma \({}^{2002}\). Demonstration of skeletal muscle differentiation by the presence of cross-striations, electron microscopy, or immunohistochemistry is required for the diagnosis.

Synovial sarcoma has been reported in children and in older adults \({}^{168, 149}\). Kaposi sarcoma may appear as a mucosal or less commonly more extensive mural lesion, usually in HIV-positive patients. Histologically typical are spindle cells with vascular slit formations and scattered PAS-positive globules. The tumour cells are positive for CD31 and CD34.

**Fig. 1.33** Granular cell tumour of oesophagus.

**Fig. 1.34** Kaposi sarcoma in a patient with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

Leiomyosarcoma \({}^{683}\), whereas these tumours do not have c-kit gene mutations commonly found in GISTs \({}^{1018}\). Comparative genomic hybridization studies have shown that oesophageal leiomyomas do not have losses of chromosome 14, as often seen in GIST, but instead have gains in chromosome 5 \({}^{450, 1664}\). Oesophageal stromal tumours show similar c-kit mutations as observed in gastric and intestinal GISTs \({}^{1228}\). Kaposi sarcoma is positive for human herpesvirus 8 by PCR.

**Prognosis**

The prognosis of oesophageal sarcomas, like carcinomas, is largely dependent on the size, depth of invasion, and presence or absence of metastasis.
Secondary tumours and melanoma of the oesophagus

Secondary tumours

Definition
Tumours of the oesophagus that originate from but are discontinuous with a primary tumour elsewhere in the oesophagus or an extra-oesophageal neoplasm.

Incidence
Metastatic spread to the oesophagus is uncommon. An unusually high frequency (6.1% of autopsy cases) was reported from Japan [1249].

Origin of metastases
The concept of intramural metastasis in oesophageal squamous cell carcinoma is discussed in the chapter on squamous cell carcinoma of the oesophagus. Neoplasms of neighbouring organs such as pharynx or gastric cardia [714] can spread to the oesophagus via lymphatics. Haematogenous metastases from any primary localization may occur. Reported primary sites include thyroid [335], lung [1416, 1249], breast [2143, 1249, 545], skin [1569, 1203], kidney [1956], prostate [1318] and ovary [1249].

Localization
The most common site of involvement is the middle third of the oesophagus.

Clinical features
The leading symptom is dysphagia, whereas achalasia and upper gastrointestinal bleeding with anemia are unusual [545]. Barium swallow examination, endoscopy, computed tomography and magnetic resonance imaging demonstrate in most cases a submucosal tumour, but any aspect resembling a primary oesophageal carcinoma may be observed [545, 1318, 714].

Histopathology and predictive factors
Submucosal localization without invasion of the mucosa is characteristic for a metastasis. Early metastases of gastric and oesophageal tumours into the oesophagus may be local indicators of systemic spread [896, 714]. The presence of metastasis in the oesophagus is a sign of poor prognosis, but the outcome is much better when the primary tumour growth rate is slow, and when other metastases are excluded [1416, 1249].

Melanoma

ICD-O Code 8720/3

Malignant melanoma in the oesophagus is much more commonly metastatic than primary. Primary oesophageal melanomas are usually polypoid and are clinically aggressive lesions [400, 353]. They are believed to arise from a zone of atypical junctional proliferation of melanocytes and such a proliferation is often present adjacent to the invasive tumour, although it may not be observed in advanced disease. The histology of the invasive component is indistinguishable from cutaneous melanoma [409]. Growth is typically expansile rather than infiltrative.
CHAPTER 2

Adenocarcinoma of the Oesophagogastric Junction

The oesophagogastric junction is anatomically defined as the transition zone between the squamous epithelium of the distal oesophagus and the glandular epithelium of the cardia.

For gastroenterologists, this region has become increasingly important, and from a clinical point of view it has been proposed to separate tumours of the oesophagogastric junction from adenocarcinomas of the distal oesophagus and proximal stomach.

Epidemiological data indicate that in industrialized countries with Western-style dietary habits carcinomas at the junction increase steadily, mainly through oesophagogastric reflux which causes a chronic inflammatory reaction that ultimately results in precancerous lesions.
Adenocarcinoma of the oesophagogastric junction

Definition
Adenocarcinomas that straddle the junction of the oesophagus and stomach are called tumours of the oesophagogastric (OG) junction. This definition includes many tumours formerly called cancers of the gastric cardia. Squamous cell carcinomas that occur at the OG junction are considered carcinomas of the distal oesophagus, even if they cross the OG junction.

ICD-O code 8140/3

Definition of the oesophagogastric junction
The OG junction is the anatomical region where the tubular oesophagus meets the stomach. The squamo-columnar (SC) epithelial junction may occur at or above the OG junction. The gastric cardia has been defined conceptually as the region of the stomach that adjoins the oesophagus (1568). The gastric cardia begins at the OG junction, but its distal extent is poorly defined.

Figure 2.01 shows endoscopically recognizable landmarks that can be used to identify structures at the OG junction. The squamocolumnar junction (SCJ or Z-line) is the visible line formed by the juxtaposition of squamous and columnar epithelia. The OG junction is the imaginary line at which the oesophagus ends and the stomach begins anatomically. The OG junction is defined endoscopically as the level of the most proximal extent of the gastric folds (1200). In normal individuals, the proximal extent of the gastric folds generally corresponds to the point at which the tubular oesophagus flares to become the sack-shaped stomach at the distal border of the lower oesophageal sphincter. In patients with hiatus hernias, in whom there may be no clear-cut flare at the OG junction, the proximal margin of the gastric folds is determined when the distal oesophagus is minimally inflated with air because over-inflation obscures this landmark (1271). Whenever the squamocolumnar junction is located above the OG junction, there is a columnar-lined segment of oesophagus. When the squamocolumnar junction and the OG junction coincide, the entire oesophagus is lined by squamous epithelium (i.e. there is no columnar-lined oesophagus). By definition, the gastric cardia starts at the OG junction, but there are no endoscopic landmarks that define the distal extent of the gastric cardia.

A potential source of confusion is the histological terminology used to describe the most proximal part of the stomach. Cardiac mucosa is characterized by tortuous, tubular glands that are comprised almost exclusively of mucus-secreting cells with few or no parietal (oxyntic) cells. The histological finding of cardiac mucosa does not establish that the specimen has been obtained from the cardia of the stomach, for the following reasons:

1. Cardiac mucosa can be found in the distal oesophagus (1479, 678).
2. Cardiac mucosa rarely extends more than 2 to 3 mm below the SC epithelial junction in the distal oesophagus (1430, 911). Therefore it will not line the larger anatomical area often called cardia.
3. Recent studies have shown that the proximal stomach is lined predominantly, if not exclusively, by oxyntic epithelium (272, 1388). Therefore, even a tumour that is unquestionably located at the cardia may not have arisen from cardiac epithelium. Conversely, a tumour that clearly is located in the distal oesophagus could have arisen from oesophageal cardiac epithelium.

Diagnostic criteria
Various criteria have been used to categorize tumours in the region of the OG junction as cancers of the gastric cardia [1240, 314, 877, 1271, 638, 767, 684]. In most of these classification systems, the anatomic location of the epicenter or predominant mass of the tumour is used to determine whether the neoplasm is oesophageal or gastric in origin. Due to the use of divergent classification systems, the patient populations in studies on cancers of the gastric cardia are heterogeneous, and often include patients with gastric tumours and others with tumours of oesophageal origin. The following guidelines are based on the definition of the OG junction described above:

1. Adenocarcinomas that cross the oesophagogastric junction are called adenocarcinomas of the OG junction, regardless of where the bulk of the tumour lies.
2. Adenocarcinomas located entirely above the oesophagogastric junction as defined above are considered oesophageal carcinomas.
3. Adenocarcinomas located entirely below the oesophagogastric junction are considered gastric in origin. The use of the ambiguous and often misleading term ‘carcinoma of the gastric cardia’ is discouraged; depending on their size, these should be called carcinoma of the proximal stomach or carcinoma of the body of the stomach.

Epidemiology
Reliable data on the incidence of tumours of the OG junction are not avail-
Adenocarcinoma of the oesophagogastric junction

able at this time. Tumour registries typically distinguish only the adenocarcinoma in Barrett oesophagus and the carcinoma of the cardia. Adenocarcinomas of the OG junction and ‘cardia’ share similar epidemiologic characteristics. At both sites, there is a strong predilection for middle-aged and older white males (1133, 2205, 1473), with a marked increase in incidence in recent years. This is in contrast to the worldwide decline of adenocarcinoma of the gastric body and antrum (Fig. 2.02). Despite the increasing incidence, the cumulative rates at the OG junction and the cardia are still much lower than those observed in the ‘non cardia’ stomach. In the Norwegian cancer registry data for the period 1991/92 (664), the age adjusted incidence rate for the combined adenocarcinoma of the distal third of the oesophagus and proximal stomach was 3.0 for males and 0.8 for females, while the incidence for all subsites of the stomach was 13.8 in males and 6.5 in females.

Aetiology

The most consistent association described for carcinoma at the OG junction is with gastro-oesophageal reflux. In contrast with the aetiological factors involved in ‘non cardia’ gastric cancer, there is no consistent association with diet (salty food in excess and lack of fruits and vitamins) or Helicobacter pylori infection, while in the body and antrum of the stomach, intestinal metaplasia occurs in relation to chronic gastritis due to H. pylori infection (1829, 88, 343).

Intestinal metaplasia is judged to be the precursor of adenocarcinoma both in the oesophagus and in the stomach (1797). However, there appear to be significant differences in the pathogenetic, morphological and histochemical characteristics, as well as in the clinical importance of intestinal metaplasia in the two organs (Fig. 2.03).

In the oesophagus, gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GERD) is accepted as the cause of intestinal metaplasia (Barrett oesophagus); chronic reflux oesophagitis is a strong risk factor for adenocarcinoma of the oesophagus (1001). The cancer risk for patients with intestinal metaplasia in the oesophagus appears to be substantially higher than for patients with intestinal metaplasia in the stomach (1797). In contrast to the stomach, infection with H. pylori does not appear to play a direct role in the pathogenesis of oesophageal inflammation and metaplasia (1381, 1076, 1617, 1889, 501, 1087, 6, 1579). Indeed, recent reports suggest that gastric infection with H. pylori may actually protect the oesophagus from cancer by preventing the development of reflux oesophagitis and Barrett oesophagus (2090, 998, 2094, 309, 2012, 615, 350, 504, 1948, 2213, 837, 1957). In biopsies from the SC epithelial junction of patients with Barrett oesophagus, a peculiar hybrid cell type has been observed that has both microvilli (a feature of columnar cells) and intercellular bridges (a feature of squamous cells) on its surface (1740, 1651, 155).

Recent studies indicate that specialized intestinal metaplasia at a normal-looking OG junction carries a much lower rate of malignancy than in Barrett oesophagus (715). Indeed, intestinal metaplasia at the oesophagogastric junction has been found with similar frequencies in Caucasians with GERD (a high risk group for adenocarcinoma at the junction) and in African Americans without GERD (a low risk group) (269).

Cancers of the gastric cardia resemble oesophageal adenocarcinomas in terms of their association with GERD (1133, 2205, 1473).

![Fig. 2.02 Incidence of adenocarcinoma of the stomach (left) compared to adenocarcinoma of the distal oesophagus and oesophagogastric junction (right). Rate per 10,000 hospitalisations from North America.](image)

![Fig. 2.03 Pathogenetic pathways operative in the evolution of oesophageal and gastric carcinoma. Intestinal metaplasia is a common precursor lesion that may result from gastro-oesophageal reflux disease (GERD) or chronic H. pylori infection.](image)
Clinical features

Common presenting symptoms for patients with adenocarcinomas of the oesophagogastric junction include dysphagia, weight loss, and abdominal pain. Early cancers, and the metaplastic and dysplastic lesions that spawn them, usually cause no symptoms. Consequently, symptomatic patients usually have advanced, incurable disease. Oesophagogastric junction tumours are discovered at an early stage during endoscopic surveillance in patients known to have Barrett oesophagus.

Endoscopy and imaging

The diagnosis of cancer at the oesophagogastric junction is typically established by endoscopic examination with biopsy. Endoscopy. The distal oesophagus should be examined carefully for evidence of intestinal metaplasia (Barrett oesophagus), and biopsy specimens of the metaplastic epithelium should be taken to determine whether the tumour is oesophageal in origin. The finding of intestinal metaplasia with dysplastic features above an OG junction tumour is strong evidence that the cancer began in the oesophagus. The location of the tumour in reference to the landmarks shown in Figure 2.01 should be noted. The proximal stomach is examined carefully, preferably by retroversion of the endoscope, to determine the gastric extent of the tumour. Early tumours may be polypoid, but flat lesions are more frequent. These flat lesions may appear depressed, elevated, or completely flush with the surrounding mucosa (1010). Mucosal hyperplasia immediately distal to the squamo-columnar junction, occurs in carditis and can, without biopsy sampling, be mistaken for an elevated neoplastic lesion. In advanced adenocarcinoma, the tumour is often polypoid and circumferential. Tight stenoses can be difficult to explore endoscopically and dangerous to dilate, especially when there is tortuosity.

Endoscopic ultrasonography is the modality of choice for tumour staging, and accuracy can be improved even further by using high frequency (20 or 30 MHz) miniprobes (669). Endosonography accurately identifies the depth of tumour invasion and regional lymph node involvement in approximately 77% and 78% of cases, respectively (1301). Endosonography is also useful in assessing the proximal extent of submucosal tumour invasion in the oesophagus. Endosonographic study of the wall of the oesophagus reveals 3 hyperechoic layers that are separated by 2 hypoechoic layers. The inner (1st) and external (3rd) hyperechoic layers correspond to the interfaces of the wall with the gut lumen and surrounding tissues, respectively. The intermediate (2nd) hyperechoic layer corresponds to the submucosa. The inner (1st) and outer (2nd) hypoechoic layers represent part of the muscularis mucosae and the muscularis propria, respectively. Computed tomography is necessary to detect distant thoracic and abdominal metastases.

Barium swallow has a limited role as a diagnostic test for cancer at the oesophagogastric junction (1058, 1180) but may be helpful in the analysis of malignant stenoses that are too narrow to be traversed by the endoscope.

Tumour spread and staging

According to TNM, in this junction area, carcinomas that are mainly on the gastric side should be stratified according to the TNM for gastric tumours, while those predominantly on the oesophageal side should be staged according to the TNM for oesophageal carcinomas (698). Adenocarcinomas at the oesophagogastric junction exhibit a great propensity for upward lymphatic spread mainly in the submucosa of the oesophagus. For this reason, intraoperative frozen-section examination of the proximal oesophageal resection margin is recommended. Upward spread can also involve lower mediastinal nodes. Lymphatic spread from the cardia frequently extends downwards to nodes in the oesophagogastric angles and around the left gastric artery, and may involve para-coeliac and para-aortic lymph nodes (26, 949).

There are differences in the criteria for stage grouping oesophageal and gastric malignancies, and the pathological staging recommended by the AJCC (1) for lymph node involvement by gastric cancers is not easily adapted for use by endosonographers. Involvement of the coeliac lymph nodes is usually deemed regional disease for gastric cancers, whereas coeliac node involvement is considered distant metastatic disease (M1) for cancers of the thoracic oesophagus. The regional nodes of the OG junction are not well enough defined to stage OG junction cancers properly.

Histopathology

Adenocarcinoma

The vast majority of cancers arising at the cardia are adenocarcinomas (1790). Histologically, four types are usually distinguished in the WHO classification: papillary, tubular, mucinous, and signet-ring cell adenocarcinoma. The latter two types are uncommon. The signet-ring

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2.01</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Features of intestinal metaplasia in the oesophagus and stomach.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. pylori association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GERD association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usual type of metaplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barrett cytokeratin pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cancer risk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adenocarcinoma of the oesophagogastric junction

![Fig. 2.04 Endoscopic ultrasonograph demonstrating adenocarcinoma at the oesophagogastric junction (CA) with deep infiltration and several lymph node metastases (arrows).](image-url)
type is much less common in the proximal than in the distal stomach, and usually not accompanied by atrophic gastritis (2045). Well differentiated tubular adenocarcinomas can present considerable diagnostic difficulty as the neoplastic tubules may have a deceptively regular appearance and can be readily mistaken for low-grade dysplasia or even hyperplastic glands.

**Pylorocardiac carcinoma.** Mulligan and Rember (1847) termed lesions resembling normal pyloric glands as ‘pylorocardiac carcinomas’. They predominate in the cardiac region and typically have tall epithelial cells with clear or pale cytoplasm and nuclei in a basal or central position. However, this pattern is difficult to distinguish reliably from other gland-forming adenocarcinomas (1847).

**Adenosquamous carcinoma**

Of the less common forms of cancers in the oesophagogastric junction region, adenosquamous carcinoma is the one most likely to be encountered. The diagnosis rests on the finding of a mixture of glandular and squamous elements and not merely on the presence of small squamoid foci in an otherwise typical adenocarcinoma. The latter is a frequent finding in tumours at this site. Such composite tumours should also be distinguished from the rare *mucoepidermoid carcinoma* of the oesophagus, which arises from mucous glands and is similar to the salivary gland tumour of that name. Although the term mucoepidermoid has been used synonymously for adenosquamous carcinomas (1476), the latter are distinguished by increased nuclear pleomorphism, occasional keratin pearls, and the separation of the two components with some areas of purely glandular epithelium and mucin. While in the past there were claims that adenosquamous carcinoma represented a ‘collision tumour’, it is now generally accepted that this malignancy results from dual differentiation and that it is analogous to other cancers arising at junctional sites in the body (e.g. uterine cervix and anal canal).

Small cell carcinoma can occur at this site.

**Grading**

Adenocarcinomas in the oesophago-gastric junction region can be graded as well, moderately, or poorly differentiated. However, agreement on tumour grading is notoriously poor. Blomjous et al. (151) reported that 3.6% of gastric cardiac cancers were well differentiated, 31% moderately differentiated, and 43% poorly differentiated, but others consider a greater proportion well differentiated, particularly when early carcinomas are included (1271, 1903, 1363).

**Precursor lesions**

*Intraepithelial neoplasia*

Interobserver agreement on the grading of intraepithelial neoplasia in the absence of invasion of the lamina propria is poor, particularly in the identification of low-grade changes, and different terms have been applied to identical appearances (1683). Such differences in nomenclature have been reduced by the widespread acceptance of a new classification that embraces the previously discordant terminology in a unified scheme (1637).

Intramucosal non-invasive neoplasia can be classified as flat (synonymous with dysplasia) or elevated (synonymous with adenoma); lesions can be low grade or high grade, the latter including lesions previously designated as intraglandular carcinoma.

*Intestinal metaplasia*

Putative precancerous lesions other than intraepithelial neoplasia are controversial.
Intestinal metaplasia is widely regarded as carrying an increased risk of malignant change, but the frequency at which it is found in the OG junction region (5.3% to 23% of dyspeptic patients) limits its value as a criterion for surveillance (716, 1960, 1800, 2028, 1269). Some of the variability in the reported prevalence of intestinal metaplasia can be attributed to differences in diagnostic criteria. Some authors accept the finding of columnar cells containing acidic glycoproteins (‘columnar blues’ in Alcian blue / PAS stained sections) as evidence for intestinal metaplasia (1398). This staining pattern reflects immature, regenerative cells and is a common finding in biopsy specimens of the cardia in children with GERD. This finding alone is not sufficient to identify intestinal metaplasia; intestinal metaplasia should only be diagnosed if goblet cells are present.

**Genetic changes**

The best characterized somatic alteration found in tumours of this region are mutations of TP53 which are present in up to 60% of carcinomas of the oesophagogastric junction. In 5 patients who had adenocarcinomas at the junction associated with Barrett oesophagus, the same mutation was detected in the tumour and in the surrounding oesophageal intestinal metaplasia, indicating an oesophageal origin. No association has been found between p53 status and tumour stage or subtype. The TP53 alterations noted in tumours at the oesophagogastric junction show a predominance of transition mutations at CpG sites, similar to the pattern seen in adenocarcinomas in Barrett oesophagus (585). Transitions at CpG dinucleotides in TP53 are generally assumed to result from endogenous mutational mechanism (deamination of 5-methylcytosine) which may be enhanced by oxidative or nitrosative stress. In colon cancers that frequently exhibit CpG mutations, excess nitric oxide production resulting from nitric oxide synthase-2 expression may contribute to the transition from adenoma to carcinoma (51).

In a study of cancers at the oesophagogastric junction that did not show evidence of associated Barrett oesophagus, the prevalence of TP53 mutations was only 30% (1641). Overexpression of the MDM2 gene was found frequently in these tumours, suggesting that TP53 may be inactivated either by mutation or by overexpression of the MDM2 gene. Comparative genomic hybridization has been used to compare tumours of the 'gastric cardia' and tumours in Barrett oesophagus. Gains and losses of genetic material were identified at a number of common regions in cancers from both sites (1718). Common altered regions included chromosome 4q (loci not yet identified), 3p14 (FHIT, RAC1), 5q 14-21 (APC, MCC), 9p21 (MTS1/CDKN2), 14q31-32.1 (TSHR), 16q23, 18q21 (DCC, p15), and 21q21. Minimal overlapping amplified sites were seen at 5p14 (MLV12), 6p12-21.1 (NRASL3), 7p12 (EGFR), 8123-24.1 (MYC), 15q25 (IGF1R), 17q12-21 (ERBB2/HER2-neu), 19q13.1 (TGFB1, BCL3, AKT2), 20p12 (PCNA), and 20q12-13 (MYBL2, PTPN1). The distribution of these imbalances was similar in both groups. However, loss of 14q31-32.1 (TSHR) was significantly more frequent in Barrett-related adenocarcinomas than in cardiac cancers. Overall, the available genetic data suggests that within cancers of the oesophagogastric junction, a subset of tumours is genetically similar to adenocarcinomas in Barrett oesophagus, whereas another subset is genetically distinct from adenocarcinomas of both the oesophagus and distal stomach (314, 1133).

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

There is a significant relationship between grade and prognosis by univariate analysis. For example, Blomjous et al. found that 31% of patients with well or moderately differentiated cardia tumours survived 5 years, whereas the survival for patients with poorly or undifferentiated tumours was only 17% (151). When T, N, and M status were included in the analysis, however, grade was significantly related to survival only in those patients with negative lymph nodes (53% 5-year survival for well and moderate compared to 21% for poor and undifferentiated tumours).
CHAPTER 3

Tumours of the Stomach

The incidence of adenocarcinoma of the stomach is declining worldwide. In some Western countries, rates have been reduced to less than one third within just one generation. In countries with a traditionally high incidence, e.g. Japan and Korea, the reduction is also significant but it will take more time to diminish the still significant disease burden. The main reasons for these good news is a change in nutrition, in particular the avoidance of salt for meat and fish preservation, the lowering of salt intake from other sources, and the availability in many countries of fresh fruits and vegetables throughout the year. Mortality has been further decreased by significant advances in the early detection of stomach cancer.

Infection with Helicobacter pylori appears to play an important additional aetiological role since it leads to chronic atrophic gastritis with intestinal metaplasia as an important precursor lesion.

The stomach is the main gastrointestinal site for lymphomas and most of these are also pathogenetically linked to H. pylori infection. Regression of such tumours often follows H. pylori eradication.
WHO histological classification of gastric tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Epithelial tumours</th>
<th>Non-epithelial tumours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intraepithelial neoplasia – Adenoma</td>
<td>Leiomyma 8140/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Granular cell tumour 8140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intestinal type</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diffuse type</td>
<td>Leiomysarcoma 8140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>GI stromal tumour 8260/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubular adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>benign 8260/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>uncertain malignant potential 8260/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signet-ring cell carcinoma</td>
<td>malignant 8260/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenosquamous carcinoma</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma 8490/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td>others 8490/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small cell carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoid (well differentiated endocrine neoplasm)</td>
<td>Marginal zone B-cell lymphoma of MALT-type 8240/3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stage Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1, N2, N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TNM classification of gastric tumours

TNM classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T – Primary Tumour</th>
<th>M – Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Carcinoma in situ: intraepithelial tumour without invasion of the lamina propria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Tumour invades lamina propria or submucosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>Tumour invades muscularis propria or subserosa&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>Tumour invades serosa (visceral peritoneum) without invasion of adjacent structures&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Tumour invades adjacent structures&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N – Regional Lymph Nodes</td>
<td>Stage Grouping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>Metastasis in 1 to 6 regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td>Metastasis in 7 to 15 regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td>Metastasis in more than 15 regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stage Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IA</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIA</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IIIB</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N1, N2, N3</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> The classification is modified from the previous WHO histological classification of tumours (2006) taking into account changes in our understanding of these lesions. In the case of endocrine neoplasms, the classification is based on the recent WHO clinicopathological classification (2004), but has been simplified to be of more practical utility in morphological classification.

<sup>2</sup> Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (542) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /3 for malignant tumours, and /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour. Intraepithelial neoplasia does not have a generic code in ICD-O. ICD-O codes are available only for lesions categorized as glandular intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8148/2), and adenocarcinoma in situ (8148/2).
Gastric carcinoma

Definition
A malignant epithelial tumour of the stomach mucosa with glandular differentiation. Its aetiology is multifactorial; most commonly it develops after a long period of atrophic gastritis. Tumours of the oesophagogastric junction are dealt with in the preceding chapter.

ICD-O codes
Adenocarcinoma 8140/3
Intestinal type 8144/3
Diffuse type 8145/3
Papillary adenocarcinoma 8260/3
Tubular adenocarcinoma 8211/3
Mucinous adenocarcinoma 8480/3
Signet-ring cell carcinoma 8490/3

Epidemiology
Geographical distribution
Gastric cancer was the second commonest cancer in the world in 1990, with an estimated 800,000 new cases and 650,000 deaths per year; 60% of them occurred in developing countries [1469]. The areas with the highest incidence rates (> 40/100,000 in males) are in Eastern Asia, the Andean regions of South America and Eastern Europe. Low rates (< 15/100,000) are found in North America, Northern Europe, and most countries in Africa and in Southeastern Asia [1471]. There is about a 20-fold difference in the incidence rates when comparing the rates in Japan with those of some white populations from the US and those of some African countries. A predominance of the intestinal type of adenocarcinoma occurs in high-risk areas, while the diffuse type is relatively more common in low-risk areas [1296].

Time trends
A steady decline in the incidence and mortality rates of gastric carcinoma has been observed worldwide over the past several decades, but the absolute number of new cases per year is increasing mainly because of the aging of the population [1296]. Analysis of time trends by histological types indicates that the incidence decline results from a decline in the intestinal type of carcinoma [1296].

Age and sex distribution
Gastric carcinoma is extremely rare below the age of 30; thereafter it increases rapidly and steadily to reach the highest rates in the oldest age groups, both in males and females. The intestinal type rises faster with age than the diffuse type; it is more frequent in males than in females.

Diffuse carcinoma tends to affect younger individuals, mainly females; it frequently has hereditary characteristics, perhaps modulated by environmental influences [1738, 1633].

Bile reflux
The risk of gastric carcinoma increases 5-10 years after gastric surgery, especially when the Billroth II operation, which increases bile reflux, was performed.

Aetiology
Diet
Epidemiological studies in different populations show that the most consistent association is diet. This is especially true of intestinal type carcinomas. An adequate intake of fresh fruits and vegetables lowers the risk [1450], due to their antioxidant effects. Ascorbic acid, carotenoids, folates and tocopherols are considered active ingredients. Salt intake strongly associates with the risk of gastric carcinoma and its precursor lesions [869]. Other foods associated with high risk in some populations include smoked or cured meats or fish, pickled vegetables and chili peppers.

Alcohol, tobacco and occupational exposures to nitrosamines and inorganic dusts have been studied in several populations, but the results have been inconsistent.

Fig. 3.01 Worldwide annual incidence (per 100,000) of stomach cancer in males. Numbers on the map indicate regional average values.

Fig. 3.02 The mortality of stomach cancer is decreasing worldwide, including countries with a high disease burden.
**Helicobacter pylori infection**

The most important development in the epidemiology of adenocarcinoma is the recognition of its association with *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Strong epidemiological evidence came from three independent prospective cohort studies reporting a significantly increased risk in subjects who 10 or more years before the cancer diagnosis had anti-*H. pylori* antibodies, demonstrable in stored serum samples (1371, 1473, 519). At the pathological level, *H. pylori* has been shown to induce the phenotypic changes leading up to the development of adenocarcinoma (i.e. mucosal atrophy, intestinal metaplasia and dysplasia) in both humans and in experimental animals (1635, 350, 2069).

A prolonged precancerous process, lasting decades, precedes most gastric cancers. It includes the following sequential steps: chronic gastritis, multifocal atrophy, intestinal metaplasia, and intraepithelial neoplasia (342). Gastritis and atrophy alter gastric acid secretion, elevating gastric pH, changing the flora and allowing anaerobic bacteria to colonize the stomach. These bacteria produce active reductases that transform food nitrate into nitrite, an active molecule capable of reacting with amines, amides and ureas to produce carcino-\textit{genic N-nitroso compounds} (2167).

*H. pylori* acts as a gastric pathogen and it is important in several steps in the carcinogenic cascade. *H. pylori* is the most frequent cause of chronic gastritis. It decreases acid-pepsin secretion and interferes with anti-oxidant functions by decreasing intragastric ascorbic acid (AA) concentrations. The organisms predominantly occur in the mucus layer overlying normal gastric epithelium. They are absent in areas overlying intestinal metaplasia where neoplasia originates. Thus, *H. pylori*’s carcinogenic influences are exerted from a distance, via soluble bacterial products or the inflammatory response generated by the infection.

**H. pylori genome.** *H. pylori* is genetically heterogeneous, and all strains may not play the same role in the development of malignancy. Strains containing a group of genes named cag pathogenicity island (264) induce a greater degree of inflammation than strains lacking these genes. The mechanism involves epithelial production of interleukin 8 via a nuclear factor KappaB pathway. There is an association between an infection with a cag positive *H. pylori* strain and the development of gastric carcinoma (1549).

The determination of the complete DNA sequence of two *H. pylori* strains has shown other similar ‘islands’ are also present in the *H. pylori* genome. Research is ongoing to determine whether strain-specific genes located in one of these islands named the plasticity zone, or outside on the rest of the chromosome, could be associated with gastric carcinogenesis. *H. pylori* can also produce a vacuolating cytotoxin named VacA. This cytotoxin, responsible for epithelial cell damage, also associates with gastric carcinogenesis (1771). The aetiological role of *H. pylori* in gastric carcinogenesis was confirmed when inoculation of a cag and VacA positive strain was able to induce intestinal metaplasia and gastric carcinoma in Mongolian gerbils (2069).

**Excessive cell proliferation.** Cell replication, a requisite of carcinogenesis, potentiates action of carcinogens targeting DNA. The higher the replication rate, the greater the chance that replication errors become fixed and expressed in subsequent cell generations. Spontaneous mutations lead to subsequent neoplastic transformation, but whether or not they cause epidemic increases in cancer rates is debatable. The latter is better explained by the presence of external or endogenous carcinogens. Proliferation is higher in *H. pylori* infected than in non-infected stomachs; it declines significantly after infection eradication (187) supporting the mitogenic influence of *H. pylori* on gastric epithelium. Ammonia, a substance stimulating cell replication, is abundantly liberated by the potent urease activity of *H. pylori* in the immediate vicinity of gastric epithelium.

**Oxidative stress.** Gastritis is associated with increased production of oxidants and reactive nitrogen intermediates, including nitric oxide (NO). There is an increased expression of the inducible isoform of nitric oxide synthase in gastri-\textit{tis} (1157). This isoform causes continuous production of large amounts of NO. NO can also be generated in the gastric lumen from non-enzymatic sources. Acidification of nitrite to NO produces the reactive nitrogen species dinitrogen trioxide (N2O3), a potent nitrosating agent that forms nitrosothiols and nitrosamines (628). Nitrosated compounds are recognized gastric carcinogens in the experimental setting.

**Interference with antioxidant functions.** Ascorbic acid (AA), an antioxidant, is actively transported from blood to the gastric lumen by unknown mechanisms. Its putative anti-carcinogenic role is by preventing oxidative DNA damage. *H. pylori* infected individuals have lower AA intragastric concentrations than non-infected subjects. Following *H. pylori*...
treatment, intragastric AA concentrations increase to levels resembling those of non-infected individuals [1613].

**DNA damage.** Free radicals, oxidants and reactive nitrogen species all cause DNA damage [344]. These usually generate point mutations, the commonest being G:C→A:T, the commonest type of transformation in cancer with a strong link to chemical carcinogenesis. Peroxynitrite forms nitro-guanine adducts that induce DNA damage, generating either DNA repair or apoptosis. The latter process removes cells containing damaged DNA from the pool of replicating cells in order to avoid introduction of mutations into the genome and an associated heightened cancer risk. NO impairs DNA repair by compromising the activity of Fpg, a DNA repair protein. Thus, NO not only causes DNA damage but it also impairs repair protein formation in cancer with a strong link to chemical carcinogenesis. Peroxynitrite formation in cancer with a strong link to chemical carcinogenesis. Thus, NO not only causes DNA damage but also impairs repair mechanisms designed to prevent the formation of genetic mutations.

As noted, cell proliferation increases in *H. pylori* infection. This increased replication is balanced by increased cell death. It is likely that the increased mitoses are a response to increased epithelial loss. However, the replicative rate exceeds apoptotic rates in patients infected with the virulent cagA vacA s1a *H. pylori* (1481), suggesting that cell loss also occurs via desquamation in patients infected by toxigenic *H. pylori* strains. Antitoxin derived from *H. pylori* also induces apoptosis. In patients with *H. pylori* gastritis, treatment with anti-oxidants attenuates the degree of apoptosis and peroxynitrite formation (1481).

It seems more than coincidental that dietary nitrite, nitrosamines and *H. pylori*-induced gastritis share so much chemistry and their association with cancer. As this process is chronic, the opportunity for random hits to the genome to occur at critical sites increases dramatically.

**Localization**

The most frequent site of sub-cardial stomach cancer is the distal stomach, i.e. the antral-pyloric region. Carcinomas in the body or the corpus of the stomach are typically located along the greater or lesser curvature.

**Clinical features**

**Symptoms and signs**

Early gastric cancer often causes no symptoms, although up to 50% of patients may have nonspecific gastrointestinal complaints such as dyspepsia. Among patients in Western countries who have endoscopic evaluations for dyspepsia, however, gastric carcinoma is found in only 1-2% of cases (mostly in men over the age of 50). Symptoms of advanced carcinoma include abdominal pain that is often persistent and unrelieved by eating. Ulcerated tumours may cause bleeding and haematemesis, and tumours that obstruct the gastric outlet may cause vomiting. Systemic symptoms such as anorexia and weight loss suggest disseminated disease.

The lack of early symptoms often delays the diagnosis of gastric cancer. Consequently, 80-90% of Western patients with gastric cancers present to the physician with advanced tumours that have poor rates of curability. In Japan, where gastric cancer is common, the government has encouraged mass screening of the adult population for this tumour. Approximately 80% of gastric malignancies detected by such screening programs are early gastric cancers. However, many individuals do not choose to participate in these screening programs, and consequently only approximately 50% of all gastric cancers in Japan are diagnosed in an early stage.

**Imaging and endoscopy**

Endoscopy is widely regarded as the most sensitive and specific diagnostic test for gastric cancer. With high resolution endoscopy, it is possible to detect slight changes in colour, relief, and architecture of the mucosal surface that suggest early gastric cancer. Endoscopic detection of these early lesions can be improved with chromoendoscopy (e.g. using indigo carmine solution at 0.4%). Even with these procedures, a substantial number of early gastric cancers can be missed (745A).

Gastric cancers can be classified endoscopically according to the growth pattern (1298, 63). The patterns I, II and III of superficial cancer (Fig. 3.03) reflect the gross morphology of the operative specimen. The risk of deep and multifocal penetration into the submucosa and the risk of lymphatic invasion is higher in type IIc, the depressed variant of type II. Infiltration of the gastric wall (linitis plastica) may not be apparent endoscopically. This lesion may be suspected if there is limited flexibility of the gastric wall. Diagnosis may require multiple, jumbo biopsies. The depth of invasion of the tumour is staged with endoscopic ultrasound. A 5-layer image is obtained at 7.5/12 MHz: in superficial (T1) cancer the second hyperechoic layer is not interrupted. Radiology with barium meal is still used in mass screening protocols in Japan, followed by endoscopy if an abnormality has been detected. For established gas-

---

**Fig. 3.04** Growth features of early gastric carcinoma.

**Fig. 3.05** Endoscopic views of early, well differentiated adenocarcinoma. A Polypoid type. B Elevated type.
Tumours of the stomach

Macroscopy

Dysplasia may present as a flat lesion (difficult to detect on conventional endoscopy, but apparent on dye-staining endoscopy) or polyloid growth. Appearances intermediate between them include a depressed or reddish or discolored mucosa. The macroscopic type of early gastric carcinoma is classified using criteria similar to those in endoscopy (Fig. 3.03) (1298, 63). The gross appearance of advanced carcinoma forms the basis of the Borrmann classification (Fig. 3.06) (63, 175).

Ulcerating types II or III are common. Diffuse (infiltrative) tumours (type IV) spread superficially in the mucosa and submucosa, producing flat, plaque-like lesions, with or without shallow ulcerations. With extensive infiltration, a linitis plastica or ‘leather bottle’ stomach results. Mucinous adenocarcinomas appear gelatinous with a glistening cut surface.

Tumour spread and staging

Gastric carcinomas spread by direct extension, metastasis or peritoneal dissemination. Direct tumour extension involves adjacent organs. Tumours invading the duodenum are most often of the diffuse type and the frequency of serosal, lymphatic, and vascular invasion and lymph node metastases in these lesions is high. Duodenal invasion may occur through the submucosa or subserosa or via the submucosal lymphatics. Duodenal invasion occurs more frequently than expected based on gross examination. Therefore, resection margins should be monitored by intraoperative consultation.

Intestinal carcinomas preferentially metastasize haematogenously to the liver, whereas diffuse carcinomas preferentially metastasize to peritoneal surfaces (1273, 245). An equal incidence of lymph node metastases occurs in both types of tumours with T2 or higher lesions. Mixed tumours exhibit the metastatic patterns of both intestinal and diffuse types. When carcinoma penetrates the serosa, peritoneal implants flourish. Bilateral massive ovarian involvement (Krukenberg tumour) can result from transperitoneal or haematogenous spread.

The principal value of nodal dissection is the detection and removal of metastatic disease and appropriate tumour staging. The accuracy of pathological staging is proportional to the number of regional lymph nodes examined and their location. When only nodes close to the tumour are assessed, many cancers are classified incorrectly.

Histopathology

Gastric adenocarcinomas are either gland-forming malignancies composed
of tubular, acinar or papillary structures, or they consist of a complex mixture of discohesive, isolated cells with variable morphologies, sometimes in combination with glandular, trabecular or alveolar solid structures [243]. Several classification systems have been proposed, including Ming, Carriero, and Goseki [1623], but the most commonly used are those of WHO and Laurén [419, 87].

**WHO classification**

Despite their histological variability, usually one of four patterns predominates. The diagnosis is based on the predominant histological pattern.

**Tubular adenocarcinomas**

These contain prominent dilated or slit-like and branching tubules varying in their diameter; acinar structures may be present. Individual tumour cells are columnar, cuboidal, or flattened by intraluminal mucin. Clear cells may also be present. The degree of cytological atypia varies from low to high-grade [466, 1362]. A poorly differentiated variant is sometimes called solid carcinoma. Tumours with a prominent lymphoid stroma are sometimes called medullary carcinomas or carcinomas with lymphoid stroma [2063]. The degree of desmoplasia varies and may be conspicuous.

**Papillary adenocarcinomas**

These are well-differentiated exophytic carcinomas with elongated finger-like processes lined by cylindrical or cuboidal cells supported by fibrovascular connective tissue cores. The cells tend to maintain their polarity. Some tumours show tubular differentiation (papillotubular). Rarely, a micropapillary architecture is present. The degree of cellular atypia and mitotic index vary; there may be severe nuclear atypia. The invading tumour edge is usually sharply demarcated from surrounding structures; the tumour may be infiltrated by acute and chronic inflammatory cells.

**Mucinous adenocarcinomas**

By definition, > 50% of the tumour contains extracellular mucinous pools. The two major growth patterns are (1) glands lined by a columnar mucous-secreting epithelium together with interstitial mucin and (2) chains or irregular cell clusters floating freely in mucinous lakes. There may also be mucin in the interglandular stroma. Scattered signet-ring cells, when present, do not dominate the histological picture. Grading mucinous adenocarci-

---

**Fig. 3.09** A Depressed adenocarcinoma. B Depressed signet ring cell carcinoma. C Gastric cancer, dye sprayed (pale area). D, E, F Advanced gastric carcinoma with varying degrees of infiltration.

**Fig. 3.10** Features of tubular adenocarcinoma. A Well differentiated tumour with invasion into the muscularis propria. B Solid variant. C Clear cell variant.
nomas is unreliable in tumours containing only a few cells. The term 'mucin-producing' is not synonymous with mucinous in this context.

**Signet-ring cell carcinomas**

More than 50% of the tumour consists of isolated or small groups of malignant cells containing intracytoplasmic mucin. Superficially, cells lie scattered in the lamina propria, widening the distances between the pits and glands. The tumour cells have five morphologies: (1) Nuclei push against cell membranes creating a classical signet ring cell appearance due to an expanded, globoid, optically clear cytoplasm. These contain acid mucin and stain with Alcian blue at pH 2.5; (2) other diffuse carcinomas contain cells with central nuclei resembling histiocytes, and show little or no mitotic activity; (3) small, deeply eosinophilic cells with prominent, but minute, cytoplasmic granules containing neutral mucin; (4) small cells with little or no mucin, and (5) anaplastic cells with little or no mucin. These cell types intermingle with one another and constitute varying tumour proportions. Signet-ring cell tumours may also form lacy or delicate trabecular glandular patterns and they may display a zonal or solid arrangement. Signet-ring cell carcinomas are infiltrative; the number of malignant cells is comparatively small and desmoplasia may be prominent. Special stains, including mucin stains (PAS, mucicarmine, or Alcian blue) or immunohistochemical staining with antibodies to cytokeratin, help detect sparsely dispersed tumour cells in the stroma. Cytokeratin immunostains detect a greater percentage of neoplastic cells than do mucin stains. Several conditions mimic signet-ring cell carcinoma including signet-ring lymphoma, lamina propria muciphages, xanthomas and detached or dying cells associated with gastritis.

**Laurén classification**

The Laurén classification [1021] has proven useful in evaluating the natural history of gastric carcinoma, especially with regard to its association with environmental factors, incidence trends and its precursors. Lesions are classified into one of two major types: intestinal or diffuse. Tumours that contain approximately equal quantities of intestinal and diffuse components are called mixed carcinomas. Carcinomas too undifferentiated to fit neatly into either category are placed in the indeterminate category.

**Intestinal carcinomas**

These form recognizable glands that range from well differentiated to moderately differentiated tumours, sometimes with poorly differentiated tumour at the advancing margin. They typically arise on a background of intestinal metaplasia. The mucinous phenotype of these cancers is intestinal, gastric and gastrointestinal.

**Diffuse carcinomas**

They consist of poorly cohesive cells diffusely infiltrating the gastric wall with little
or no gland formation. The cells usually appear round and small, either arranged as single cells or clustered in abortive, lacy gland-like or reticular formations. These tumours resemble those classified as signet-ring cell tumours in the WHO classification. The mitotic rate is lower in diffuse carcinomas than in intestinal tumours. Small amounts of interstitial mucin may be present. Desmoplasia is more pronounced and associated inflammation is less evident in diffuse cancers than in the intestinal carcinomas.

**Rare variants**

Several other carcinomas exist that are not an integral part of the Laurén or WHO classifications.

**Adenosquamous carcinoma**

This lesion combines an adenocarcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma; neither quantitatively prevails. Transitions exist between both components. A tumour with a distinct boundary between the two components may represent a collision tumour. Tumours containing discrete foci of benign-appearing squamous metaplasia are termed adenocarcinomas with squamous differentiation (synonymous with adenoacanthoma).

**Squamous cell carcinoma**

Pure squamous cell carcinomas develop rarely in the stomach; they resemble squamous cell carcinomas arising elsewhere in the body.

**Undifferentiated carcinoma**

These lesions lack any differentiated features beyond an epithelial phenotype (e.g. cytokeratin expression). They fall into the indeterminate group of Laurén's scheme. Further analysis of this heterogeneous group using histochemical methods may allow their separation into other types.

**Other rare tumours** include mixed adenocarcinoma-carcinoid (mixed exocrine-endocrine carcinoma), small cell carcinoma, parietal cell carcinoma, choriocarcinoma, endodermal sinus tumour, embryonal carcinoma, Paneth cell rich adenocarcinoma and hepatoid adenocarcinoma.

**Early gastric cancer**

Early gastric cancer (EGC) is a carcinoma limited to the mucosa or the mucosa and submucosa, regardless of nodal status. Countries in which asymptomatic patients are screened have a high incidence of EGCs ranging from 30-50% (1410, 908, 718), contrasting with a smaller fraction of 16-24% (620, 253, 627) in Western countries. The follow-up of dysplastic lesions does appear to increase the prevalence of EGC. The cost effectiveness of such an integrated
endoscopic/biopsy approach remains to be evaluated [1634, 1638]. Histologically, most subtypes of carcinoma occur in EGC in either pure or mixed forms. Elevated carcinomas with papillary, granular or nodular patterns and a red colour are more often well or moderately differentiated, tubular or papillary tumours with intestinal features; sometimes a pre-existing adenoma is recognizable. Flat, depressed, poorly differentiated carcinomas may contain residual or regenerative mucosal islands. Ulcerated lesions are either intestinal or diffuse cancers. Adenocarcinoma limited to the mucosal thickness has also been divided into small mucosal (< 4 cm = SM) and superficial (> 4 cm = SUPER) [950]. Both of them may be strictly confined at the mucosal level (small mucosal M and superficial M) or focally infiltrate the sub-mucosa (small mucosal SM and superficial SM). In the penetrating variant, (including two sub-categories: PenA and PenB) the invasion of the submucosa is more extensive than in the two above-mentioned variants. PenA is defined by a pushing margin, and is less frequent than PenB, which penetrates muscularis mucosae at multiple sites. The prognosis is worse in PenA carcinomas (in contrast to adenocarcinomas of the colon, where a pushing margin is associated with a better prognosis). The coexistence of more than one of the described patterns results in the mixed variant [950].

**Stromal reactions**

The four common stromal responses to gastric carcinoma are marked desmoplasia, lymphocytic infiltrates, stromal eosinophilia and a granulomatous response. The granulomatous reaction is characterized by the presence of single and confluent small sarcoid-like granulomas, often accompanied by a moderately intense mononuclear cell infiltrate. The lymphoid response is associated with an improved survival.

**Grading**

*Well differentiated:* An adenocarcinoma with well-formed glands, often resembling metaplastic intestinal epithelium.

*Moderately differentiated:* An adenocarcinoma intermediate between well differentiated and poorly differentiated.

*Poorly differentiated:* An adenocarcinoma composed of highly irregular glands that are recognized with difficulty, or single cells that remain isolated or are arranged in small or large clusters with mucin secretions or acinar structures. They may also be graded as *low-grade* (well and moderately differentiated) or *high-grade* (poorly differentiated). Note that this grading system applies primarily to tubular carcinomas. Other types of gastric carcinoma are not graded.

**Precursor lesions**

*Gastritis and intestinal metaplasia*

Chronic atrophic gastritis and intestinal metaplasia commonly precede and/or accompany intestinal type adenocarcinoma, particularly in high-incidence areas [780]. *H. pylori* associated gastritis is the commonest gastric precursor lesion. However, autoimmune gastritis also associates with an increased carcinoma risk. If gastritis persists, gastric atrophy occurs followed by intestinal metaplasia, beginning a series of changes that may result in neoplasia, especially of intestinal type cancers. In contrast, diffuse gastric cancers often arise in a stomach lacking atrophic gastritis with intestinal metaplasia.
Intraepithelial neoplasia

Intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia) arises in either the native gastric or of intestinalized gastric epithelia. Pyloric gland adenoma is a form of intraepithelial neoplasia arising in the native mucosa (2066, 1885). In the multi-stage theory of gastric oncogenesis, intraepithelial neoplasia lies between atrophic metaplastic lesions and invasive cancer (Table 3.01). Problems associated with diagnosing gastric intraepithelial neoplasia include the distinction from reactive or regenerative changes associated with active inflammation, and the distinction between intraepithelial and invasive carcinoma (1683, 1025). Several proposals have been made for the terminology of the morphological spectrum of lesions that lie between non-neoplastic changes and early invasive cancer, including the recent international Padova classification (1636).

Indefinite for intraepithelial neoplasia

Sometimes, doubts arise as to whether a lesion is neoplastic or non-neoplastic (i.e. reactive or regenerative), particularly in small biopsies. In such cases, the dilemma is usually solved by cutting deeper levels of the block, by obtaining additional biopsies, or after removing possible sources of cellular hyperproliferation. One important source of a potentially alarming lesion is the regeneration associated with NSAID-induced injury or superficial erosion/ulceration caused by gastric acid. Cases lacking all the attributes required for a definitive diagnosis of intraepithelial neoplasia may be placed into the category ‘indefinite for intraepithelial neoplasia’.

In native gastric mucosa, foveolar hyperproliferation may be indefinite for dysplasia, showing irregular and tortuous tubular structures with epithelial mucus depletion, a high nuclear-cytoplasmic ratio and loss of cellular polarity. Large, oval/round, hyperchromatic nuclei associate with prominent mitoses, usually located near the proliferative zone in the mucus neck region. In intestinal metaplasia, areas indefinite for intraepithelial neoplasia exhibit a hyperproliferative metaplastic epithelium. The glands may appear closely packed, lined by cells with large, hyperchromatic, rounded or elongated, basally located nuclei. Nucleoli are an inconsistent finding. The cyto-architectural alterations tend to decrease from the base of the glands to their superficial portion.

Intraepithelial neoplasia

It has flat, polypoid, or slightly depressed growth patterns; the flat pattern may lack any endoscopic changes on conventional endoscopy, but shows an irregular appearance on dye endoscopy. In Western countries, the term adenoma is applied when the proliferation produces a macroscopic, usually discrete, protruding lesion. However, in Japan, adenomas include all gross types (i.e. flat, elevated and depressed). Gastric adenomas are less common than hyperplastic polyps; overall, they account for approximately 10% of gastric polyps (1843). They tend to arise in the antrum or mid stomach in areas of intestinal metaplasia. Morphologically, adenomas can be described as tubular (the most common), tubulovillous, or villous; the latter two have also been called papillotubular and papillary. Most have epithelium of intestinal type, but some have gastric foveolar features.

Low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia

This lesion shows a slightly modified mucosal architecture, including the presence of tubular structures with budding and branching, papillary enfolding, crypt lengthening with serration, and cystic changes. Glands are lined by enlarged columnar cells with minimal or no mucin. Homogeneously blue vesicular, rounded or ovoid nuclei are usually pseudostratified in the proliferation zone located at the superficial portion of the dysplastic tubules.

High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia

There is increasing architectural distortion with glandular crowding and prominent cellular atypia. Tubules can be irregular in shape, with frequent branching and fold-
ing; there is no stromal invasion. Mucin secretion is absent or minimal. The pleomorphic, hyperchromatic, usually pseudodifferentiated nuclei often are cigar-shaped. Prominent amphophilic nucleoli are common. Increased proliferative activity is present throughout the epithelium.

**Progression of intraepithelial neoplasia to carcinoma**

Carcinoma is diagnosed when the tumour invades into the lamina propria (intramucosal carcinoma) or through the muscularis mucosae. Some gastric biopsies contain areas suggestive of true invasion (such as isolated cells, gland-like structures, or papillary projections). The term ‘suspicious for invasion’ is appropriate when the histological criteria for an invasive malignancy are equivocal. Up to 80% of intraepithelial neoplasias may progress to invasion. Indeed, invasive cancer already may be present in patients found to have high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia with no obvious tumour mass. The extent of intestinal metaplasia associated with intraepithelial neoplasia, together with a sulphomucin-secreting phenotype of the intestinalized mucosa (type III intestinal metaplasia), correlate with an increased risk of carcinoma development.

**Adenomas**

Adenomas are circumscribed, benign lesions, composed of tubular and/or villous structures showing intraepithelial neoplasia. The frequency of malignant transformation depends on size and histological grade. It occurs in approximately 2% of lesions measuring < 2 cm and in 40-50% of lesions > 2 cm. Flat adenomas may have a greater tendency to progress to carcinoma.

**Polyps**

**Hyperplastic polyps**

Hyperplastic polyps are one of the commonest gastric polyps. They are sessile or pedunculated lesions, usually < 2.0 cm in diameter, typically arising in the antrum on a background of *H. pylori* gastritis. They contain a proliferation of surface foveolar cells lining elongated, distorted pits extending deep into the stroma. They may contain pyloric glands, chief cells and parietal cells. The surface often eroses. In a minority of cases, carcinoma develops within the polyps in areas of intestinal metaplasia and dysplasia.

**Fundic gland polyps**

Fundic gland polyps are the commonest gastric polyp seen in Western populations. They occur sporadically, without a relationship to *H. pylori* gastritis. They also affect patients on long-term proton pump inhibitors or patients with familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), who may have hundreds of fundic gland polyps [2064, 2065]. The lesions consist of a localized hyperplasia of the deep epithelial compartment of the oxyntic mucosa, particularly of mucous neck cells, with variable degrees of cystic dilatation. Sporadic fundic gland polyps have no malignant potential. Exceptionally, patients with attenuated FAP may develop dysplasia and carcinoma in their fundic gland polyps [2214, 1204].

**Polyposis syndromes**

Peutz-Jeghers polyps, juvenile polyps, and Cowden polyps generally do not occur spontaneously, but rather as part of hereditary polyposis syndromes. In the stomach, Peutz-Jeghers polyps are characterized histologically by branching bands of smooth muscle derived from...
muscularis mucosae, and hyperplasia, elongation and cystic change of foveolar epithelium; the deeper glandular components tend to show atrophy.

Genetic susceptibility
Most gastric carcinomas occur sporadically; only about 8–10% have an inherited familial component [996]. Familial clustering occurs in 12 to 25% with a dominant inheritance pattern [597, 864]. Case-control studies also suggest a small but consistent increased risk in first-degree relatives of gastric carcinoma patients [2200].

Gastric carcinoma occasionally develops in families with germline mutations in ATM5, TP53 (Li Fraumeni syndrome) [2001, 743, 1652], and BRCA2 [1934]. Rare site-specific gastric carcinoma predisposition traits have been reported in several families [1147, 2130], including that of Napoleon.

Hereditary diffuse gastric carcinoma
Germline mutations in the gene encoding the cell adhesion protein E-cadherin (CDH1) lead to an autosomal dominant predisposition to gastric carcinoma, referred to as hereditary diffuse gastric carcinoma (HDGC) [640, 568]. Predisposing germline CDH1 mutations generally resulting in truncated proteins are spread throughout the gene with no apparent hotspots [641, 640, 568, 1581]. HDGC has an age of onset ranging upwards from 14 years and a penetrance of approximately 70% [641, 568]. Histologically, HDGC tumours are diffuse, poorly differentiated infiltrative adenocarcinomas with occasional signet-ring cells [641, 640, 568].

HNPCC
Gastric carcinomas can develop as part of the hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) syndrome [1130, 922]. They are intestinal type cancers, without an association with H. pylori infection; most exhibit microsatellite instability (MSI) [4] with a trend that is opposite to that found in tumours arising in young patients [1759].

Gastrointestinal polyposis syndromes
Gastric carcinomas also occur in patients with gastrointestinal polyposis syndromes including FAP and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome. Overall, gastric carcinoma is rare in these settings, and the exact contribution of the polyposis and underlying germline alterations of APC and LKB1/STK11 to cancer development is unclear.

Blood group A
The blood group A phenotype associates with gastric carcinomas [27, 649]. H. pylori adhere to the Lewis blood group antigen and the latter may be an important host factor facilitating this chronic infection [244] and subsequent cancer risk.

Molecular genetics
Loss of heterozygosity studies and comparative genomic hybridization (CGH) analyses have identified several loci with significant allelic loss, indicating possible tumour suppressor genes important in gastric carcinoma. Common target(s) of loss or gain include chromosomal regions 3p, 4, 5q, (30 to 40% at or near APC’s locus) [1656, 1577], 6q [255], 9p, 17p (over 60 percent at TP53’s locus) [1656], 18q (over 60 percent at DCC’s locus) [1981], and 20q [1287, 449, 2192]. Similar LOH losses at 11p15 occur in proximal and distal carcinomas, suggesting common paths of develop-

Table 3.01
Histological follow-up studies of gastric intraepithelial neoplasia. Proportion progressing to carcinoma and mean interval.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reports</th>
<th>Low-grade dysplasia</th>
<th>High-grade dysplasia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saraga, 1987 (2355)</td>
<td>2% (1/64)</td>
<td>4 yr. 81% (17/21) 4 mos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lansdown, 1990 (2356)</td>
<td>0 (0/7)</td>
<td>85% (11/13) 5 mos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rugge, 1991 (2008)</td>
<td>17% (12/89)</td>
<td>1 yr. 75% (6/8) 4 mos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fertitta, 1993 (2357)</td>
<td>23% (7/30)</td>
<td>10 mos. 81% (25/31) 5 mos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Di Gregorio, 1993 (2358)</td>
<td>7% (6/89)</td>
<td>2 yr. 60% (6/10) 11 mos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rugge, 1994 (2009)</td>
<td>14% (13/90)</td>
<td>2 yr. 78% (14/18) 9 mos.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kokkola, 1996 (2359)</td>
<td>0% (0/96)</td>
<td>67% (2/3) 1.5 yr.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 3.25 A Large hyperplastic polyp of the stomach. B, C Typical histology of gastric hyperplastic polyp. D Hyperplastic polyp with florid epithelial hyperplasia.
ment [1288]. Loss of a locus on 7q (D7S95) associates with peritoneal metastasis.

The frequency of MSI in sporadic gastric carcinoma ranges from 13% to 44% [1713]. MSI+ tumours tend to be advanced intestinal-type cancers. The degree of genome-wide instability varies with more significant instability (e.g., MSI-H: > 33% abnormal loci) occurring in only 16% of gastric carcinoma, usually of the subcardial intestinal or mixed type, with less frequent lymph node or vessel invasion, prominent lymphoid infiltration, and better prognosis [430]. Loss of either hMLH1 or hMSH2 protein expression affects all MSI-H cases [654], suggesting inactivation of both alleles by mechanisms such as hypermethylation [1050, 510].

Genes with simple tandem repeat sequences within their coding regions that are altered in MSI+ tumours include the TGF-β II receptor, BAX, IGFRII, hMSH3, hMSH6, and E2F-4. A study of gastric cancers displaying the MSI-H phenotype reveals that a majority contain mutated TGF-β type II receptors in a polyadenine tract [1420, 1462]. Altered TGF-β II receptor genes can also be found in MSI-lesions.

Allelic loss of TP53 occurs in > 60% of cases and mutations are identified in approximately 30-50% of cases depending on the mutational screening method and sample sizes [729, 1937]. TP53 mutations are identifiable in some intestinal metaplasias; [497] most alterations affect advanced tumours. TP53 mutations in gastric lesions resemble those seen in other cancers with a predominance of base transitions, especially at CpG dinucleotides. Immunohistochemical analyses to detect TP53 overexpression can indirectly identify TP53 mutations but do not have consistent prognostic value in gastric carcinoma patients [557, 766]. Finally, with respect to TP53, there is a polymorphism in codon 72 encoding a proline rather than an arginine that strongly associates with antral cancers [1735].

Sporadic gastric carcinomas, especially diffuse carcinomas, exhibit reduced or abnormal E-cadherin expression [1196, 1135], and genetic abnormalities of the E-cadherin gene and its transcripts. Reduced E-cadherin expression is associated with reduced survival [848].

E-cadherin splice site alterations produce exon deletion and skipping. Large deletions including allelic loss and nonsense point mutations also occur; some tumours exhibit alterations in both alleles [135]. Somatic E-cadherin gene alterations also affect the diffuse component of mixed tumours [1136]. Alpha-catenin, which binds to the intracellular domain of E-cadherin and links it to actin-based cytoskeletal elements, shows reduced immunohistochemical expression in many tumours and correlates with infiltrative growth and poor differentiation [1189]. Beta catenin may also be abnormal in gastric carcinoma.

There is evidence of a tumour suppressor locus on chromosome 3p in gastric carcinomas [893, 1688]. This area encodes the FHIT gene. Gastric carcinomas develop abnormal transcripts, deleted exons [1411], a somatic missense mutation in exon 6 and loss of FHIT protein expression [102].

Somatic APC mutations, mostly nonsense in nature and low in frequency, affect Japanese patients with in situ and invasive neoplasia [1309]. Significant allelic loss (30%) at the APC loci suggest that there is a tumour suppressor gene important in gastric tumourigenesis nearby. Indeed, alternative loci have been mapped to commonly deleted regions in gastric carcinomas [1891].

Amplification and overexpression of the c-met gene encoding a tyrosine kinase receptor for the hepatocyte growth factor occurs in gastric carcinoma [976]. Other growth factor and receptor signal systems that may be involved include epidermal growth factor, TGF-alpha, interleukin-1-a, cripto, amphiregulin, platelet-derived...
growth factor, and K-sam [1879]. Amplification of c-erbB-2, a transmembrane tyrosine kinase receptor oncogene, occurs in approximately 10% of lesions and overexpression associates with a poor prognosis [375]. Telomerase activity has been detected by a PCR-based assay frequently in the late stages of gastric tumours and observed to be associated with a poor prognosis [719].

Prognosis and predictive factors

**Early gastric cancer**

In early gastric cancers, small mucosal (< 4 cm), superficial (> 4 cm) and Pen B lesions have a low incidence of vessel invasion and lymph node metastasis and a good prognosis after surgery (about 90% of patients survive 10 years). In contrast, penetrating lesions of the Pen A type are characterized by a relatively high incidence of vessel invasion and lymph node metastasis and a poor prognosis after surgery (64.8% 5-year survival).

**Advanced gastric cancer**

**Staging.** The TNM staging system for gastric cancer is widely used and it provides important prognostic information. Lymphatic and vascular invasion carries a poor prognosis and is often seen in advanced cases. Lymph node status, which is part of the TNM system, is also an important prognostic indicator. The 5th edition of the UICC TNM Classification of Malignant Tumours [66] and the AJCC Manual for the Staging of Cancer [1] published in 1997, have a number-based classification scheme for reporting nodal involvement in gastric cancer. Roder et al recently published data supporting the value of this reporting system. These authors found that for patients who had nodal involvement in 1-6 lymph nodes (pN1), the 5-year survival...
vival rate was 44% compared with a 30% survival rate in patients with 7-15 lymph nodes involved with tumour (pN2). Patients with more than 15 lymph nodes involved by metastatic tumour (pN3) had an even worse 5-year survival of 11% {1602}. Gastric carcinoma with obvious invasion beyond the pyloric ring, those with invasion up to the pyloric ring, and those without evidence of duodenal invasion have 5-year survival rates of 8%, 22%, and 58%, respectively {671}. Patients with T1 cancers limited to the mucosa and submucosa have a 5-year survival of approximately 95%. Tumours that invade the muscularis propria have a 60-80% 5-year survival, whereas tumours invading the subserosa have a 50% 5-year survival {2181}. Unfortunately, most patients with advanced carcinoma already have lymph node metastases at the time of diagnosis.

**Histological features.** The value of the histological type of tumour in predicting tumour prognosis is more controversial. This relates in part to the classification scheme that is used to diagnose the cancers. Using the Laurén classification, some believe that diffuse lesions generally carry a worse prognosis than intestinal carcinomas. The prognosis is particularly bad in children and young adults, in whom the diagnosis is often delayed {1986, 1554} and likely fit into the category of HDGC. However, others have not found the Laurén classification to predict prognosis {1788, 1177}. One study found that only the Goseki classification {610} added additional prognostic information to the TNM stage {610}. 5-year survival of patients with mucus rich (Goseki II and IV) T3 tumours was significantly worse than that of patients with mucus poor (Goseki I and III) T3 tumours (18% vs. 59% p<0.003) {1177}. A second study validated these findings {1788}. Another classification scheme for gastric carcinoma was proposed by Carneiro et al that may also have prognostic value {610}. The recognition of mixed carcinoma may be important since patients harbouring this type of carcinoma may also have a poor outcome {610}. Some patients with medullary carcinomas with circumscribed, pushing growth margins and a marked stromal inflammatory reaction exhibit a better prognosis than those with other histological tumour types {430}. Some of these patients are in HNPCC kindreds who have MSI-H, a feature associated with better survival. However, not all studies agree that stromal response and pushing margins predict a better prognosis {1788, 1177}.

In summary, gastric carcinoma is a heterogeneous disease biologically and genetically, and a clear working model of gastric tumourigenesis has yet to be formulated. More tumours appear to be related to environmental than to genetic causes, although both may play a role in individual cases. Characterization of the various pathways should afford multiple opportunities to design more specific and therefore more effective therapies.
Endocrine tumours of the stomach

Definition
Most endocrine tumours of the stomach are well differentiated, nonfunctioning enterochromaffin-like (ECL) cell carcinoids arising from oxyntic mucosa in the corpus or fundus. Three distinct types have been recognized: (1) Type I, associated with autoimmune chronic atrophic gastritis (A-CAG); (2) type II, associated with multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN-1) and Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (ZES); type III, sporadic, i.e. not associated with hypergastrinaemia or A-CAG.

ICD-O Code
Carcinoid 8240/3
Small cell carcinoma 8041/3

Epidemiology
In the past, carcinoid tumours of the stomach have been reported to occur with an incidence of 0.002-0.1 per 100,000 population per year and to account for 2-3% of all gastrointestinal carcinoids [587] and 0.3% of gastric lesions [1132]. More recent studies, however, based on endoscopic techniques and increased awareness of such lesions, have shown a much higher incidence of gastric carcinoids, which may now account for 11-41% of all gastrointestinal carcinoids [1588, 1764, 1782]. The incidence of gastric carcinoids is higher in Japan, where they are present 30% of all gastrointestinal carcinoids, which may be due to the high incidence of chronic atrophic gastritis in this country [1277].

Age and sex distribution
Type I gastric ECL-cell carcinoids have been reported to represent 74% of gastric endocrine tumours and to occur most often in females (M:F ratio, 1:2.5). The mean age at biopsy is 63 years (range 15-88 years). Type II ECL-cell carcinoids represent 6% of all gastric endocrine tumours and show no gender predilection (M:F ratio, 1:1) at a mean age of 50 years (range 28-67 years) [1590]. Type III ECL-cell carcinoids constitute 13% of all gastric endocrine tumours and are observed mainly in male patients (M:F ratio, 2.8:1) at a mean age of 55 years (range 21-38 years) [1590]. Small cell carcinoma (poorly differentiated endocrine carcinoma) accounts for 6% of gastric endocrine tumours and prevails in men (M:F ratio, 2:1) at a mean age of 63 years (range 41-61 years) [1590]. Gastrin cell tumours represent less than 1% of gastric endocrine tumours [1590] and are reported in adults (age range 55-77).

Aetiology
Gastrin has a trophic effect on ECL-cells both in humans and experimental animals [172, 652]. Hypergastrinaemic states, resulting either from unregulated hormone release by a gastrinoma or from a secondary response of antral G cells to achlorhydria, are consistently associated with ECL-cell hyperplasia [172].

Autoimmune chronic atrophic gastritis (A-CAG)
This disease is caused by antibodies to parietal cells of the oxyntic mucosa. It leads to chronic atrophic gastritis (with or without pernicious anaemia) which leads to an increase in gastrin production.

Zollinger-Ellison syndrome
This disease results from hypergastrinaemia due to gastrin-producing neoplasms that are preferentially located in the small intestine and pancreas. ECL-cell proliferation is usually limited to hyperplastic lesions of the simple linear type [1042, 1777].

MEN-1
This inherited tumour syndrome causes a variety of endocrine neoplasms, including gastrinomas. In patients with MEN-1 associated ZES (MEN-1/ZES), ECL-cell lesions are usually dysplastic or overtly carcinoid in nature [1779]. In the MEN-1 syndrome, the mutation or deletion of the suppressor MEN-1 oncogene in 11q13 may be involved [394] as an additional pathogenetic factor. In A-CAG, achlorhydria or associated mucosal changes may contribute to tumorigenesis [1785]. Several growth factors, including transforming growth factor-α (TGFα) and basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) seem to be involved in tumour development and progression as well as stromal and vascular proliferation of ECL-cell carcinoids [171].

Localization
Type I, II, and III ECL-cell carcinoids are all located in the mucosa of the body-fundus of the stomach, whereas the rare G-cell tumours are located in the antrum and fundus. Small cell carcinomas prevail in the body/fundus, but some are located in the antrum [1590].

Clinical features
The three distinct types of ECL-cell carcinoids are well differentiated growths but with variable and poorly predictable behaviour.

Type I ECL-cell carcinoids
These are associated with A-CAG involving the corpus and fundus mucosa. Clinical signs include achlorhydria and, less frequently, pernicious anaemia. Hypergastrinaemia or evidence of antral gastrin-cell hyperplasia is observed in all cases of A-CAG. In patients with a carcinoid, ECL-cell hyperplastic changes are a constant feature and dysplastic growths are frequently observed [1590]. A-CAG associated carcinoids are typically small (usually less than 1 cm), mul-
Tumours of the stomach

multiple mucosal-submucosal nodules and trophic-hypersecretory gastropathy and wall (0.6-4.5 cm) due to severe hyperenlarged and show a thickened gastric muscularis propria is involved in only a 

Type II ECL-cell carcinoids
Hypertrophic, hypersecretory gastropathy and high levels of circulating gastrin are critical diagnostic findings. In all cases, ECL-cell hyperplasia and/or dysplasia were noted in the fundic perifundamental mucosa (1590). These gastric carcinoids are usually multiple and smaller than 1.5 cm in size in the majority of cases (1590).

Type III (sporadic) ECL-cell carcinoids
These lesions are not associated with hypergastrinaemia or A-CAG. They are generally solitary growths, and arise in the setting of gastric mucosa devoid of ECL-cell hyperplasia/dysplasia and of significant pathologic lesions except for gastritis (other than A-CAG). Rare multiple tumours have been observed (1590). Clinically, type III tumours present (1) as a mass lesion with no evidence of endocrine symptoms (nonfunctioning carcinoid) and with clinical findings similar to those of adenocarcinoma, including gastric haemorrhage, obstruction and metastasis, or (2) with endocrine symptoms of an ‘atypical carcinoid syndrome’ with red cutaneous flushing and absence of diarrhoea, usually coupled with liver metastases and production of histamine and 5-hydroxytryptophan (1386, 1598).

Type III (sporadic) ECL-cell carcinoids

Non ECL-cell gastric carcinoids.
These uncommon tumours may present with ZES due to their gastrin production (which is more frequently found in duodenal gastrinomas) or with Cushing syndrome due to secretion of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) (711, 1791).

Macroscopy
Type I ECL-cell carcinoids are multiple in 57% of cases (1590), usually appearing as small tan nodules or polyps that are circumscribed in the mucosa or, more often, to the submucosa. Most tumours (77%) are < 1 cm in maximum diameter and 97% of tumours are < 1.5 cm. The muscularis propria is involved in only a minority of cases (7%) (1590). The stomachs with type II tumours are enlarged and show a thickened gastric wall (0.6-4.5 cm) due to severe hypertrophic-hypersecretory gastropathy and multiple mucosal-submucosal nodules which, though larger than those of type I, are generally smaller than 1.5 cm in size in 75% of cases (1590).

Type III ECL-cell tumours are usually single and in 33% of the cases larger than 2 cm in diameter. Infiltration of the muscularis propria is found in 76%, and of the serosa in 53% of cases (1590).

Histopathology
The histopathological categorization of endocrine tumours of the stomach described here, is a modification of the WHO classification of endocrine tumours (1784).

Carcinoid tumour
A carcinoid is defined morphologically as a well differentiated neoplasm of the diffuse endocrine system.

ECL-cell carcinoid
The majority of type I and type II ECL-cell carcinoids are characterized by small, microlobular-trabecular aggregates formed by regularly distributed, often aligned cells (mosaic-like pattern), with regular, monomorphic nuclei, usually inapparent nucleoli, rather abundant, fairly eosinophilic cytoplasm, almost absent mitoses, and infrequent angioinvasion. Tumours with these features (grade 1 according to Rindi et al (1589)) are generally limited to mucosa or submucosa (1589) and can be considered as tumours with benign behaviour. The ECL nature of the tumours is confirmed by strong argyrophilia by Grimelius or Sevier Munger techniques and positive immunoreactivity for chromogranin A, in the absence of reactivity for the argentaffin or diazoinon tests for serotonin, and no or only occasional immunoreactivity for hormonal products (1591). Minor cell sub-populations expressing serotonin, gastrin, somatostatin, pancreatic polypeptide (PP), or α-hCG have been detected in a minority of tumours (1591). A few ECL-cell tumours produce histamine and 5-hydroxytryptophan; these lesions, when they metastasize, can produce “atypical” carcinoid syndrome (1591). Vesicular monoamine transporter type 2 (VMAT-2) is a suitable and specific marker for ECL-cell tumours (1592) while histamine or histidine decarboxylase immunohistochemical analysis, although specific, is less suitable for routinely processed specimens (1865). The ECL-cell nature of argyrophil tumours is ultimately assessed by demonstrating ECL-type granules by electron microscopy (232, 1591).

Sporadic ECL-cell carcinoids are usually more aggressive than those associated with A-CAG or MEN-1. Histopathologically, these tumours show a prevalence of solid cellular aggregates and large trabeculae, crowding, and irregular distribution of round to spindle and polyhedral tumour cells, fairly large vesicular nuclei with prominent eosinophilic nucleoli, or smaller, hyperchromatic nuclei with irregular chromatin clumps and small nucleoli, considerable mitotic activity, sometimes with atypical mitotic figures and scarce necrosis. Tumours with these histological features or grade 2 features (1589) show a higher mitotic rate (mean of 9 per 10 HPF), a frequent expression of p53 (60%), a higher

Table 3.02.
Histological classification of endocrine neoplasms of the stomach

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Carcinoid – well differentiated endocrine neoplasm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 ECL-cell carcinoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 EC-cell, serotonin-producing carcinoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3 G-cell, gastrin-producing tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4 Others</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. Small cell carcinoma – poorly differentiated endocrine neoplasm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysplasia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1Benign behaviour of ECL-cell carcinoid is associated with the following: tumour confined to mucosa-submucosa, nonangioinvasive, < 1cm in size, nonfunctioning; occurring in CAG or MEN-1/ZES. Aggressive behaviour of ECL-cell carcinoid is associated with the following: tumour invades muscularis propria or beyond, > 1cm in size, angioinvasive, functioning, and sporadic occurrence.
Ki67 labelling index (above 1000 per 10 HPF) and more frequent lymphatic and vascular invasion than well differentiated ECL-cell carcinoids (1589). In addition, deeply invasive tumours are associated with local and/or distant metastases in most cases.

**EC-cell, serotonin-producing carcinoid**

This is a very rare tumour in the stomach (1591). It is formed by rounded nests of closely packed small tumour cells, often with peripheral palisading, reminiscent of the typical type A histologic pattern of the argentaffin EC-cell carcinoid of the midgut. The tumour cells are argentaffin, intensely argyrophilic and reactive with chromogranin A and anti-serotonin antibodies. Electron microscopic examination confirms the EC-cell nature by detecting characteristic pleomorphic, intensely osmiophilic granules similar to those of normal gastric EC-cells.

**Gastrin-cell tumours**

Most well differentiated gastrin-cell tumours are small mucosal-submucosal nodules, found incidentally at endoscopy or in a gastrectomy specimen. They may show a characteristic thin trabecular-gyriform pattern or a solid nest pattern. The cells are uniform with scanty cytoplasm and show predominant immunoreactivity for gastrin.

**Small cell carcinoma (poorly differentiated endocrine neoplasm)**

These are identical to small cell carcinomas of the lung. They correspond to grade 3 tumours according to Rindi et al. (1589), and are particularly aggressive, malignant tumours (1591).

**Large cell neuroendocrine carcinoma**

Is a malignant neoplasm composed of large cells having organoid, nesting, trabecular, rosette-like and palisading patterns that suggest endocrine differentiation, and in which the last can be confirmed by immunohistochemistry and electron microscopy. In contrast to small cell carcinoma, cytoplasm is more abundant, nuclei are more vesicular and nucleoli are prominent (1954). These tumours have not been well described in the gastrointestinal tract because of their apparent low frequency (1188).

**Mixed exocrine-endocrine carcinomas**

These consist of neoplastic endocrine cells composing more than 30% of the whole tumour cell population. They are relatively rare in the stomach, despite the frequent occurrence of minor endocrine components inside the ordinary adenocarcinoma. They should generally be classified as adenocarcinomas.

**Precursor lesions**

ECL-cell carcinoids arising in hypergastrinaemic conditions (types I and II) develop through a sequence of hyperplasia-dysplasia-neoplasia that has been well documented in histopathological studies (1777). The successive stages of hyperplasia are termed simple, linear, micronodular, and adenomatoid. Dysplasia is characterized by relatively atypical cells with features of enlarging or fusing micronodules, micro-invasion or newly formed stroma. When the nodules increase in size to > 0.5 mm or invade into the submucosa, the lesion is classified as a carcinoid. The entire spectrum of ECL-cell growth, from hyperplasia to dysplasia and neoplasia has been observed in MEN-1/ZES and autoimmune chronic atrophic gastritis (A-CAG). A similar sequence of lesions has been shown in experimental models of the disease, mostly based on hypergastrinaemia secondary to pharmacological inhibition of acid secretion in rodents (1896).

**Genetic susceptibility**

ECL-cell carcinoids are integral components of the MEN-1 syndrome (1042). In patients with familial MEN-1/ZES, type II gastric carcinoids arise in 13-30% of cases (854, 1042). However, patients
with sporadic ZES rarely develop gastric carcinoids despite serum gastrin levels, which persist 10 fold above normal for a prolonged time.

**Diagnostic criteria of MEN-1**
This rare dominantly inherited disorder is characterized by the synchronous or metachronous development of multiple endocrine tumours in different endocrine organs by the third decade of life. The parathyroid glands are involved in 90-97%, endocrine pancreas in 30-82%, duodenal gastrinomas in 25%, pituitary adenomas in more than 60%, and foregut carcinoids (stomach, lung, thymus) in 5-9% of cases [394]. Other, so-called non-classical MEN-1 tumours, such as cutaneous and visceral lipomas, thyroid and adrenal adenomas, and skin angiofibromas, may occur [394, 1444].

**MEN-1 gene**
MEN-1 has been mapped to chromosome 11q13 [107, 1015]. It encodes for a 610 amino acid nuclear protein, termed 'menin', whose suppressor function involves direct binding to JunD and inhibition of JunD activated transcription [271, 18]. The tumour suppressor function of the gene has been proposed based on the results of combined tumour deletion and pedigree analysis [107, 271, 394]. High rates of loss of heterozygosity (LOH) at the MEN-1 gene locus have been reported in classic tumours of the MEN-1, such as endocrine pancreatic, pituitary and parathyroid neoplasms [1553, 1923]. LOH at 11q13 of type II gastric carcinoids was found in 9 of 10 MEN-1 patients investigated [123, 173, 219, 394].

These findings support the concept that these gastric tumours are integral components of the MEN-1 phenotype, sharing with parathyroid and islet cell tumours the highest frequency of LOH at 11q13. In multiple carcinoids from the same stomach, the deletion size in the wild-type allele differed from one tumour to another, suggesting a multiclonal origin [394]. One of the type II tumours showing LOH at 11q13 was in a patient who had neither ZES nor hypergastrinaemia [173], suggesting that inactivation of the MEN-1 gene alone is capable of causing ECL-cell tumours without requiring the promoting effect of hypergastrinaemia.

The role of MEN-1 in non MEN-associated gastric carcinoids is more controversial. Analysing six type I gastric carcinoids, Debelenko et al. [394] found 11q13 LOH in one tumour while D’Adda et al. [363] detected 11q13 LOH in 12 out of 25 cases (48%). Large deletions in both the 11q13 and 11q14 regions were observed in two poorly differentiated endocrine carcinomas [363].

**Prognosis and predictive factors**
The prognosis of carcinoids is highly variable, ranging from slowly growing benign lesions to malignant tumours with extensive metastatic spread.

*Benign behaviour of ECL-cell carcinoids* is associated with the following: tumour confined to mucosa-submucosa, nonangioinvasive, < 1 cm in size, nonfunctioning; occurring in CAG or MEN-1/ ZES. Type I, A-CAG associated tumours, have an excellent prognosis, as do most type II MEN-1/ZES tumours.

*Aggressive behaviour of ECL-cell carcinoid* is associated with the following: tumour invades muscularis propria or beyond, is > 1 cm in size, angioinvasive, functioning, with high mitotic activity and sporadic occurrence [1591, 1590, 1589]. *Metastasis.* Lymph node metastases are detected in 5% of type I and 30% of type II cases, while distant (liver) metastases are found respectively in 2.5% and 10% of cases. No tumour-related or only exceptional death was observed among patients with type I carcinoid, while only 1/10 patients died of type II carcinoid. On
the other hand, lymph node metastases are found in 71% and distant metastases in 69% of patients with type III tumours; death from the tumour occurs in 27% of patients with a mean survival of 28 months [1590].

**Therapy**

Polypoid type I carcinoids < 1cm, fewer than 3-5 in number, associated with A-CAG can be endoscopically excised and have an excellent prognosis. If larger than 1 cm or more than 3-5 lesions are present, antrectomy and local excision of all accessible fundic lesions is recommended.

In type II carcinoids the clinical evolution depends on the behaviour of associated pancreatic and duodenal gastrinomas more than on the behaviour of gastric tumours, although some aggressive ECL-cell carcinomas may be fatal [173]. In such patients, careful search for associated pancreatic, duodenal, parathyroid, or other tumours and family investigation for the MEN-1 gene mutation are needed. Type III (sporadic) ECL-cell carcinoids > 1 cm generally require surgical resection even when they are histologically well differentiated.

**Definition**

Primary gastric lymphomas are defined as lymphomas originating from the stomach and contiguous lymph nodes. Lymphomas at this site are considered primary if the main bulk of disease is located in the stomach. The majority of gastric lymphomas are high-grade B-cell lymphomas, some of which have developed through progression from low-grade lymphomas of mucosa associated lymphoid tissue (MALT). The low-grade lesions are almost exclusively B-cell MALT lymphomas.

**Historical annotation**

Classically, primary gastric lymphomas have been considered to be lymphomas that are confined to the stomach and the contiguous lymph nodes [378]. While this excludes cases of secondary involvement of the stomach by nodal-type lymphomas – which may occur in up to 25% of nodal lymphomas [508] – this definition is excessively restrictive and excludes more disseminated, higher stage lymphomas arising within the stomach as well as those with bone marrow involvement. Today, stomach lymphomas are considered primary if the main bulk of disease is present in the stomach. Recognition of morphological features characteristic of primary extranodal lymphomas of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue-type helps in defining these lesions as primary to the stomach irrespective of the degree of dissemination.

**Epidemiology**

Approximately 40% of all non-Hodgkin lymphomas arise at extranodal sites [1438, 527], with the gastrointestinal tract accounting for about 4-18% of all non-Hodgkin lymphomas in Western countries and up to 25% of cases in the Middle East. Within the gastrointestinal tract, the stomach is the most frequent site of involvement in Western countries while the small intestine is most frequently affected in Middle Eastern countries. Lymphoma constitutes up to 10% of all gastric malignancies; its incidence appears to be increasing but this may, at least in part, be due to the recognition of the neoplastic nature of lesions previously termed ‘pseudolymphoma’ [677]. Gastric lymphoma has a worldwide distribution; somewhat higher incidences have been reported for some Western communities with a high prevalence of *Helicobacter pylori* infection [420]. Primary Hodgkin disease is very rare in the gastrointestinal tract.

**Age and sex distribution**

Incidence rates are similar in men and women. The age range is wide but the majority of patients are over 50 years at presentation.

**Aetiology**

*Helicobacter pylori infection*

Initial studies of low-grade MALT lymphoma suggested that the tumour was associated with *H. pylori* in 92-98% of cases [447, 2135]; subsequent studies have suggested an association in 62-77% [1316, 583, 2146, 890, 178]. *H. pylori* infection is seen less frequently in high-grade lymphomas with a low-grade component (52-71%) and in pure high-grade lymphomas (25-38%) [583, 677].

---

**Fig. 3.37** Small cell carcinoma of the stomach.
Tumours of the stomach

58

ic symptoms, including dyspepsia, nausea, vomiting. High-grade lesions may appear as a palpable mass in the epigastrium and can cause severe symptoms, including weight loss.

Imaging
Low-grade MALT lymphomas present as intragastric nodularity with preferential location in the antrum [2180]. A more precise assessment is obtained with spiral CT, particularly if this is used in conjunction with distension of the stomach by water. This technique can identify up to 88% of cases, most of which have nodularity or enlarged rugal folds, and it can assess the submucosal extent of the tumour [1493]. High-grade lymphomas are usually larger and more frequently associated with the presence of a mass and with ulceration. In some cases, the radiological features may mimic diffuse adenocarcinoma [1059]. Endoscopic ultrasound is emerging as the investigation of choice in the assessment of the extent of lymphoma infiltration through the gastric wall. Local lymph node involvement can also be assessed by this technique.

Endoscopy
Some cases show enlarged gastric folds, gastritis, superficial erosions or ulceration. In these cases the surrounding normal appearing gastric mucosa may harbour lymphoma, and accurate mapping of the lesion requires multiple biopsies from all sites including areas appearing macroscopically normal. In a proportion of cases, endoscopic examination shows very minor changes such as hyperaemia and in a few cases random biopsies of apparently entirely normal mucosa may reveal lymphoma. High-grade lymphoma is usually associated with more florid lesions, ulcers and masses. It is often impossible to distinguish lymphoma from carcinoma endoscopically.

MALT lymphomas
Pathogenesis
The normal gastric mucosa contains scattered lymphocytes and plasma cells but is devoid of organised lymphoid tissue. The initial step in the development of primary gastric lymphoma is the acquisition of organised lymphoid tissue from within which the lymphoma can develop. In most cases, this is associated with infection by *H. pylori* [572], although it has also been seen following infection by *Helicobacter heilmannii* [1842] and in association with coeliac disease [227]. This organised lymphoid tissue shows all the features of MALT, including the infiltration of the epithelium by B-lymphocytes reminiscent of the lymphoepithelium seen in Peyer patches [2135]. The cellular basis of the interaction between *H. pylori* and MALT lymphoma cells has been studied in detail. When unseparated cells isolated from low-grade gastric MALT lymphomas are incubated in vitro with heat treated whole cell preparations from *H. pylori*, the tumour cells proliferate while those cultured in the absence of the organism or stimulating chemical mitogen rapidly die [768]. The proliferative response appeared to be strain specific for individual tumours but varied between tumours from different patients [768]. When T-cells were removed from the culture system the proliferative response was not seen and this could not be induced if the T-cells were replaced by supernatant from other cultures containing unseparated tumour derived cells [769]. Together these studies show that the proliferation of the MALT lymphoma is driven by the presence of the *H. pylori* but that this, rather than being a direct effect on the tumour

![Fig. 3.38 Multifocal malignant lymphoma of the stomach. The two larger lesions are centrally ulcerated.](image)

![Fig. 3.39 Low-grade B-cell MALT lymphoma. Perifollicular distribution of centrocyte-like cells with a predominant monocytoid morphology.](image)
cells, is due to a mechanism mediated via T-cells and that this help is contact dependent. Further studies have shown that the T-cells responsible for the proliferative drive are specifically those found within the tumour and their function cannot be replaced by T-cells derived from elsewhere (e.g. the spleen) in the same patient [769].

**Histopathology**

The organisation of the lymphoma mimics that of normal MALT and the cellular morphology and immunophenotype is essentially that of the marginal zone B-cell. The neoplastic cells infiltrate between pre-existing lymphoid follicles, initially localised outside the follicular mantle zone in a marginal zone pattern. As the lesion progresses, the neoplastic cells erode, colonize and eventually overrun the lymphoid follicles resulting in a vague nodularity to an otherwise diffuse lymphomatous infiltrate [800]. The morphology of the neoplastic cell can be variable even within a single case. Characteristically, the cell is of intermediate size with pale cytoplasm and an irregular nucleus. The resemblance of these cells to the centrocyte of the follicle centre has led to the term ‘centrocyte-like (CCL)’ cell being applied to the neoplastic component of MALT lymphomas. In some cases, the CCL cell may be more reminiscent of a mature small B lymphocyte while in other cases, the cell may have a monocytoid appearance with more abundant, pale cytoplasm and a well defined cell border. Plasma cell differentiation is typical and may be very prominent. Dutcher bodies may be identified. The CCL cells infiltrate and destroy adjacent gastric glands to form lymphoepithelial lesions. Lymphoepithelial lesions typical for MALT lymphoma are defined as infiltration of the glandular epithelium by clusters of neoplastic lymphoid cells with associated destruction of gland architecture and morphological changes within the epithelial cells, including increased eosinophilia.

**Immunohistochemistry**

The immunophenotype of the CCL cell is similar to that of the marginal zone B-cell. There is expression of pan-B-cell antigens such as CD20 and CD79a and the more mature B-cell markers CD21 and CD35. The cells do not express CD10. They are usually positive for bcl-2 protein and may express CD43 but do not express CD6 or CD23. They express surface and, to a lesser extent, cytoplasmic immunoglobulin (usually IgM or IgA, rarely IgG) and show light chain restriction. Immunostaining with anti-cytokeratin antibodies is useful in demonstrating lymphoepithelial lesions. Immunostaining with antibodies that highlight follicular dendritic cells (anti-CD21, anti-CD23 or anti-CD35) help to demonstrate underlying follicular dendritic cell networks in those cases in which the lymphoid follicles have been completely overrun by the lymphoma.

**Differential diagnosis**

The distinction between florid gastritis and low-grade MALT lymphoma may be difficult. In such cases it is essential to have sufficient biopsy material (up to eight biopsies from endoscopically suspicious areas) with good preservation of morphology and correct orientation of the biopsy specimen. For the distinction between reactive and neoplastic infiltrates, histological evaluation remains the gold standard, but accessory studies may be helpful. In both reactive and neoplastic cases, lymphoid follicles are present and these may be associated with active inflammation, crypt abscesses and reactive epithelial changes. In gastritis, the infiltrate surrounding the lymphoid follicles in the lamina propria is plasma cell predominant while in MALT lymphoma the infiltrate contains a dominant population of lymphocytes with CCL cell morphology, infiltrating through the lamina propria and around glands. Prominent lymphoepithelial lesions, Dutcher bodies and moderate cytological atypia are associated only with lymphoma. All of these features may not be present in biopsy material from a single case. In some cases it is justifiable to make the diagnosis of low-grade MALT lymphoma in the absence of one or more of these features if the overall histological appearances are those of lymphoma. Rare or questionable lymphoepithelial lesions, dense lymphoid infiltration, mild cytological atypia and muscularis mucosae invasion are features more often associated with, but not limited to, lymphoma (2212). In some cases it will not be possible to make a definite distinction between reactive infiltrates and lymphoma and in these cases a diagnosis of ‘atypical lymphoid infiltrate of uncertain nature’ is appropriate.

**Effect of *H. pylori* eradication**

The histological appearances of gastric biopsies from patients showing complete regression of lymphoma after *H. pylori*

---

**Fig. 3.40** Low-grade B-cell MALT lymphoma. Small lymphoid cells form a diffuse infiltrate extending into the submucosa.

---

**Fig. 3.41** Low-grade B-cell MALT lymphoma. The centrocyte-like cells show prominent plasma cell differentiation with (A) extracellular immunoglobulin deposition, and (B) prominent Dutcher bodies.
eradication are characteristic. The lamina propria appears ‘empty’ with gland loss. Scattered lymphocytes and plasma cells are seen within the lamina propria and there are usually focal nodular collections of small lymphocytes. These collections frequently contain a mixture of B- and T-cells and may be based on follicular dendritic cell networks. In most cases, the appearances are insufficient for a diagnosis of residual lymphoma. The significance of these lymphoid nodules remains uncertain.

In cases showing partial regression or no change following *H. pylori* eradication, the lamina propria contains an infiltrate morphologically indistinguishable from that seen at diagnosis, but in these treated cases lymphoepithelial lesions may be very scanty or absent. In some cases of partial regression and in cases with relapsed low-grade MALT lymphoma following *H. pylori* eradication, the lymphoma may be largely confined to the submucosa with only minimal involvement of the mucosa.

**PCR based diagnosis**

The role of genetic analyses in the diagnosis and follow up of low-grade MALT lymphoma remains controversial. Up to 10% of well characterized cases of MALT lymphoma identified as clonal through demonstration of rearrangement of the immunoglobulin heavy chain gene by Southern blot fail to show a clonal pattern when examined for immunoglobulin heavy chain gene rearrangement by PCR using fresh frozen tissue (418). This false negative rate increases if paraffin embedded material is studied (417). Several studies have revealed by PCR the presence of clonal B-cell populations in biopsies from patients with uncomplicated chronic gastritis and no morphological evidence of lymphoma (1677, 225, 388). In conjunction with histological assessment, PCR studies may be useful in monitoring regression of MALT lymphomas following conservative therapy (25). However, PCR detected clonal B-cell populations may still be detected in cases showing complete histological regression. Some, but no all of these will eventually show molecular regression but there may be a prolonged time lag between histological and molecular regression (1677). In the absence of histological evidence of residual lymphoma, the clinical significance of a persistent clonal population remains uncertain.

**Progression to high-grade lymphoma**

The emergence of clusters of large transformed ‘blastic’ B-cells reflects transformation to high-grade lymphoma (383). Eventually, these areas become confluent to form sheets of cells indistinguishable from the cells of a diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. As long as a low-grade component remains, these tumours may be termed high-grade MALT lymphomas but during further progression, all traces of the pre-existing low-grade lymphoma are lost, making it impossible to distinguish the lesion from a diffuse large B-cell lymphoma of unspecified type. In cases with both low- and high-grade components, genetic studies have con-
firmed the transformation of low-grade to high-grade lymphoma in the majority of cases [1263] while in other cases both components appear clonally unrelated, suggesting the development of a second primary lymphoma [1184, 1491].

**Molecular genetics of MALT lymphomas**

Early studies confirmed the presence of immunoglobulin gene rearrangement in each case [1803] and suggested that there was no involvement of the bcl-1 or bcl-2 oncogenes [2136]. The translocation t(11;18)(q21;q21) has been identified in a significant number of low-grade MALT lymphomas and may be the sole genetic alteration in these cases. However, this translocation appears to be less common in high-grade lesions [1435, 95]. Trisomy 3 has been detected in up to 60% of cases in some studies using both metaphase and interphase techniques [2134, 2137], but this finding has not been confirmed by other studies [1434]. The translocation t(1;14) (p22, q32) has also been described in a small proportion of cases [2138] and this is associated with increased survival of tumour cells in unstimulated cell culture. Cloning of the breakpoint involved in this translocation has led to the discovery of a novel gene, bcl-10, on chromosome 1 that may be significant in determining the behaviour of MALT lymphomas [2116]. Studies of the immunoglobulin gene of MALT lymphoma cells has shown the sequential accumulation of somatic mutations, consistent with an ongoing, antigen driven selection and proliferation [279, 434, 1546]. Study of the third complementary determining region of the immunoglobulin heavy chain gene shows a pattern of changes associated with the generation of antibody diversity and increased antigen binding affinity [131]. Transformation of low-grade MALT lymphoma to a high-grade lesion has been associated with several genetic alterations. While the t(11;18) chromosomal translocation is not seen in high-grade MALT lymphoma and may be protective against transformation, alterations in the genes coding for p53, p16, c-myc and trisomy 12 have all been identified in high-grade lesions [1489, 1490, 1341, 270, 435, 1992]. Bcl-6 protein has also been described in high-grade lymphomas while being absent from low-grade lesions [1425]. Some studies have shown a high level of bcl-6 gene hyper-

**Mantle cell lymphoma**

Mantle cell lymphoma of the stomach is typically a component of multiple lymphomatous polyposis of the gastrointestinal tract and infrequently encountered outside this clinical context [1380]. Morphologically and immunophenotypically, the lymphoma is indistinguishable from mantle cell lymphomas of lymph nodes, with a diffuse and monotonous infiltrate of cells with scanty cytoplasm and irregular nuclei that express B-cell markers together with CD5 and cyclinD1.

**Other low-grade B-cell lymphomas**

Although the lymphoid tissue in the stomach contains all the B-cell populations encountered in nodal lymphoid tissue, other low-grade B-cell lymphomas, such as follicle centre cell lymphomas, are very rare and usually indistinguishable from their nodal counterparts.

**Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma**

These lymphomas are morphologically indistinguishable from diffuse large B-cell lymphomas that arise within lymph nodes. There is complete destruction of the gastric glandular architecture by large cells with vesicular nuclei and prominent nucleoli. Variants of large B-cell lymphoma (e.g. plasmablastic lymphoma) may also be encountered [1541].

**Burkitt lymphoma**

Although rare, classical Burkitt lymphomas may be encountered in the stomach [55]. The morphology is identical to that of Burkitt lymphoma encountered elsewhere, with diffuse sheets of medium sized cells with scanty cytoplasm and round/oval nuclei containing small nucleoli. Within the sheets there are numerous macrophages, giving a ‘starry-sky’ appearance. Mitoses are frequent and apoptotic debris abundant. The cells express CD10 in addition to pan-B-cell markers. Close to 100% of nuclei are immunoreactive for Ki-67.

**T-cell lymphoma**

Primary gastric T-cell lymphomas are rare. Most have been reported from areas of endemic HTLV-1 infection and probably represent gastric manifestations of adult T-cell leukemia/lymphoma (ATLL). In these regions, T-cell lymphoma may represent up to 7% of gastric lymphomas [1741]. Most of the remainder are similar to peripheral T-cell lymphomas encountered in lymph nodes but occasionally, gastric NK cell lymphomas are also seen [1741]. It has recently been demonstrated that some gastric T-cell lymphomas display features of intraepithelial T lymphocyte differentiation (e.g. expression of the human mucosal lymphocyte 1 antigen, CD103), similar to those seen in intestinal T-cell lymphomas [520].

**Hodgkin disease**

Hodgkin disease may involve the gastrointestinal tract but this is usually secondary to nodal disease. Primary gastric Hodgkin disease is very rare [2210].

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

Studies on the regression of low-grade MALT lymphoma through *H. pylori* eradication have shown remission in 67-84% of cases [1926, 1520, 2133], but this applies only to low-grade lesions and is most effective for lesions showing superficial involvement of the gastric wall. Although remission following *H. pylori* eradication has occasionally been seen in advanced tumours, the highest success rate of 90-100% is seen in tumours confined to the mucosa and superficial submucosa. The time taken to achieve remission in these patients varies from 4-6 weeks to 18 months. The stability of these remissions remains to be determined; one study has reported a relapse in 10% of patients after a mean follow-up period of 24 months [1338] while others have found sustained remissions for up to six years [801]. Surgical resection is associated with prolonged survival [552] in many cases. Involvement of the resection margins and advanced stage are poor prognostic features, but not with the addition of chemotherapy [1262]. Irrespective of treatment modality, the only significant independent prognostic variables are stage and tumour-grade [260, 1653, 1262, 320, 383].
Mesenchymal tumours of the stomach

M. Miettinen
J.Y. Blay
L.H. Sobin

Definition
Most gastrointestinal mesenchymal neoplasms are gastrointestinal stromal tumours (GIST) or smooth muscle types. They are predominantly located in the stomach. The definitions of other mesenchymal lesions follow the WHO histological classification of soft tissue tumours (2086).

Terminology
The designation GIST was originally introduced as a neutral term for tumours that were neither leiomyomas nor schwannomas. The term GIST is now used for a specific group of tumours comprising the majority of all gastrointestinal mesenchymal tumours. These tumours encompass most gastric and intestinal mesenchymal tumours earlier designated as leiomyoma, cellular leiomyoma, leiomyoblastoma and leiomyosarcoma (80, 76, 78, 79, 1227). Currently, the terms leiomyoma and leiomyosarcoma are reserved for those tumours that show smooth muscle differentiation, histologically or by immunohistochemistry, e.g. with strong and diffuse actin and desmin positivity. Most tumours historically called leiomyosarcoma (31, 1559, 1750) are now classified as GISTs; hence the old literature on gastric (and intestinal) leiomyosarcomas largely reflects GISTs.

Epidemiology
GIST accounts for 2.2% of malignant gastrointestinal tumours in SEER data. There is no gender preference (M:F, 1.1:1), in contrast to carcinomas which have a M:F of 2:1 (1928). Adults between the 6th and 8th decade are primarily affected. The ratio of the age-adjusted incidence rates for Blacks and Whites is greater for sarcomas (3 to 1) than for carcinomas (2 to 1). Black women are affected six times more frequently than white women (0.6 versus 0.1 per 100,000 per year, analogous to the ratio for uterine leiomyosarcomas) (1584).

Localization
GISTs occur at every level of the tubular gastrointestinal tract and additionally may be primary in the omentum and mesentery. They are most common in the stomach (60-70%), followed by small intestine (20-30%), colorectum and oesophagus (together < 10%) (1227).

Clinical features
GISTs present a spectrum from clinically benign, small to medium-sized tumours, to frank sarcomas. According to our estimate, approximately 30% of GISTs are clinically malignant, and a substantial number of patients with apparent radical surgery will relapse (1344, 462). Typical of the malignant GISTs at all locations is intra-abdominal spread as multiple tumour nodules, and distant metastases most commonly to liver followed by lung and bone in decreasing frequency (479A, 1984, 1855). Vague abdominal discomfort is the usual complaint in symptomatic tumours. Both benign and sarcomatous GISTs that project into the lumen may ulcerate and be a source of bleeding (80, 78, 79).

Macroscopy
Small gastric GISTs appear as serosal, submucosal or intramural nodules that are usually incidental findings during abdominal surgery or endoscopy. Some tumours may ulcerate, especially the epithelioid stromal tumours. The larger tumours protrude intraluminally or to the serosal side, and may have a massive extragastric component that masks the gastric origin. Intraluminal tumours are often lined by intact mucosa, but ulceration occurs in 20-30% of cases. Infiltration by direct extension to the pancreas or liver occurs. On sectioning GISTs vary from slightly firm to soft, tan, often with foci of haemorrhage. Larger tumours may undergo massive haemorrhagic necrosis and cyst formation leaving only a narrow rim of peripheral viable tissue; malignant tumours may form complex cystic masses. Multinodular peritoneal seeding is typical of malignant GISTs.

Histopathology
Typically GISTs are immunohistochemically positive for KIT tyrosine kinase receptor (stem cell factor receptor), which is perhaps their single best defining feature (920, 713, 1665, 1762). The c-kit positivity of GISTs parallels that seen in the interstitial cells of Cajal, the pacemaker cells regulating autonomic motor activity (1139, 1654). Based on this, and on the expression of an embryonic form of smooth muscle myosin heavy chain in GISTs and Cajal cells (1648) the origin from Cajal cells has been proposed (920, 1762). However, considering the origin of Cajal cells and smooth muscle from a common precursor cell (1035, 2186), the hybrid Cajal cell and smooth muscle differentiation seen in many GISTs, and the occurrence of GISTs in the omentum and mesentery (1225), their origin from such a precursor cell pool with differentiation towards a Cajal cell phenotype is more likely. Electron microscopic observations showing hybrid autonomic nerve and smooth muscle features in many GISTs are also consistent with origin from a multipotential precursor cell (474, 1227).

Morphology
GISTs may resemble smooth muscle tumours histologically as well as grossly. The majority of gastric GISTs are spindle cell tumours that show a variety of histological patterns (1866). Some, including many of the smaller ones, are collagen-rich and paucicellular. A perinuclear vacuolization pattern is common. Tumours with moderate cellularity and focal nuclear palisading can resemble nerve sheath tumours. Peri-
vascular hyalinization can accompany myxoid change. The epithelioid pattern occurs in approximately one-third of gastric GISTs and corresponds to tumours previously designated as leiomyoblastoma or epithelioid leiomyosarcoma. Some of the epithelioid tumours show mild pleomorphism. Marked pleomorphism is rare.

**Immunohistochemistry.** Most GISTs are positive for KIT (CD117), which may show membrane, diffuse cytoplasmic or a perinuclear accentuation pattern. Approximately 70-80% of GISTs are positive for CD34 (typically membrane pattern). 30-40% are focally or diffusely positive for α-smooth muscle actin, very few show reactivity for desmin (<5%), and very few for S100-protein (<5%, usually weak reactivity) [526, 1229, 1260, 1991, 1227, 1232].

**Assessment of malignancy and grading.**

Histological assessment of malignancy is essentially based on mitotic counts and size of the lesion. Tumours less than 5 cm are usually benign. Different limits have been applied for low-grade malignant tumours. This designation has been used for tumours showing mitotic counts greater than 5 per 50 HPF, or tumours showing as many as 5 mitoses per 10 HPF. Tumours over 5 cm, but with fewer than 5 mitoses per 50hpf, are often assigned to the category of 'uncertain malignant potential'. However, large tumours (especially over 10 cm) with no detected mitotic activity may develop late recurrences and even metastases. DNA-aneuploidy, high proliferative index (over > 10%) by proliferation markers (especially Ki67 analogs, such as MIB1) may reflect higher malignant potential [338, 362, 929, 525, 1048, 1632, 461, 462].

Histological grading follows the systems commonly used for soft tissue sarcomas. Mitotic activity is the main criterion, namely those tumours with over 10 mitoses per 10 hpf are considered high-grade. Lower mitotic activity (over 1-5 mitoses/10 HPH) is considered low-grade.

**Genetics**

Both benign and malignant GISTs commonly show losses in chromosomes 14 and 22 in cytogenetic studies and by comparative genomic hybridization. Losses in 1p and chromosome 15 have been shown less frequently. Gains and high level amplifications occur in malignant GISTs in 3q, 8q, 5p and Xp [450, 451].

A proportion of GISTs, more commonly the malignant examples, show mutations in the regulatory juxtamembrane domain (exon 11) of the c-kit gene. A family with germline KIT mutations and GISTs has also been described. These c-kit mutations have been shown to represent gain-of-function mutations leading to ligand-independent activation (autophos-
phorylation) of the tyrosine kinase and further the phosphorylation cascade that leads into mitogenic activation [928, 713, 1310, 1356]. The most common mutations appear to be in-frame deletions of 3-21 base pairs, followed by point mutations and occasionally described insertions [475, 713, 1018, 1289]. Association of neurofibromatosis type I has been described in rare cases; these tumours represent phenotypical GISTs, but molecular genetic studies are not available [1681A]. The rare combination of pulmonary chondroma, gastric epithelioid GIST and paraganglioma in the Carney triad has probably a common yet unknown genetic link [246].

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

The prognosis of GISTs is largely dependent on the mitotic rate, size, depth of invasion, and presence or absence of metastasis [462]. Although race and gender did not play a role in survival rates in the SEER data for gastric carcinomas, the 5-year survival rates for sarcomas varied considerably, e.g. 49% 5-year survival for males versus 74% for females; 37% for Blacks versus 66% for Whites [1928].

**Other mesenchymal tumours**

**Gastrointestinal autonomic nerve tumour (GANT)**

Gastrointestinal autonomic nerve tumour (GANT), or the previous designation plexosarcoma, has been applied to mesenchymal tumours that have shown ultrastructural features of autonomic neurons:

---

**Fig. 3.47** Examples of mutations of the exon 11 of the c-kit gene in gastrointestinal stromal tumours. **A** Nucleotide sequence of the c-kit gene. **B** Predicted amino acid sequences of the mutant KIT. The top line in each figure represents the germline I and the wild type KIT protein, respectively. Each line below them represents one case. The codons are indicated by numbers. The shaded areas correspond to deletions (black) or point mutations (gray). Courtesy of Dr. J. Lasota, Washington D.C.

---

**Fig. 3.48** Malignant gastrointestinal stromal tumours. **A** Tumour cells form perivascular collars surrounded by necrosis. **B** Numerous mitotic figures are present.
cell processes with neurosecretory type dense core granules and arrays of microtubules [702, 701, 1023, 2038]. Histologically, such tumours have shown a variety of spindle cell and epithelioid patterns similar to those seen in GISTs; at least some of these tumours are positive for KIT. It therefore appears that GANT and GIST groups overlap, and may even merge. Because electron microscopy is currently applied less widely for tumour diagnosis than before, GAN-type differentiation in gastrointestinal tumours is probably underestimated. Correlative light microscopic, ultrastructural, immunohistochemical and molecular genetic studies are needed to resolve the question of the relationship of GANT and GIST.

**Leiomyoma and leiomyosarcoma**
Well-documented true gastric leiomyomas and leiomyosarcomas are so infrequent that there is no significant data on demographic, clinical or gross features. Leiomyomas are composed of bland spindle cells showing low or moderate cellularity and slight if any mitotic activity. There may be focal nuclear atypia. The cells have eosinophilic, fibrillary, often clumped cytoplasm. Leiomyosarcomas are tumours that show histologically and immunohistochemically evident smooth muscle differentiation. They usually present in older age and are typically of high-grade malignancy. As defined here, leiomyomas and leiomyosarcomas are typically globally positive for desmin and smooth muscle actin, and are negative for CD34 and CD117 (KIT). Tumours with mitotic counts exceeding 10 mitoses per 10 high power fields are classed as high-grade.

**Glomus tumours**
Lesions similar to glomus tumours of peripheral soft tissue occur predominantly in the gastric antrum as small intramural masses (1-4 cm in diameter, average 2 cm). They occur in older adults (mean 6th decade) with equal sex incidence [77]. One-third manifests as ulcer, one-third as bleeding, and one-third is asymptomatic. The lesions are often surrounded by hyperplastic smooth muscle and have sheets of rounded or epithelioid cells with sharp cell borders outlined by well-defined basement membranes demonstrable by PAS-stain or immunostaining for basement membrane proteins such as laminin and collagen type IV. The tumour cells have small, uniform nuclei and mitotic activity is virtually absent. The tumour cells are positive for smooth muscle actin and negative for keratins. Multiple glomus tumours with apparent intravascular spread have been described [666].

**Schwannomas**
These lesions are rare in the gastrointestinal tract, but the stomach is their most common site within the digestive system. They are not associated with neurofibromatosis types I or II and occur predominantly in older adults (average 58 years in the largest series). They grossly and clinically resemble GISTS. Schwannomas are usually covered by intact mucosa and principally involve the muscularis propria. The tumours vary from 0.5-7 cm (mean 3 cm) in diameter, and are spherical or ovoid, occasionally showing a plexiform multinodular pattern. Histologically, gastrointestinal schwannomas usually show a spindle cell pattern like cellular schwannoma with vague nuclear palisading. The tumours often have sprinkled lymphocytes and a nodular lymphoid cuff [366, 1666]. The distinction between schwannoma and GIST is important because the former is benign even when large and mitotically active. Schwannomas are positive for S100-protein and negative for desmin, actin and KIT.

**Lipoma**
Lipomas composed of mature adipose tissue may be observed in the stomach. They typically protrude into the lumen.

**Granular cell tumour**
Lesions similar to those in peripheral soft tissues are occasionally encountered in the stomach, where they principally occur as small submucous nodules and less commonly as intramural or subserous masses. These lesions occur predominantly in middle age, and show a strong predilection for Blacks. Associated gastric ulcer symptoms are common. See chapter on mesenchymal tumours of the oesophagus for pathological features [862].

**Kaposi sarcoma**
Kaposi sarcoma may occur in the stomach as a mucosal lesion or, less commonly, as a mural mass, usually in HIV-positive patients.
Secondary tumours of the stomach

Definition
Tumours of the stomach that originate from an extra-gastric neoplasm or which are discontinuous with a primary tumour elsewhere in the stomach.

Incidence
Metastatic disease involving the stomach is unusual. An autopsy study from the USA found 17 metastases to the stomach in 1010 autopsies of cancer patients, giving a frequency of 1.7% (1220). In a large series of autopsies from Malmö (Table 3.02), 92 gastric metastases were found in 7165 patients (1.28%) who had cancer at the time of death (130).

Clinical features
Gastrointestinal symptoms may occur in up to 50% of patients with gastric metastases. Bleeding and abdominal pain are the most common clinical features, followed by vomiting and anorexia. Intestinal and gastric metastases were found after a median interval of 6 years (range, 0.12-12.5 years) following the diagnosis of primary breast cancer (1700). Gastric metastasis from a breast cancer has occurred up to 30 years after diagnosis of the primary neoplasm (1148). Occasionally, metastatic breast cancer in the stomach is detected before the primary tumour is diagnosed.

Imaging and endoscopy
An upper gastrointestinal endoscopy study identified 14 metastatic tumours in the upper gastrointestinal tract, 13 of which were in the stomach (873). Many metastases are described as volcano-like ulcers (618; 1108). On endoscopy, pigmentation may not be evident in some melanomas (1069). In patients with metastatic lobular breast carcinoma the endoscopic appearance may be that of limatitis plastica. In such cases, conventional biopsies may be too superficial to include diagnostic tissue in the submucosa. Endosonography may help direct attention to the deeper infiltrate (1097). Gastric melanomas often appear as polypoid or target lesions on barium X-ray studies (1718) and, less commonly, as a submucosal mass (1148).

Origin
In a large Swedish autopsy series (130), most gastric metastases were from primary breast cancer, followed by melanoma and lung cancer (Table 3.02). There were gastric metastases in 25 of 695 (3.6%) patients with breast cancer, whereas gastric metastases were found in 10 of 747 (1.3%) of patients with lung cancer (see Table 4.01) (1220). Several studies have shown lung, breast, other gastrointestinal carcinomas, and melanoma to be the most frequent primary lesions (1220, 158, 873, 618). Less frequently, cancers of the ovary, testis, liver, colon, and parotid metastasize to the stomach (1220; 618; 1148; 1872).

Of all the primary cancers that can lead to gastric metastasis, breast cancer does so most frequently. Some reports show that between 50% and 75% of patients with breast cancer develop gastric metastases (1148; 455). However, in a Dutch study covering a 15-year-period, there were only 27 patients with gastric metastases from primary breast cancer (1872). There is no preferential localization of metastases to subsites in the stomach. Cancers at any site can produce gastric metastases through haematogeneous spread. Lesions of the pancreas, oeso-

Table 3.02
Metastases to the stomach, small intestine, colon and appendix. Data are from 16,294 autopsies (130).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site of metastasis</th>
<th>No. of cases with metastasis</th>
<th>% of all autopsies</th>
<th>Most frequent primary cancer</th>
<th>Next most frequent primary cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stomach</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>0.58%</td>
<td>Breast (25 cases)</td>
<td>Melanoma (19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small intestine</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>0.78%</td>
<td>Lung (33 cases)</td>
<td>Melanoma (33)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colon</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>0.39%</td>
<td>Lung (14 cases)</td>
<td>Breast (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.04%</td>
<td>Breast (2 cases)</td>
<td>Various</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C. Niederau
L.H. Sobin
phagus and gallbladder can extend into the stomach by direct spread or, in some cases, by lymphatic spread. Ovarian adenocarcinoma usually spreads via the peritoneum and lymphatic channels; however, gastric metastases from ovarian cancer could also be of haematogenous origin [1148].

**Macroscopy**
Gastric metastases may appear as ulcers, as in situis plastica, or as polyps. The submucosal infiltration and extent of metastasis may be much more extensive than seen by endoscopy or radiography. Melanomas may or may not be pigmented.

**Histopathology**
The histopathology of gastric metastases is similar to that of the primary cancer and to other haematogenous metastases of that cancer. Immunohistochemical and molecular markers may help to differentiate a signet-ring cell carcinoma of the stomach from metastatic mammary disease [2174]. Gastric metastasis from primary breast cancer is usually of lobular rather than ductal type [1872; 1097; 517].

**Prognosis and predictive factors**
Gastric metastases usually represent a late, disseminating stage of the disease in which other haematogenous metastases are also frequently found. The prognosis is therefore poor. In one series, the mean survival was 11 months, with a range of 3 months to 5 years [158] but the gastric metastases led to death in only 4 of 67 cases [618].

Fig. 3.55 Metastatic prostate carcinoma. The lesion resembles carcinoid. Tumour cells were positive for prostate specific antigen, negative for chromogranin.
CHAPTER 4

Tumours of the Small Intestine

The small intestine has a remarkably low incidence of primary carcinomas, especially considering its size. Those that do occur are often related to genetic syndromes, especially familial adenomatous polyposis.

Lymphomas and endocrine tumours are as frequent as carcinomas and have important associations with precursor conditions such as coeliac sprue, multiple endocrine neoplasia and Von Recklinghausen Syndrome.

The small intestine is the main site for metastatic tumours in the gastrointestinal tract.
### WHO histological classification of tumours of the small intestine

#### Epithelial tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumour Type</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adenoma</td>
<td>8140/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubular</td>
<td>8211/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>villous</td>
<td>8261/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubulovillous</td>
<td>8263/0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia)

- Low-grade glandular intraepithelial neoplasia
- High-grade glandular intraepithelial neoplasia

#### Carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8480/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signet-ring cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8490/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8041/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8070/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenosquamous carcinoma</td>
<td>8580/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medullary carcinoma</td>
<td>8510/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
<td>8920/3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Carcinoid (well differentiated endocrine neoplasm)

- Gastrin cell tumour, functioning (gastrinoma) or non-functioning
  - Code: 8152/1

#### Mixed carcinoid-adenocarcinoma

- Code: 8244/3

#### Gangliocytic parangangioma

- Code: 8883/0

#### Others

- Code: unspecified

#### Non-epithelial tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumour Type</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lipoma</td>
<td>8850/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leiomyoma</td>
<td>8890/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrin stromal tumour</td>
<td>8938/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leiomyosarcoma</td>
<td>8890/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiosarcoma</td>
<td>9120/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma</td>
<td>9140/3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Malignant lymphomas

- Immunoproliferative small intestinal disease (includes α-heavy chain disease)
- Western type B-cell lymphoma of MALT
- Mantle cell lymphoma
- Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma
- Burkitt lymphoma
- Enterochromaffin-like /atypical Burkitt-lymphoma
- T-cell lymphoma
- Enteropathy associated
- Others
- unspecified

#### Secondary tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumour Type</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polyps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperplastic (metaplastic)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peutz-Jeghers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Juvenile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### TNM classification of tumours of the small intestine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM classification</th>
<th>M – Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T – Primary Tumour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>Distant metastasis can’t be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| T1                  | Tumour invades lamina propria or submucosa |
| T2                  | Tumour invades muscularis propria |
| T3                  | Tumour invades through muscularis propria into subserosa or into non-peritonealized perimuscular tissue (mesentery or retroperitoneum) with extension 2 cm or less |
| T4                  | Tumour perforates visceral peritoneum or directly invades other organs or structures (includes other loops of small intestine, mesentery, or retroperitoneum more than 2 cm and abdominal wall by way of serosa; for duodenum only, invasion of pancreas) |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage Grouping</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>Tis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>Any T</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. This classification is modified from the previous WHO histological classification of tumours (845) taking into account changes in our understanding of these lesions. In the case of endocrine neoplasms, it is based on the recent WHO classification (1784) but has been simplified to be of more practical utility in morphological classification.
2. Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (542) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /3 for malignant tumours, /2 for in situ carcinomas and grade III intraepithelial neoplasia, and /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour. Intraepithelial neoplasia does not have a generic code in ICD-O. ICD-O codes are available only for lesions categorized as glandular intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8148/2), and adenocarcinoma in situ (8140/2).

1. This classification applies only to carcinomas.
3. The non-peritonealized perimuscular tissue is, for jejunum and ileum, part of the mesentery and, for duodenum in areas where serosa is lacking, part of the retroperitoneum.
Carcinoma of the small intestine

Definition
A malignant epithelial tumour of the small intestine. Neoplasms of the periam-
pillary region include those of the duodenal mucosa, ampulla of Vater, common bile duct and pancreatic ducts.

ICD-O codes
Adenocarcinoma 8140/3
Mucinous adenocarcinoma 8480/3
Signet-ring cell carcinoma 8490/3

Epidemiology
Relative to the length and surface area of the small intestine, adenocarcinomas of the duodenum, jejunum and ileum are remarkably rare. Data from the United States SEER program [1928] for 1973 to 1987 show an age-adjusted incidence rate for adenocarcinoma of the small intestine of 0.4 per 100,000 per year. Although some reports suggest an increasing incidence of adenocarcinoma of the small intestine [1339, 1715], this is not reflected in the SEER data base. The median age at manifestation is approxi-
ately 67 years for non-mucinous ade-
nocarcinoma, mucinous carcinoma and carcinoids.

Aetiology
A major factor in the development of small bowel adenocarcinoma is chronic inflammation. In particular, long-standing Crohn’s disease with multiple strictures is associated with small bowel carcinoma [1016, 1223, 582, 1578]. One study showed that individuals with Crohn’s dis-
ease have an 86-fold increased risk of ade-
nocarcinoma of the small intestine [623]. Coeliac disease is another well-recognized aetiologi-
al factor for small bowel carcinoma [116, 1354, 2141]. There is some epidemiological evidence that cigarette use and alcohol consump-
tion are also risk factors [1339].

Carcinoma can develop in ileostomies in patients with ulcerative colitis or familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) subsequent to colonic metaplasia and intraepi-
thelial neoplasia in the ileostomy mucosa [1599, 558]. Carcinoma can also arise in ileal conduits [1965] and in ileal reservoirs, both continent abdominal (Kock) [347] and pelvic [2013, 1730]. The occurrence of adenocarcinomas in Meckel’s diverticulum [985] and in small bowel duplications [496] has been reported.

Localization
The duodenum is the main site, contain-
ing more adenocarcinomas than the jejunum and ileum combined [1928]. In the duodenum, carcinomas are most common around the ampulla of Vater [1657, 2123], possibly due to biliary or pancreatic effluents.

Clinical features
Symptoms and signs
The symptoms of small bowel adenocar-
cinoma are related to the size and loca-
tion of the tumour. In the jejunum and ileum, early symp-
toms are often non-specific, with vague periumbilical abdominal pain and rum-
bbling. Later, cramp-like pain is present in up to 80% of cases, and this may be accompanied by nausea, vomiting, weight loss, asthenia, and intermittent obstructive episodes. Massive bleeding is rare (8%), but an important clinical finding is chronic bleeding with second-
ary iron-deficiency anaemia, which may be found in the early stages of develop-
ment of the tumour. Other clinical signs are bloating of the loops of the bowel, meteorism, and the presence of a palpable mass [20]. Perforation is a possible complication of small intestinal carcino-
mas [681].

Duodenal carcinomas present in a differ-
ent manner, because of the larger cir-
cumference of the duodenum compared with the more distal parts of the small intestine, and because of the relative accessibility of the duodenum to endo-
scopy [498, 1657]. Unlike jejunal and ileal carcinomas, carcinomas of the duo-
denum, especially those of the proximal duodenum, do not present with bowel obstruction. Biliary obstruction, frank or occult blood loss and abdominal pain are the commonest presentations [2123]. Some tumours are largely asymptomatic and may be discovered by endoscopy [1809].

Imaging
The radiological methods that have the highest diagnostic accuracy are spiral CT scan with contrast medium and enter-
clysis; the two methods can be com-
plementary. With enteroclysis, a filling defect, an irregular and circumscribed thickening of the folds with wall rigidity, slowed motility, eccentric passage of the contrast medium, or a clear stenosis may be observed [199]. Small bowel adeno-
carcinoma may appear on CT scan as an annular lesion, a discrete nodular mass, or an ulcerative lesion. CT scan, with global vision of the abdomen, can con-
tribute to staging the tumour [1145].

With push enteroscopy, it is possible to visualize endoscopically the entire jejunum. Expansion or infiltrative growth of the tumour causes at a relatively early phase, an alteration of the endoluminal surface; via push enteroscopy it is thus possible to identify small lesions and to take biopsies. Push enteroscopy is also a good diagnostic method to diagnose tumours causing occult bleeding [1495, 1619].

Exploration of the ampulla of Vater requires a lateral viewing fibroscope, adapted to tissue sampling and endo-
scopic sphincterotomy. The terminal ileum may be visualized through retro-
grade ileoscopy during colonoscopy. Sonde enteroscopy can identify tumours throughout the small bowel, but it is ham-
pered by the inability to take biopsies [1064].

Macroscopy
The macroscopic pathology of small bowel carcinomas is determined by a number of factors, of which stage and site are the most significant. Many carcinomas of the jejunum and ileum are detected at an advanced stage [498, 189]. A further determinant of the macroscopic features is the presence or absence of predispos-
Tumours of the small intestine

Carcinomas may be polypoid, infiltrating or stenosing. Jejunal and ileal carcinomas are usually relatively large, annular, constricting tumours with circumferential involvement of the wall of the intestine (189). Most have fully penetrated the muscularis propria and there is often involvement of the serosal surface (16). Adenocarcinoma of the ileum may mimic Crohn’s disease clinically, radiologically, endoscopically, and at macroscopic pathological assessment (745). Although circumferential involvement can occur, duodenal carcinomas are usually more circumscribed, with a macroscopically demonstrable adenomatous component in 80% of cases (966, 496). Thus, they are often protuberant or polypoid, and the central adenomatous component may show ulceration (1267). Carcinomas arising at the ampulla of Vater tend to cause obstructive jaundice before they have reached a large size; they are usually circumscribed nodules measuring not more than 2-3 cm in diameter. They may be within the wall of the duodenum or project into the lumen as a nodule.

Unusual macroscopic features, e.g., the lack of ulceration, the predominance of an extramural component and the presence of multicentricity, should alert the pathologist to the possibility that the tumour is a metastasis.

Microscopy
Histologically, small bowel carcinomas resemble their more common counterparts in the colon, but with a higher proportion of poorly differentiated tumours (496, 1006). Some are adenosquamous carcinomas [624, 1345, 1525]. Carcinomas with prominent neoplastic endocrine cells (821) and with tripartite differentiation, i.e. with glandular, squamous, and neuroendocrine components (111, 207), have also been reported. Small cell carcinomas (poorly differentiated endocrine carcinomas) are rare (2196) (see next chapter).

In metastatic carcinoma of the small intestine, evidence of a pre-existing adenomatous component can be mimicked by the ability of the intestinal mucosa to cause differentiation of the metastatic tumour (1732); this phenomenon can give the erroneous impression of a primary carcinoma of the small intestine.

Tumour spread and staging
Spread of small bowel carcinomas is similar to that of the large bowel. Direct spread may cause adherence to adjacent structures in the peritoneal cavity, usually a loop of small intestine, although the stomach, colon or greater omentum may also be involved. Lymphatic spread to regional lymph nodes is common. Haematogenous and transcoelomic spread also occur. Diffuse involvement of the ovaries, Krukenberg tumour, has been reported [1089]. Staging of carcinomas of the small intestine is by the TNM classification (1, 66). For tumours of the ampulla of Vater, because of the complicated anatomy at this site, a separate TNM classification is used. Alternative staging systems have been proposed (1888).

Grading
Grading of small intestinal carcinomas is identical to that used in the large bowel, namely, well, moderately and poorly differentiated, or high- and low-grade.

Precursor and associated lesions
Adenomas
There is good evidence for an adenoma-carcinoma sequence in the small intestine as in the colon (1506, 1709). Residual adenomatous tissue at the margins is seen in 80% of duodenal adenocarcinomas (966). Perzin and Bridge (1505) described 51 patients with adenomas of the small intestine – 65% had co-existing carcinoma. In patients with familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), 38/45 (84%) of duodenal carcinomas harboured adenomatous tissue (1709); whereas 30% of 185 sporadic adenomas showed carcinoma (1706). The age at diagnosis of adenomas without carcinoma is lower than for adenomas with carcinoma or for carcinomas, and there is a nearly identical spatial distribution of these three types of tumour in the small intestine (1706).

Since the advent of endoscopic techniques, the earliest stages of malignant change can be followed in adenomas of the duodenum and peri-ampullary region (147), where often the size of the lesion may warrant extensive sampling. In a study of post-colectomy patients with FAP, random biopsy specimens of ileal mucosa showed foci of abnormal, dysplastic crypts resembling dysplastic aberrant crypt foci of the colon in some patients, supporting the concept that, at least in patients with FAP, oligocryptal adenomas are a step in the development of epithelial neoplasms of the small intestine (132).

Although adenomas can occur throughout the small intestine (399), the commonest site is the ampullary and peri-ampullary region (1366). Adenomas can be multiple, even in patients without a history of FAP [958, 1317, 685].

Fig. 4.01 A Tubulovillous adenoma of the duodenum and the ampulla of Vater which is greatly distended. B Villous adenoma of duodenum adjacent to normal mucosa.

Fig. 4.02 Adenocarcinoma of small intestine.
Histologically, adenomas in the small intestine are similar to those in the colon, but with a propensity to be more villous or tubulovillous in architecture [2127A, 1342]. The adenomatous cells resemble those of colonic adenomas, with varying degrees of dysplasia, but the columnar cells are unequivocally enterocytic in nature; goblet cells are frequent and some lesions have Paneth and endocrine cells [500, 1237].

**Other associated conditions**

Juvenile polyposis and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome have a recognized association with small intestinal carcinoma [1830, 1604, 1506].

**Genetic susceptibility**

These include: familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), Crohn’s disease, coeliac disease, ileostomies, ileal conduits and pouches (especially after colectomy for FAP), Peutz-Jeghers syndrome and juvenile polyposis. The highest risk is in FAP. Duodenal adenomas develop in a high proportion of FAP patients [228], and the relative risk of duodenal carcinoma is over 300 times that of the normal population [1397]; these carcinomas represent a major cause of death in FAP patients after total colectomy.

In FAP, carcinomas are usually associated with a macroscopically definable adenomatous component and are usually accompanied by many other adenomas in the second and third parts of the duodenum [1808, 204]. Adenomas do occur elsewhere in the small bowel in FAP, including the ileum and the pelvic ileal reservoir [1376], but carcinomas are distinctly unusual. It has been proposed that patients with carcinoma of the small intestine have an increased incidence of multicentric carcinomas of the gastrointestinal tract, with an increased incidence of gastric and colonic carcinomas in first-degree relatives [1830]. Primary small bowel carcinoma can be the presenting neoplasm in hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), occurring at an earlier age than sporadic cases and carrying a better prognosis [1604, 125].

**Genetics**

Patients with HNPCC and germline mutations of hMSH2 or hMLH1 have an approximately 4% lifetime risk of small bowel cancer, which exceeds the risk of the normal population 100 fold [2005]. In Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, the most common site of polyps is in the small intestine, and 2-3% of patients are at risk for developing intestinal carcinoma [431, 721]. In juvenile polyposis, small intestinal polyps occur with less frequency, but duodenal carcinoma has been reported [749]. Genes mutated in the germline of patients with inherited syndromes that
Definition
Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (PJS) is an inherited cancer syndrome with autosomal dominant trait, characterized by mucocutaneous melanin pigmentation and hamartomatous intestinal polyposis, preferentially affecting the small intestine. Associated extra-intestinal neoplasms are less common and include tumours of the ovary, uterine cervix, testis, pancreas and breast.

MIM No. 175200

Synonyms and historical annotation
The syndrome was first described by Peutz [1512] and Jeghers [850]. Several designations have been used synonymously, including Peutz-Jeghers polyposis, periorificial lentiginosis, and polyposis-and-spots syndrome.

Incidence
As the condition is rare, well documented data on the incidence are not available. Based on numbers of families registered in the Finnish Polyposis Registry, the incidence of PJS is roughly one tenth of that of familial adenomatous polyposis.

Diagnostic criteria
The following criteria are recommended: (1) three or more histologically confirmed Peutz-Jeghers polyps, or (2) any number of Peutz-Jeghers polyps with a family history of PJS, or (3) characteristic, prominent, mucocutaneous pigmentation with a family history of PJS, or (4) any number of Peutz-Jeghers polyps and characteristic, prominent, mucocutaneous pigmentation. Some melanin pigmentation is often present in unaffected individuals, hence the emphasis on the prominence of the pigmentation.

Intestinal neoplasms
Penetration appears to be high, and both sexes are equally affected [691]. Polyps are most common in the small intestine,
but may occur anywhere in the gastrointestinal tract.

Signs and symptoms
These include abdominal pain, intestinal bleeding, anaemia, and intussusception. Typical age at clinical manifestation is from two to twenty years. Characteristic pigmentation allows diagnosis of asymptomatic patients in familial cases.

Imaging
The presence of polyps may be demonstrated by upper gastrointestinal and small bowel contrast radiography, and by air contrast barium enema. Periodic small bowel X-ray examination at two to five-year intervals is advisable in the follow-up of the affected patients. Endoscopy is superior to radiological imaging in that it enables polypectomy for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes. Upper gastrointestinal tract endoscopy and colonoscopy every two years with snare excision of all polyps detected is presently recommended. Small bowel polyps may be reached by an enteroscope but rarely for the full bowel length; thus, imaging remains an integral component of clinical management.

Macroscopy
Peutz-Jeghers polyps occur within the stomach, small and large intestines, and rarely within oesophagus, nasopharynx and urinary tract. The small intestine is the site of predilection. The polyps are lobulated with a darkened head and closely resemble adenomas. The stalk is short and broad or absent. Size is typically 5 to 50 mm.

Histopathology
A typical Peutz-Jeghers polyp has a diagnostically useful central core of smooth muscle that shows tree-like branching. This is covered by the mucosa native to the region, heaped into folds producing a villous pattern. Diagnostic difficulty occurs when there is secondary ischaemic necrosis. This complication arises when a polyp has caused intussusception, a common form of presentation. Some polyps may lack diagnostic features.

Epithelial misplacement involving all layers of the bowel wall (pseudoinvasion) has been described in up to 10% of small intestinal Peutz-Jeghers polyps [1728]. Mechanical forces associated with intussusception or raised intraluminal pressure due to episodic intestinal obstruction are the likely explanation for this observation. Epithelial misplacement may be florid and extend into the serosa, thereby mimicking a well differentiated adenocarcinoma. Useful diagnostic features are the lack of cytological atypia, presence of all the normal cell types, mucinous cysts and haemosiderin deposition [1728].

Dysplasia and cancer in Peutz-Jeghers polyps
While the Peutz-Jeghers syndrome is associated with a 10 to 18-fold excess of gastrointestinal and non-gastrointestinal cancers [579, 154], the question of whether or not the Peutz-Jeghers polyp is itself precancerous has proved difficult to resolve. Epithelial misplacement has apparently been overdiagnosed as cancer in the past [1728], but it is likely that the increased risk of malignancy in the stomach, small bowel and colon [154, 1807] is due to malignant progression from hamartoma to adenocarcinoma. The evidence is threefold: (1) intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia), though uncommon, has been described in Peutz-Jeghers polyps [1506, 2017]; (2) carcinomas may occur in contiguity with Peutz-Jeghers polyps [317, 1506]; (3) the responsible gene LKB1 (STK11) is located on chromosome 19p, and loss of heterozygosity at this locus has been demonstrated in the majority of Peutz-Jeghers polyps and associated intestinal cancers [633, 691, 2052].

Extraintestinal manifestations
Predisposition to cancer of multiple organ systems is an important feature of the syndrome [579, 154]. The most well documented extra-intestinal neoplasms include sex cord tumours with annular tubules (SCTAT) of the ovary [2188], adenoma malignum of the uterine cervix [2188], Sertoli cell tumours of the testis...
carcinoma of the pancreas (579), and carcinoma of the breast (1587, 1952). The cutaneous melanin pigmentation occurs typically around the mouth as freckle-like spots. Other sites commonly affected are digits, palms and feet, buccal mucosa, and anal region. While dramatic pigmentation is a helpful sign, it may fade with time, and some affected individuals never display pigmentation.

**Genetics**

**Chromosomal location and mode of inheritance**

PJS is an autosomal dominant trait with nearly complete penetrance. The PJS gene, LKB1 (STK11), maps to 19p13.3, and there is some evidence suggestive of locus heterogeneity (1210).

**Gene structure**

LKB1 consists of 9 coding exons. The open reading frame consists of 1302 base pairs, corresponding to 433 amino acids. Codons 50 to 337 encode the catalytic kinase domain of the gene.

**Gene product**

The human LKB1 gene is ubiquitously expressed in adults (853, 690). It encodes a protein of 433 amino acids which possesses a serine/threonine kinase domain framed by a short N-terminus sequence (48 residues) and a more extended C-terminus region of 122 amino acids (853, 690). LKB1 shares a significant sequence similarity with the Saccharomyces cerevisiae SNF1 kinase which phosphorylates transcriptional repressor and regulates glucose-repressible genes. Homologs of LKB1 have been identified in several species including mouse, *Xenopus*, and *Caenorhabditis elegans* (1852, 1768, 2072). Sequence alignments revealed that these proteins are most conserved within the kinase domain, with 96% of identity between human and mouse and 42% identity between human and the nematode. Human LKB1 contains a nuclear localization signal (NLS) flanking the N-terminus part of the catalytic domain (1343, 1768) and a putative preylation motif within the C-terminus (325). The LKB1 gene product is located both in the nucleus and in the cytoplasm (1343). LKB1 displays an autocalytic activity in vitro, and is the substrate of the cAMP-dependent protein kinase (PKA) (325). Although the function of LKB1 remains to be determined, it is worth noting that PAR-4, the *C. elegans* orthologue of LKB1, is required for establishing polarity during the first cell cycles of the embryo (2072). PAR-4 expression is also essential for embryonic viability and for intestinal organogenesis. Since the cardinal clinical feature of PJS is the presence of intestinal hamartomatous polyps, it appears plausible that the function of LKB1 has been conserved across evolution as it exerts a key regulatory role during intestinal development.

**Gene mutations and their relationship to clinical manifestations**

Germline mutations are usually truncating, but missense type mutations have also been described (853, 690). Wild type LKB1 is capable of autophosphorylation (1210, 2176), and the effect of missense mutations occurring in the kinase domain can be evaluated observing this property in autophosphorylation assays. Somatic mutations of LKB1 in tumours have been reported but are rare.

**Prognosis**

While intussusception has been a major source of mortality in PJS kindreds (2093) surgery constitutes an effective treatment. Thus, prognosis of the affected individuals is mainly related to the risk of malignancy in PJS (579, 154). Due to the rarity of the syndrome, there is little information on prognosis, but one report suggests that PJS-associated cancers are particularly aggressive (1807).
Endocrine tumours of the small intestine

C. Capella
E. Solcia
L.H. Sobin
R. Arnold

Definition
Endocrine tumours of the small intestine exhibit site-related differences, depending on their location in the duodenum and proximal jejunum or in the distal jejunum and ileum. They include carcinoid tumours (well differentiated neoplasms of the diffuse endocrine system), small cell carcinomas (poorly differentiated endocrine neoplasms) identical to neuroendocrine tumours (well differentiated neoplasms) and pancreatic islet cell hyperplasia in the mucosa, suggesting a relationship between D-cell growth and a long standing chronic inflammatory process (233).

Localization
In a series of duodenal endocrine tumours (208), 43 lesions were located in the first part, 41 in the second part, 2 in the third part, and 2 in the fourth part. Nonfunctioning G-cell tumours are located in the duodenal bulb, while the site of about 1/3 gastrinomas associated with overt ZES is in the first, second or third part of the duodenum or in the upper jejunum (1780). The preferential location of somatostatin-cell tumours, gangliocytic paragangliomas and small cell carcinomas is at, or very close to, the ampulla of Vater (206, 210, 233, 1149, 1780, 1870, 2196).

Clinical features
Endocrine tumours of the duodenum produce symptoms either by virtue of local infiltration causing obstructive jaundice, pancreatitis, haemorrhage, and intestinal obstruction (nonfunctioning tumours) or, less frequently, by secreted peptide hormones (functioning tumours). The prevalent position of somatostatin-cell tumours, gangliocytic paragangliomas, and small cell carcinomas in the ampullary region explains their frequent association with obstructive biliary disease. About 20% of the tumours, especially those located in the duodenal bulb, are asymptomatic and often incidentally discovered, e.g. by imaging analysis, endoscopy or pathological examination of gastrectomy and duodenopancreatectomy specimens removed for gastric and pancreatic cancers. Zollinger-Ellison Syndrome (ZES) with hypergastrinaemia, gastrin hypersecretion, and refractory peptic ulcer disease, is the only syndrome of endocrine hypofunction consistently observed in association with endocrine tumours of the duodenum and upper jejunum (208, 429, 726, 1780, 2076). The association with ZES is found in about 15% of duodenal

Endocrine tumours of the duodenum and proximal jejunum

Epidemiology
Incidence and time trends
Endocrine tumours of the duodenum were rare in some older series, accounting for 1.8-2.9% of gastrointestinal endocrine tumours (587, 2016). However, in recent histopathology series, duodenal tumours amount to 22% of all gastrointestinal endocrine neoplasms (1780). Jejunal tumours account for about 1% (587, 1780) of all gut endocrine tumours. Gastrin-cell (G-cell) tumours represent the largest group (62%) in reported series of endocrine tumours arising in the upper small intestine, followed by somatostatin-cell tumours (21%), gangliocytic paragangliomas (9%), undifferentiated tumours (5.6%) and PP-cell tumours (1.8%) (1780).

An extensive review of all cases recorded in the Zollinger-Ellison Syndrome (ZES) registry showed 13% of patients to have duodenal wall gastrinomas, while the majority of patients had a pancreatic tumour (726). More recent studies have shown a higher proportion of duodenal tumours (38-50%), possibly related to improved diagnostic tools (429, 2076).

Age and sex distribution
In a series of 99 cases of endocrine tumours of the duodenum, males were more frequently affected (M/F ratio: 1.5:1), with a mean age at manifestation of 59 years (range, 33 to 90 years) (208). G-cell tumours associated with overt ZES (gastrinomas) differ from their apparently nonfunctioning counterpart in arising earlier in life (mean age at diagnosis is 39 years, as opposed to 66 years) (1780). Somatostatin-cell tumours affect females slightly more frequently than males (1.2:1) and become clinically manifest at a mean age of 45 years (range 29 to 83 years) (1780). Gangliocytic paragangliomas are slightly more common in males than in females and affect patients ranging in age from 23 to 83 years, with an average of 54 years (210). The few cases of small cell carcinoma recorded in the literature were in males ranging in age from 51 to 76 years.

Aetiology
Apart from genetic susceptibility (see below), there is little knowledge about possible aetiological factors involved in the pathogenesis of duodenal and proximal jejunal endocrine tumours. An isolated report demonstrates that a sporadic gastrin-cell tumour of the duodenum originated from hyperplastic and differentiated G-cells located in the mucosal crypts (1114). A case of a small multifocal somatostatin-cell tumour of the proximal duodenum has been reported in a patient with celiac sprue, showing somatostatin-cell hyperplasia in the mucosa, suggesting a relationship between D-cell growth and a long standing chronic inflammatory process (233).
gastrin-cell tumours (1780). Tumours associated with overt ZES differ from their apparently nonfunctioning counterpart in arising earlier in life and having a higher incidence of metastatic and non-bulbar cases [1780].

Argentaffin, serotonin-producing, carcinoids are unusual in the upper small intestine. It follows that duodenal carcinoids only exceptionally give rise to a clinical carcinoid syndrome, associated with liver metastases of the tumour (233, 1816). In none of the cases of somatostatin-cell tumours, so far reported, did the patients develop the full ‘somatostatinoma’ syndrome (diabetes mellitus, diarrhoea, steatorrhoea, hypo- or achlorhydria, anaemia and gallstones) that has been described in association with some pancreatic somatostatin-cell tumours (1780).

Macroscopy
Endocrine tumours of the duodenum and upper jejunum usually form small (< 2 cm in diameter), grey, polypoid lesions within the submucosa with an intact or focally ulcerated overlying mucosa. However, some examples appear as infiltrative intramural nodules of rather large size (up to 5 cm in diameter). The tumours are multiple in about 13% of cases [208]. In a large series of 96 cases, the mean size was 1.8 cm (range, 0.2 to 5.0 cm) [208]. The mean size was 0.8 cm for gastrin-cell tumours (233), 2.3 cm for somatostatin-cell tumours (1816) and 1.7 cm for gangliocytic paragangliomas (233). Small cell carcinomas typically measure 2-3 cm, and present as focally ulcerated, or protruberant lesions (1870, 2196).

Microscopy
Gastrin cell tumours. These tumours are formed by uniform cells with scanty cytoplasm, arranged in broad gyriform trabeculae and vascular pseudo-rosettes and show predominant immunoreactivity for gastrin. Other peptides detected in tumour cell sub-populations are cholecystokinin, pancreatic polypeptide (PP), neurotensin, somatostatin, insulin, and the α-chain of human chorionic gonadotrophin (233). Interestingly, somatostatin, which is known to inhibit gastrin release from gastrinomas, is detected more frequently in nonfunctioning G-cell tumours than in tumours associated with ZES (233). Ultrastructurally, typical G-cells with vesicular granules are found (233).

Somatostatin cell tumours. These neoplasms usually exhibit a mixed architectural pattern with a predominant tubulo-glandular component admixed with a variable proportion of insular and trabecular areas. Concentrically laminated psammoma bodies are detected mostly within glandular spaces. The glandular pattern and psammoma bodies may be so prominent that these tumours have been misdiagnosed as well differentiated ampullary adenocarcinomas. Unlike adenocarcinomas, however, the somatostatin cell tumours are composed of uniform cells with rather bland nuclei and few mitotic figures. Grimelius silver stain and chromogranin A are not very useful to diagnosis this tumour, because they are negative in about 50% of cases. The presence of somatostatin in tumour cells can be demonstrated by immunohistochemistry. In addition to the somatostatin cells, some tumours have minor populations positive for calcitonin, pancreatic polypeptide and ACTH (233, 381). In addition, the apical cytoplasm of glandular structures binds WGA and PNA lectins and expresses epithelial membrane antigen (233, 1780). Ultrastructural examination shows large, moderately electron dense secretory granules, similar to those found in normal D-cells of the intestinal mucosa (233).

EC-cell, serotonin-producing carcinoid. The classic argentaffin ‘midgut’ EC-cell carcinoid, with its characteristic pattern of solid nests of regular cells with brightly eosinophilic serotonin-containing granules and other morphological characteristics of ileal argentaffin EC-cell carcinoid, is very rare both in the duodenum and upper jejunum.

Gangliocytic paraganglioma. This tumour appears as an infiltrative lesion composed of an admixture of three cell types: spindle cells, epithelial cells, and ganglion cells. The spindle cells, which usually represent the major component, are neural in nature. They form small fascicles or envelop nerve cells and axons and show intense immunoreactivity for S–100 protein. The epithelial cells are larger cells with eosinophilic or amphiphilic cytoplasm and uniform ovoid nuclei that are arranged in ribbons, solid nests, or pseudo-glandular structures. These are non-argentaffin and frequently non-argyrophil endocrine cells, often containing somatostatin (233, 1816).

In addition, PP cells and rare glucagon or insulin cells have been detected in gangliocytic paragangliomas, suggesting that they may be a hamartoma of pancreatic anlage (655, 1502). The ganglion cells may be scattered singly or aggregated into clusters. The three components of the gangliocytic paraganglioma also intermingle with the normal smooth muscle and small pancreatic ducts at the ampulla to produce a very complex lesion. Ultrastructurally, the epithelial cells have...
abundant cytoplasm packed with dense-core secretory granules, while the ganglion cells are larger and contain a small number of neuroendocrine granules of small size and more numerous secondary lysosomes. The spindle cells are packed with intermediate filaments and resemble either sustentacular cells or Schwann cells (1502).

**Genetic susceptibility**

**MEN-1.** This inherited tumour syndrome is significantly associated with gastrin-cell tumours, but not with other types of endocrine tumours of the duodenum and upper jejunum. The prevalence of MEN-1 in all gastrin cell tumours of the duodenum-upper jejunum has been reported to be 5.3% (1780). Among duodenal-upper jejunal cases with an overt ZES, the association with MEN-1 syndrome is found in 7 to 21% of cases (1780, 2076). Loss of heterozygosity (LOH) at MEN-1 gene locus has been found in 4/19 (21%) duodenal MEN-1 gastrin cell tumours (1105), while a slightly higher 11q13 LOH rate for MEN-1 gastrinomas (41%; 14 of 34 tumours) was reported in an extended study of MEN-1 and sporadic gastrinomas (395). A low incidence of LOH on 11q13 in MEN-1-associated gastrinomas suggests that these tumours could arise due to inactivation of the wild-type allele via point mutations or small deletions rather than via a loss of a large segment of chromosome 11 (1105).

**Neurofibromatosis type I.** Patients with von Recklinghausen disease are at significant risk for development of periampullary neoplasms (210, 233, 933, 1780). The majority of these lesions are somatostatin cell tumours, gastrointestinal stromal tumours or gastrointestinal autonomic nerve tumours, but other neoplasms of neural crest and non-crest origin are known to occur. Somatostatin cell tumours were the most common periampullary neoplasms identified in one review (933), whereas carcinoids account for only 2-3% of periampullary tumours in the general population (1149). Some patients with neurofibromatosis and ampullary somatostatin cell tumour also have a phaeochromocytoma involving one or both adrenal glands, a clinical situation that can have considerable implications for complicated patient management (210). Association of gangliocytic paraganglioma with neurofibromatosis type 1 (906) and somatostatin-cell tumour has been reported (1832).

**Gastrin cell tumours** associated with an overt ZES are prognostically less favourable than their nonfunctioning counterparts, having a higher incidence of metastases (3 of 14 cases as against 0 of 28), and being deeply infiltrative (7 of 14 as against 3 of 19) (1780). These findings suggest a different natural history of gastrin cell tumours in the two conditions. Nonfunctioning tumours represent a generally benign condition, while ZES tumours have a low-grade malignancy, especially when arising in sites where gastrin cells are not normally present, such as in the jejunum or pancreas (233). Metastases in regional lymph nodes have been reported in 4 of 8 cases of duodenal gastrinomas with ZES-MEN-1 syndrome (1521), in 2 of 3

![Fig. 4.13](image1) Gangliocytic paraganglioma. A Distortion of duodenal glands by stromal infiltrate. B Masson trichrome stain highlights islands of epithelial cells (red). C Spindle cells and epithelial cells. D Ganglion cells with pale nuclei and prominent nucleoli.

**Genetics**

Point mutations of KRAS at codon 12, which are detected in small bowel adenocarcinomas, are absent in endocrine tumours of the small intestine, including the duodenal ones (2185). Incidental gastrin cell tumours do not overexpress either basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), acidic fibroblast growth factor (aFGF), transforming growth factor-α (TGFα), or their respective receptors FGFR4 and EGFR (995). On the contrary, these tumours overexpress the βA-subunit of activin, which may be involved in the regulation of proliferation of tumour cells (994).

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

Aggressive endocrine tumours include gastrin cell, somatostatin cell, and EC-cell tumours that invade beyond the submucosa or show lymph node or distant (liver) metastases. Aggressive tumours have been reported to be 10% of all gastrin cell duodenal-upper jejunal tumours (233), 58% of sporadic ZES cases (429) and 45% of ZES-MEN-1 cases (429). In the case of somatostatin cell tumours, about two-thirds were aggressive in one study (381).

![Fig. 4.14](image2) Somatostatin cell tumour exhibiting characteristic tubuloglandular pattern and a psammoma body.
cases of jejunal gastrinomas [233] and in 25% of 103 cases of duodenal tumours with ZES, 24% of which also had MEN-1 syndrome [724]. Local lymph node metastases seem to have little influence on survival of patients with ZES (398, 2076). In a study focusing on metastatic rate and survival in patients with ZES, no difference was found in the frequency of metastases to lymph nodes [429], when comparing primary pancreatic (48%) and duodenal (49%) tumours. In contrast, the same study found a significantly higher frequency of metastases to the liver in patients with pancreatic gastrinomas than in patients with duodenal gastrinomas (52% vs. 5%). The 10-year survival rate of patients with duodenal gastrinomas (59%) is significantly better than for patients with pancreatic gastrinomas (9%) [2076]. The more favourable prognosis of duodenal tumours is mainly linked to their smaller size and less frequent association with liver metastases.

Somatostatin cell tumours are often malignant, despite their rather bland histological appearance [1780, 210, 381]. Malignant somatostatin cell tumours are >2 cm in diameter [381], invade the duodenal muscularis propria, the sphincter of Oddi, and/or the head of the pancreas, and can metastasise to paraduodenal lymph nodes and liver. Gangliocytic paragangliomas are usually benign, in contrast to gastrin and somatostatin cell tumours that arise in the same area. However, occasional large tumours (size > 2 cm) may spread to local lymph nodes, mainly attributable to the endocrine component of the lesion [197, 783].

Small cell carcinomas show histological signs of high-grade malignancy (high mitotic rate, tumour necrosis, deep mural invasion, angioinvasion, and neuroinvasion). Metastases are present in all cases [2196] and patients die usually within 7-17 months of diagnosis.

Endocrine tumours of the distal jejunum and ileum

Endocrine tumours of this segment of the small intestine are mainly EC-cell, serotonin-producing carcinoids, and, less frequently, L-cell, glucagon-like peptide and PP/PYY-producing tumours.

Epidemiology

Incidence and time trends

Endocrine tumours of the lower jejunum and ileum have an incidence of 0.28-0.89 per 100,000 population per year [60, 587]. Jejuno-ileal lesions account for 23-28% of all gastrointestinal endocrine tumours, making this site the second most frequent location for endocrine tumours, following the appendix [587, 2016]. A recent SEER analysis of 5468 cases found an increase in the proportion of ileal and jejunal carcinoids and decrease in the proportion of appendiceal carcinoids [60].

Age and sex distribution

Endocrine tumours of lower jejunum and ileum are distributed more or less equally between males and females. Patients range in age from the third to the tenth decade, with a peak in the 6th and 7th decades [211, 587, 1253, 1780].

Fig. 4.15 Gangliocytic paraganglioma. A Immunoreactivity for cytokeratin (CAM 5.2) in epithelial cells. B Immunoreactivity for S100 in spindle cells.

Aetiology

At present, there is little knowledge about the aetiology of jejuno-ileal EC-cell carcinoids. Although endocrine tumours of lower jejunum and ileum are not generally associated with preneoplastic lesions, there have been reports of focal microproliferations of EC-cells in cases of multiple ileal tumours [1736] and of intraepithelial endocrine cell hyperplasia in the mucosa adjacent to jejuno-ileal carcinoids [1291].

Approximately 15% of carcinoid tumours of the small intestine are associated with non-carcinoid neoplasms, most frequently adenocarcinomas of the gastrointestinal tract [1251, 1253], supporting the hypothesis that secretion of growth factors is involved in their aetiopathogenesis [1251].

Localization

In the AFIP series of 167 jejuno-ileal endocrine tumours [211], 70% were located in the ileum, 11% in the jejunum, 3% in Meckel diverticulum. These data suggest that small bowel endocrine tumours occur 6.5 times more frequently in the ileum than in the jejunum. The majority of the tumours are located in the distal ileum near the ileocaecal valve.

Clinical features

Patients with jejuno-ileal endocrine tumours present most commonly with intermittent crampy abdominal pain, suggestive of intermittent intestinal obstruction [1253]. Patients frequently have vague abdominal symptoms for several years before diagnosis, reflecting the slow growth rate of these neoplasms [1253]. Preoperative diagnosis is difficult.
Endocrine tumours since standard imaging techniques rarely identify the primary tumour. Scintigraphic imaging with radiolabeled somatostatin (octreotide) is widely used to localise previously undetected primary or metastatic lesions [991]. The ‘carcinoid syndrome’ is found in 5–7% of patients with EC-cell carcinoid tumours [587, 1253] that typically arise in the ileum, all of which metastasise, mostly to the liver. Symptoms include cutaneous flushing, diarrhoea, and fibrous thickening of the endocardium and valves of the right heart.

Macroscopy
Jejuno-ileal endocrine tumours are multiple (ranging from 2 to 100 tumours) in about 25-30% of cases [211, 1253, 1845]. The size of the tumours is < 1 cm in 13% and ≥ 2 cm in 47% of cases [211]. They usually appear as deep mucosal-submucosal nodules with apparently intact or slightly eroded overlying mucosa. Deep infiltration of the muscular wall and peritoneum is frequent. Extensive involvement of the mesentery stimulates considerable fibroblastic or desmoplastic reaction, with consequent angulation, kinking of the bowel and obstruction of the lumen. Infarction of the involved loop of the small intestine may occur as a consequence of fibrous adhesions, volvulus, or occlusion of the mesenteric blood vessels.

Microscopy
EC-cell, serotonin-producing carcinoids are formed by characteristic rounded nests of closely packed tumour cells, often with peripheral palisading (Type A) [1775]. Often, within the solid nests, rosette type, glandular-like structures are detected. This variant of the fundamental structure designated as mixed insular + glandular (A + C) structure seems prognostically more favourable than the pure type A structure [1780]. In areas of deep invasion with abundant desmoplastic reaction, the cell nests may be oriented into cords and files. Mesenteric arteries and veins located near the tumour, or away from it, may be thickened and their lumen narrowed or even occluded by a peculiar elastic sclerosis, which may lead to ischaemic lesions in the intestine [72]. Most tumour cells are intensely argyrophilic and reactive with chromogranin A and B antibodies. In about 30% of cases, a variable number of cells is also reactive for prostatic acid phosphatase [211].

The identification of tumour cells as EC-cells can be accomplished using histochemical methods for serotonin, including argentaffin, diazonium, and immunohistochemical tests. Because serotonin occurs in some non EC-cell and related tumours [655], electron microscopic examination of serotonin-immunoreactive tumours (particularly those failing to react with histochemical tests) can confirm their EC-cell nature by detecting characteristic pleomorphic, intensely osmiophilic granules [1778]. Substance P and other tachykinins, such as neurokinin A, are reliable markers of a fraction of jejuno-ileal EC-cell tumours [144, 1173]; foregut (gastric, pancreatic and duodenal) EC-cell tumours remain mostly unreactive [1780]. Minor populations of enkephalin, somatostatin, gastrin, ACTH, motilin, neurotensin, glucagon/gli- centin, and PP/PYY immunoreactive cells, unassociated with pertinent hyperfunctional signs, have been reported in some ileal and jejunal tumours mostly composed of EC-cells [1173, 2168]. Dopamine and norepinephrine have also
been detected in addition to serotonin in a type A (insular) argentaffin carcinoid of the ileum (588). In many cases of jejuno-ileal EC-cell tumours, however, no other hormones apart from serotonin and substance P or related tachykinins are detected (1173).

The main criteria for considering a jejuno-ileal carcinoid to have an aggressive potential are deep invasion of the wall (muscularis propria or beyond) and/or presence of metastases. According to these criteria, in the large AFIP series (211), 141 of 159 cases (89%) of jejuno-ileal carcinoids were considered aggressive.

**Genetic susceptibility**

Unlike gastric ECL-cell tumours and duodenal gastrin cell tumours, jejuno-ileal carcinoids are only occasionally associated with MEN-1 (1444). Rare examples of familial occurrence of ileal EC-cell carcinoids have been reported (1252A).

**Genetics**

A recent study (829) reported frequent (78%) LOH on chromosome 11q13 in sporadic carcinoids of both foregut (lung and thymic) and midgut/hindgut (intestinal, including EC-cell tumours, and rectosigmoidal) origin. Other studies, however, have shown retention of heterozygosity on 11q13 in sporadic carcinoids of midgut and hindgut origin (394, 1938), suggesting that LOH of the MEN-1 gene, unlike gastric and duodenal endocrine tumours, is not involved in the pathogenesis of EC-cell tumours. Accumulation of p53 has not been detected in EC-cell tumours examined immunohistochemically, suggesting that this tumour suppressor gene is not implicated in the pathogenesis of these tumours (1780, 2044, 2077).

Several growth factors and related receptors have been localised in tumour cells of EC-cell carcinoids, including transforming growth factor-α (TGFα) and epidermal growth factor (EGF)-receptor, insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), and IGF-1 receptors, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), transforming growth factor-β (TGFβ), basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), acidic fibroblast growth factor (aFGF), and fibroblast growth factor receptor-4 (FGFR4) (22, 284, 993, 995, 1291).

Some of these growth factors, such as TGFα, exert a proliferative effect reflected by an increased mitotic index and significantly increased DNA levels in primary cell cultures of midgut carcinoids. These findings suggest the involvement of an autocrine loop (22). A similar growth promoting role in midgut carcinoid tumour cells is assigned to IGF-1 (22). PDGF, TGFα, bFGF, and aFGF seem to be mainly involved in tumour stromal reaction, including stromal desmoplasia (22, 993, 995), by acting on receptors expressed on fibroblasts or stimulating the promotion of new vasculature and tumour progression (22, 993, 995). Neural adhesion molecule (NCAM), a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily of cell adhesion molecules, is highly expressed in midgut carcinoid tumours (22).

Because NCAM has not been shown in normal gut endocrine cells, the novel expression of this adhesion molecule in carcinoids may be of importance for growth and metastases.

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

A recent report revealed a 21% mortality rate for jejuno-ileal carcinoids, compared with 4% for duodenal, 6% for gastric, and 3% for rectal carcinoids (211). In two studies, the overall 5-year survival rate of patients with jejuno-ileal endocrine tumours was about 60% and the 10-year survival rate was 43% (211, 1845). In patients with no liver metastases, the 5- and 10-year survival rates were 72% and 60%, respectively, as opposed to 35% and 15% for patients with liver metastases (1845), demonstrating the relatively slow rate of growth of some EC-cell tumours. Metastases are generally confined to regional lymph nodes and liver. Extra-abdominal metastases were found in only 0.5% of the cases reported by Moertel et al. (1253). In one study, univariate analysis showed that survival was negatively correlated with distant metastases at the time of surgery, mitotic rate, tumour multiplicity, the presence of carcinoid syndrome, depth of intestinal wall invasion, and female gender; by multivariate analysis, survival was negatively associated with distant metastases, carcinoid syndrome, and female gender (211). In summary, jejuno-ileal carcinoid tumours that are clinically nonfunctioning, 1 cm or less in diameter, confined to the mucosa/submucosa and non-angioinvasive, are generally cured by complete local excision. Invasion beyond submucosa or metastatic spread indicates that the lesion is aggressive. If the lesion, although confined to the mucosa/submucosa, shows angioinvasion, or is over 1 cm in size, it is of uncertain malignant potential.
B-cell lymphoma of the small intestine

Definition
Primary small intestinal lymphoma is defined as an extranodal lymphoma arising in the small bowel with the bulk of disease localized to this site. Contiguous lymph node involvement and distal spread may be seen, but the primary clinical presentation is the small intestine, with therapy directed to this site.

ICD-O codes
- MALT lymphoma: 9699/3
- IPSID: 9764/3
- Mantle cell lymphoma: 9673/3
- Burkitt lymphoma: 9687/3
- Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: 9680/3

Epidemiology
In contrast to lymphomas involving the stomach, primary small intestinal lymphomas are uncommon in Western countries [792]. However, since epithelial and mesenchymal tumours are uncommon in the small bowel, lymphomas constitute a significant proportion (30-50%) of all malignant tumours at this site. Lymphomas of mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) type are the most frequent lymphomas of both the small intestine and the colorectum, although controversy surrounds the histogenesis of de novo diffuse large B-cell lymphoma arising along the gastrointestinal tract. A unique form of intestinal MALT lymphoma occurs predominantly in the Middle East and Mediterranean areas, and is referred to as immunoproliferative small intestinal disease (IPSID) [1649]. This entity represents a spectrum of small intestinal lymphoproliferations, including alpha heavy chain disease ($\alpha$HCD) and may represent different manifestations or phases of the same disease. $\alpha$HCD and IPSID occur predominantly in the Mediterranean area, but may be seen outside this region. They typically affect young adults, whereas small intestinal lymphomas in the Western world increase in frequency with age with a peak incidence in the 7th decade. Most studies have shown a slight male predominance [424].

Aetiology
In contrast to the well-established relationship between Helicobacter pylori and gastric MALT lymphoma, no infectious organism has been clearly implicated in the pathogenesis of small intestinal MALT lymphoma. IPSID appears to be related to bacterial infection, as antibiotic responsiveness is typical of the early phases of the disease. However, no specific organism has been identified. Lymphomas involving the small intestine or colorectum may occur in distinct clinical settings. Chronic inflammatory bowel disease, including Crohn disease and ulcerative colitis, are recognized risk factors for non-Hodgkin lymphoma at this site. Importantly, the risk is much less than that associated with gluten-sensitive enteropathy and primary T-cell lymphomas of the small bowel (see T-cell lymphoma section). Crohn disease is more often implicated in the development of lymphoma in the small intestine, while ulcerative colitis is associated with lymphomas of the colorectum [1733]. An increased incidence of lymphoma has been associated with both acquired and congenital immunodeficiency states, including congenital immune deficiency, iatrogenic immunodeficiency associated with solid organ transplantation, and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) [357]. In general, lymphomas associated with immunodeficiency show a predilection for extranodal sites, particularly the gastrointestinal tract, irrespective of the cause of the immunodeficiency [1057, 787].

Clinical features
Symptoms produced by small intestinal lymphomas depend upon the specific histological type. Indolent lymphomas of B-cell lineage typically present with abdominal pain, weight loss and bowel obstruction [424]. Occasional cases present with nausea and vomiting, while rare cases are discovered incidentally. More aggressive tumours, such as those of T-cell lineage (described separately) or Burkitt lymphoma, may present as a large intra-abdominal mass or acutely with intestinal perforation. IPSID often manifests as abdominal pain, chronic severe intermittent diarrhoea and weight loss (1649). The diarrhoea is mainly the result of steatorrhoea, and a protein-losing enteropathy can be seen. Peripheral oedema, tetany and clubbing are observed in as many as 50% of patients. Rectal bleeding is uncommon in small bowel lymphoma, but a common presenting sign in primary colonic lymphoma. Burkitt lymphoma is most frequently seen in the terminal ileum or ileocaecal region, and may cause intussusception.

Imaging and endoscopy
Radiological studies are useful adjuncts to the diagnosis of small intestinal lymphomas, including barium studies and computerized tomography scans. T-cell lymphomas are typically localized in the jejunum, presenting as thickened plaques, ulcers, or strictures. Most B-cell lymphomas manifest as exophytic or annular tumour masses in the ileum [792]. B-cell lymphomas of both low- and intermediate-grade may produce nodules or polyps that can be seen both endoscopically and by imaging. Most small intestinal lymphomas are localized to one anatomic site, but multifocal tumours are detected in approximately 8% of cases. Multiple lymphomatous polyposis consists of numerous polyloid lesions throughout the gastrointestinal tract [791]. Most often, the jejunum and terminal ileum are involved, but lesions can appear in the stomach, duodenum, colon, and rectum. This entity produces a characteristic radiological picture that is virtually diagnostic. As discussed below, the majority of such cases is caused by mantle cell lymphoma, but other subtypes of lymphoma may produce a similar radiological pattern [1034].

IPSID. The macroscopic appearance of IPSID depends on the stage of disease. Early on, the bowel may appear endoscopically normal, with infiltration appa-
The disease may then progress to thickening of the upper jejunum together with enlargement of the mesenteric lymph nodes and the development of lymphomatous masses. Typically, the spleen is not involved and may even be small and fibrotic, as described in coeliac disease. Distal spread beyond the abdomen is uncommon (1649, 798).

**Histopathology**

**MALT lymphoma**

The majority of intestinal lymphomas involving the small bowel are B-cell lymphomas of MALT type, including both low-grade and aggressive types (792, 793, 796). These so-called ‘Western’ types are distinct from IPSID and αHCD. The histological features of Western type small intestinal lymphoma are similar to gastric MALT lymphoma, except that lymphoepithelial lesions are less prominent (792).

In contrast to gastric MALT lymphomas, diffuse large B-cell lymphomas arising in the small bowel are much more common than low-grade B-cell lymphomas of MALT-type (796). Some of these lymphomas may have a low-grade MALT component, providing evidence that their histogenesis is related to the mucosal immune system. Precise criteria for defining a MALT lymphoma of large cell type are lacking, as are the criteria for distinguishing transformation within a low-grade MALT lymphoma [383]. When both histologies are evident, the lesion is best described as composite. When small foci of large transformed cells or early sheeting-out of large cells are detected within a background of low-grade intestinal MALT lymphoma, their presence should be noted. Currently, the prognostic impact of these findings and their effect on treatment are undetermined. Diffuse large B-cell lymphomas arising in the small bowel that lack a background of low-grade MALT lymphoma, their presence should be noted. Currently, the prognostic impact of these findings and their effect on treatment are undetermined. Diffuse large B-cell lymphomas are currently best classified as extranodal diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, not otherwise specified (670).

**IPSID / αHCD**

Immunoproliferative small intestinal disease and α heavy chain disease are part of the spectrum of lymphoproliferative diseases prevailing in the Middle East and Mediterranean countries (792). They are subtypes of small intestinal MALT lymphoma characterized by the synthesis of α heavy chain. The histology is characteristic of MALT lymphoma with marked plasma cell differentiation.

Three stages of IPSID are recognized. In stage A, the lymphoplasmyocytic infiltrate is confined to the mucosa and mesenteric lymph nodes, and cytological atypia is not present. Although the infiltrate may obliterate the villous architecture, endoscopic examination appears normal. Resection specimens reveal reactive lymphoid follicles, lymphoepithelial lesions and small clusters of parafollicular clear cells. This phase of the disease is typically responsive to antibiotic therapy. In stage B, nodular mucosal infiltrates develop and there is extension below the muscularis mucosae. A minimal degree of cytological atypia is apparent. This stage appears to represent a transitional phase, can be seen macroscopically as thickening of mucosal folds, and is typically not reversible with antibiotics. The characteristic features of MALT lymphoma are now evident, and follicular colonization may be so marked as to mimic follicular lymphoma. Stage C is characterized by the presence of large masses and transformation to frank large cell lymphoma. Numerous centroblasts and immunoblasts are present. Plasma-cytic differentiation is still evident, but marked cytological atypia is usually found, including Reed-Sternberg-like cells. Mitotic activity is increased. Mesenteric lymph node involvement occurs early in the course of disease, with both plasma cell infiltration of nodal sinuses and marginal-zone areas distended by small atypical lymphoma cells with moderate amounts of pale, clear cytoplasm.

Immunohistochemical studies demonstrate the production of α heavy chain without light chain synthesis (798). The IgA is almost always of the IgA1 type, with intact carboxy-terminal regions and...
deletion of most of the V and all of the CH1 domains. The molecular characterization of individual cases is variable. The small lymphoma cells express CD19 and CD20, but fail to express CD5, CD10 and CD23.

**Mantle cell lymphoma**

Mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) typically involves both spleen and intestines and may present as an isolated mass or as multiple polyps throughout the gastrointestinal tract where it is referred to as *multiple lymphomatous polyposis* (424, 791, 1292). Importantly, other histological subtypes of non-Hodgkin lymphoma can also produce this clinico-pathological entity. The polyps range in size from 0.5 cm to 2 cm with much larger polyps found in the ileocaecal region. The histology of MCL involving the small bowel is identical to MCL at nodal sites (110). The architecture is most frequently diffuse, but a nodular pattern and a less common true mantle-zone pattern are also observed. Reactive germinal centers may be found and are usually compressed by the surrounding lymphoma cells, thereby appearing as replacing the normal mantle zones. Intestinal glands may be destroyed by the lymphoma, but typical lymphoepithelial lesions are not seen. The low power appearance is monotonous with frequent epithelioid histiocytes, mitotic figures and fine sclerosis surrounding small blood vessels. The lymphoma cells are small to medium sized with irregular nuclear outlines, indistinct nucleoli and scant amounts of cytoplasm. Large transformed cells are typically not present. The lymphoma cells are mature B-cells and express both CD19 and CD20. Characteristically the cells co-express CD5 and CD43. Surface immunoglobulin is found including both IgM and IgD. Light chain restriction is present in most cases, with some studies demonstrating a predominance of lambda. CD10 and CD11c are virtually always negative. Bcl-1 (cyclin D1) is found in virtually all cases and can be demonstrated within the nuclei of the neoplastic lymphocytes in paraffin sections.

MCL is an aggressive lymphoma, which typically presents in advanced stage with involvement of mesenteric lymph nodes and spread beyond the abdomen, including peripheral lymph nodes, spleen, bone marrow and peripheral blood involvement (84).

**Burkitt lymphoma**

Burkitt lymphoma occurs in two major forms, defined as endemic and sporadic. Endemic Burkitt is found primarily in Africa and typically presents in the jaw, orbit or paraspinai region, and is strongly associated with Epstein-Barr virus (EBV).

In other endemic regions however, it is relatively common for Burkitt lymphoma to present in the small intestine, usually involving the ileum, with preferential localization to the ileoceleal region (792). In parts of the Middle East, primary gastrointestinal Burkitt lymphoma is a common disease of children. Sporadic or non-endemic Burkitt lymphoma is a rare disease, not associated with EBV infection, that frequently presents as primary intestinal lymphoma. Burkitt lymphoma is also seen in the setting of HIV infection when it often involves the gastrointestinal tract (236). The histology in all cases is identical and is characterized by a diffuse infiltrate of medium-sized cells with round to oval nuclear outlines, 2-5 small but distinct nucleoli and a small amount of intensely basophilic cytoplasm. Numerous mitotic figures and apoptotic cells are present. The prominent starry-sky appearance is caused by benign phagocytic histiocytes engulfing the nuclear debris resulting from apoptosis. Thin sections often show an unusual finding for lymphomas, whereby the cytoplasmic borders of individual cells “square-off” against each other. Burkitt lymphoma may rarely demonstrate a true follicular architecture, consistent with the proposed germinal center histogenesis of this neoplasm. It is a mature B-cell lymphoma and the neoplastic cells express pan-B-cell antigens.
CD19, CD20, CD22, and CD79a. In approximately 60-80% of cases, the neoplastic cells co-express CD10, but fail to express CD5 or CD23. Surface immunoglobulin expression is moderately intense and is nearly always IgM with either kappa or lambda light chain restriction. The growth fraction, as assessed by Ki-67 or the paraffin equivalent MIB-1, is typically in excess of 90% of tumour cells. Burkitt lymphoma cells uniformly fail to express bcl-2.

**Burkitt-like lymphoma**

This group of atypical Burkitt lymphomas appears to represent a morphological overlap between Burkitt lymphoma and diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. The overall cell size is similar to Burkitt, but with greater pleomorphism (827). These cases lack the typical monomorphic appearance of Burkitt lymphoma and demonstrate slight variation in both cell size and shape. The cells may have multiple nuclei as in Burkitt lymphoma or a single distinct nucleus. A starry-sky pattern may be evident and the mitotic rate is usually significantly increased. These lymphomas have a predilection for the gastrointestinal tract of adults, and also occur in the setting of HIV infection.

**Other B-cell lymphomas**

Any subtype of B-cell lymphoma can present as a primary small intestinal lymphoma, including those thought to arise from peripheral lymph node equivalents. De novo diffuse large B-cell lymphomas are the commonest lymphomas in the small bowel, and may develop from low-grade MALT lymphomas. Indolent lymphomas such as small lymphocytic lymphoma, lymphoplasmacytic lymphoma and follicular lymphoma (centroblastic/centrocytic) can present as primary small intestinal disease. The latter subtype can occasionally produce the clinico-pathological entity of multiple lymphomatous polyposis, but can usually be distinguished from MCL by immunophenotypic and molecular genetic analysis (1034). Lymphoblastic lymphoma may underlie small intestinal lymphoma and frequently produces a mass in the ileocaecal region. Characteristic nuclear features and the expression of terminal nucleotidyl transferase may aid in establishing the diagnosis.

**Genetics**

**MALT lymphoma**

Cytogenetic and molecular features of intestinal MALT lymphomas are incompletely understood; the presence of either t(1;14)(p22;q32) or t(11;18)(q21;q21) and the corresponding molecular abnormalities, rearrangement of bcl-10 or AP12-MALT, have not been described at this site; thus their relationship to gastric MALT lymphomas is unclear (2116, 412). Trisomy 3 is common in gastric MALT lymphomas, but the frequency of this cytogenetic abnormality in primary intestinal lymphomas is unknown (413).

**IPSID**

Although cytogenetic abnormalities have been detected in IPSID, no consistent changes have been described. Southern blot analysis reveals clonal immunoglobulin heavy-chain (IgH) gene rearrangements, but consensus IgH polymerase chain reaction (PCR) strategies may yield false negative results.

**Mantle cell lymphoma**

MCL is cytogenetically characterized by a t(11;14)(q13;q32) translocation which deregulates expression of the bcl-1 oncogene on chromosome 11. Rearrangement can be detected using Southern blot analysis, PCR or fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH).

**Burkitt lymphoma**

Burkitt lymphoma demonstrates a consistent cytogenetic abnormality in all cases, with rearrangement of the c-myc oncogene on chromosome 8. The characteristic translocation, t(8;14)(q24;q32), is seen in most cases; the remainder shows variant translocations including the immunoglobulin light chain loci, t(2;8)(p12;q24) or t(8;22)(q24;q11), involving kappa and lambda light chain genes, respectively. In the classical t(8;14), the c-myc oncogene is translocated from chromosome 8 to the heavy chain locus on chromosome 14. In the variant translocations, a part of the light chain constant region is translocated to chromosome 8, distal to the c-myc gene. Thus, in the variant translocations, c-myc remains on chromosome 8 and is deregulated by virtue of its juxtaposition to the immunoglobulin light chain genes. The molecular characteristics of the c-myc translocation also differ between endemic and sporadic cases. In endemic Burkitt lymphoma, the chromosome 8 breakpoints are usually far 5’ of the c-myc gene, while their chromosome 14 breakpoints most often occur in the location of the IgH gene joining segments. The variable chromosome 8 breakpoints and their location far from the c-myc coding sequences make it impossible in most cases to demonstrate c-myc rearrangements by Southern blot analysis. In contrast, sporadic cases frequently have c-myc breakpoints within non-coding introns and exons of the gene itself, typically in the first exon or intron, or in the 5’ flanking regions of the gene. In most of these cases, c-myc rearrangements can be demonstrated using Southern analysis (670).

**Burkitt-like lymphoma/Atypical Burkitt lymphoma**

This category is cytogenetically heterogeneous and may contain three or more biological groups (1387). Importantly, the frequency of variant c-myc translocations precludes the accurate recognition of cases using molecular techniques alone.

**Prognostic factors**

The main determinants of clinical outcome in small intestinal lymphomas are histological grade, stage, and resectability (424). Advanced age at diagnosis, an acute presentation with perforation, and the presence of multifocal tumours have an adverse impact on survival. The behaviour of diffuse large B-cell lymphoma is not affected by the presence of a low-grade MALT component (424). The expression of bcl-2 protein and the presence of TP53 mutations may adversely affect outcome in this group, but a systematic study of small intestinal lymphomas is lacking (567, 770). MCL is an aggressive neoplasm. A blastoid cytology, increased mitotic index and peripheral blood involvement are recognized as adverse factors (84). Mutations in the p53 gene and homozygous deletions of p16 have recently been shown to be associated with poor prognosis (1099, 700). Burkitt-like lymphomas with ‘dual translocation’ of both bcl-2 and c-myc oncogenes have a markedly shortened overall survival (1137).
Intestinal T-cell lymphoma

**Definition**
A peripheral T-cell lymphoma arising in the intestine, usually as a complication of coeliac disease (gluten sensitive enteropathy), histologically characterised by differentiation towards the intestinal intraepithelial T-cell phenotype.

**ICD-O codes**
- T-cell lymphoma 9702/3
- Enteropathy associated 9717/3

**Epidemiology and aetiology**
Intestinal T-cell lymphoma (ITL) is rare, accounting for only about 5% of all gastrointestinal lymphomas, and is normally associated with coeliac disease (305). There is marked geographic variation in the incidence of ITL, with a high incidence in Northern Europe, reflecting the notion that ITL arises against the same genetic background as that predisposing to coeliac disease (753). There is no clear sex predominance and in Europe, the median age at diagnosis is around 60 years (305, 424, 374). In contrast, a small series of Mexican patients had a median age of 24 years and there was circumstantial evidence for a possible aetiological role of the Epstein Barr virus, which is absent in European cases (1552, 795). Congenital or acquired immunodeficiency disorders are not known to be associated with ITL.

**Localization**
The proximal jejunum is the most frequent site of disease, although it may occur elsewhere in the small intestine and, rarely, in the stomach and colon (305).

**Clinical features**
The most frequent symptoms are abdominal pain and weight loss (303). About 40% of patients present as acute abdominal emergencies due to intestinal perforation and/or obstruction (305, 424). Patients may have a short history of malabsorption, sometimes diagnosed as adult coeliac disease which is usually gluten-insensitive or, less frequently, a long history of coeliac disease lasting for years or even decades (796). Signs and symptoms of the disease may mimic inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), particularly Crohn disease. Radiographic studies may be helpful, but they are often interpreted as consistent with a segmental or diffuse inflammatory process. Except for leukocytosis, laboratory data are usually unremarkable, including normal levels of lactate dehydrogenase (303). Refractory coeliac disease and ulcerative jejunitis are two conditions that frequently have a history of coeliac disease for years, become resistant to gluten-free diet and may, but not necessarily, progress to ITL (1385, 92). In ulcerative jejunitis, patients develop non-specific inflammatory ulcers without overt histological evidence of lymphoma.

**Macroscopy**
The affected bowel segment is often dilated and oedematous, and usually shows multiple circumferential ulcers, ulcerated plaques and strictures, without the formation of large tumour masses (424). The intact mucosa between the lesions may contain thickened folds or appear completely normal. Loops of bowel may adhere to each other or additionally to the left or right colon, causing palpable conglomerate tumours.

**Tumour spread and staging**
About 70% of the patients present with localized intestinal disease with or without contiguous lymph node involvement (305). Disseminated disease involves liver, spleen, lung, testes, and skin, but rarely the bone marrow (303, 794).

**Histopathology**
The histological appearances of ITL are variable both between cases and between different tumour sites in the same patient. The most frequently encountered type is composed of highly pleomorphic, medium to large cells, followed by a lymphoma type that shows a morphology most consistent with anaplastic large cell lymphoma. The border between these two histologies is not sharp and transition from one to the other may occur, even within the same tumour (307). About 20% of ITL are characterized by the monotonous appearance of densely packed small to medium-sized cells almost without any recognizable stroma components. Most of the rather monomorphic cells contain only slightly

---

**Fig. 4.22** Intestinal T-cell lymphoma. Histological features of the most common variants. **A** Pleomorphic medium and large cells. **B** Anaplastic large cells. **C** Monomorphic small to medium cells.

R.D. Gascoyne  
H.K. Müller-Hermelink  
A. Chott  
A. Wotherspoon
irregular nuclei with small nucleoli and moderately wide, pale or sometimes clear cytoplasm [307]. Rare variants of ITL are composed predominantly of pleomorphic small cells or immunoblasts. Irrespective of morphology, the lymphoma cells often invade and destroy the overlying epithelium. Most frequently, the enterocytes of the upper and intermediate villous regions, or in cases of severe villous atrophy, the epithelium of the upper parts of the elongated crypts are the preferential targets of lymphoma cell attack. These features are best appreciated at the borders of ulcerated tumours. However, they may also be present as band-like or patchy microscopic lesions entirely confined to the mucosa [303]. Fibrosis and admixed inflammatory cells are constant features of the pleomorphic medium and large cell and the anaplastic large cell ITL types; in the former, an abundance of eosinophils may mask the neoplastic infiltrate [1731]. In contrast, the monomorphic small to medium-sized variant characteristically lacks fibrotic changes and inflammatory background [307].

Histopathology of the enteropathic mucosa

In the vast majority of cases, the macroscopically normal intestinal mucosa shows features of coeliac disease, i.e. increase in normal appearing intraepithelial lymphocytes (IEL), villous atrophy, and crypt hyperplasia [794], which has prompted O’Farrell and co-workers to coin the term ‘enteropathy associated T-cell lymphoma’ [1383]. An increase in normal appearing IEL (duodenum / jejunum, $\geq$ 40/100 enterocytes; ileum, $\geq$ 20/100 enterocytes) represents the single most important feature suggestive of coeliac disease [1172]. The severity of these enteropathic changes is highly variable and similar to coeliac disease; they are most pronounced proximally and improve distally so that the lower jejunum and ileum may appear normal. Furthermore, enteropathy may be minimal or absent if the patient is on a gluten free diet, or if enteropathic sites are missed because of their patchy distribution.

Occasionally, the non-neoplastic mucosa in ITL shows a strikingly intense or florid intraepithelial lymphocytosis [2142].

Immunological phenotyping

Similarities of the immunophenotypes in normal or activated (reactive) intraepithelial lymphocytes (IEL) and the tumour cells in ITL provide an important part of evidence that ITL cells are the neoplastic counterpart of IEL. The expression of the HML-1 defined $\alpha^\beta_\gamma$ (CD103) on non-neoplastic IEL and in $\geq$ 50% of ITL, but not in resting peripheral blood T-cells, strongly supports this view [1802]. The vast majority of normal IEL are resting cytotoxic CD3+CD8+CD4-CD2+CD7+CD5$^\text{sm}$ TIA-1+ T-cells using the $\alpha\beta$ T-cell receptor, but minor subsets such as CD4-CD8- or CD56+ are present as well as predominantly CD4-CD8- $\gamma\delta$ T-cells [1113, 304]. In ITL, most cases are CD3+CD4-CD8-CD7+CD5- and co-express the cytotoxic granule-associated protein TIA-1, often together with the activation-dependent cytotoxic molecule granzyme B [305, 382]. Some correlations between ITL morphology and phenotype exist; pleomorphic medium and large cell lymphomas and lymphomas of anaplastic large cell histology are often CD4-CD8-, the latter express CD30+ but are always ALK1 negative; the monomorphic small to medium-sized variant is frequently associated with a CD56+CD8+ phenotype [307].

Cytologically normal IEL abundantly present in the intact enteropathic mucosa in ITL, in ulcerative jejunitis, and in refractory coeliac disease share an identical aberrant phenotype with ITL and are monoclonal, as demonstrated by PCR [103]. They therefore are considered a neoplastic population which, in the absence of concurrent overt ITL, may represent the first step in ITL lymphomagenesis (‘intraepithelial lymphoma’) and may have already persisted for years [238].

ITL diagnosis of endoscopic biopsies

Most cases of ITL are diagnosed on surgical resection specimens. In a minority, however, endoscopic biopsies, usually taken from the stomach, duodenum, or colon, are available. These patients frequently have a longer than 6 months history of abdominal pain and weight loss. Some of them are clinically suspected to have inflammatory bowel disease, and occasionally patients had already been biopsied with the diagnosis of IBD or an unclear inflammatory process, thus emphasizing the challenging task of ITL diagnosis in endoscopic biopsies. The immunohistochemical demonstration of an aberrant phenotype is essential in diagnosing ITL, especially in cases which lack overt cytological atypia and/or invasiveness. Furthermore, the neoplastic infiltrate may be subtle or superficial and therefore easily overlooked in routinely stained sections.

Genetics

Very few data on chromosomal abnormalities in ITL exist. Deletion of the Y chromosome and chromosome 9 abnormalities were found among a phenotypically aberrant intraepithelial T-cell population [2142]; a t(4;16)(q26;p13) translocation was present in a mesenteric
lymph node associated with extensive ITL [239]. In two cases of anaplastic large cell ITL very complex abnormalities were detected in ascitic fluid and lymph node, respectively [1436]. Southern blotting and PCR studies demonstrated monoclonal rearrangements of the T-cell receptor (β-chain) in ITL, consistent with the derivation from αβ T-cells [799]. ITL using the γδ T-cell receptor are rare [86], but nevertheless seem to outnumber the few well documented cases of true intestinal natural killer (NK) cell lymphomas [1176]. The latter finding is not surprising as NK cells are not present among IEL.

**Prognosis and predictive factors**
The clinical course is very unfavorable due to complications from peritonitis and malnutrition and later from progressive disease typically characterized by intestinal recurrences. The malabsorption due to underlying coeliac disease is detrimental to these patients, particularly when recovering from surgery or receiving multiagent chemotherapy [444]. Consequently, only one half of the patients is amenable to chemotherapy and only a proportion of these is able to finish the complete course. The overall median survival in the largest published series is only 3 months, and 5-year survival in this and other series ranges from 8-25% [305, 424, 444]. The small group of long-term survivors usually received chemotherapy and, interestingly, none had a previous diagnosis of coeliac disease [305, 444].

![Fig. 4.24 CD3 immunoexpression in a T-cell lymphoma of the small intestine.](image)
Mesenchymal tumours of the small intestine

Definition
A variety of benign and malignant mesenchymal tumours can arise in the small intestine, but the neoplasms that occur in any appreciable numbers are gastrointestinal stromal tumours (GISTs).

Epidemiology
Sarcomas account for approximately 14% of malignant small intestinal tumours [1928]. Males are affected somewhat more than females (M:F 1.2:1). The peak incidence is in the 6th to 8th decade. Age of onset for sarcomas was lower than for carcinomas, with black females showing the lowest median age, 50 years. In the U.S. SEER database, the incidence rate for sarcoma was 0.2 per 100,000 per year compared to 0.3 for lymphomas, 0.4 for adenocarcinomas and 0.4 for carcinoids, and appears to be stable.

Localization
Sarcomas show a much more even distribution throughout the small bowel compared to adenocarcinomas and carcinoids [1928]. GISTs have been specifically identified in duodenum, jejunum, and ileum [183, 594, 1980].

Clinical features
Vague abdominal discomfort is the usual complaint. Mesenchymal neoplasms of small bowel are more difficult to diagnose by endoscopy or imaging studies than those in the stomach.

Macroscopy
Small bowel sarcomas generally appear macroscopically as those in the stomach. Some small intestinal tumours may cause aneurysmal bowel dilatation, while others have a diverticulum-like appearance.

Histopathology
Gastrointestinal stromal tumours
Small bowel GISTs resemble those of the stomach histologically, although epithelioid lesions are uncommon. Globoid extracellular collagen accumulations (so-called skeinoid fibres) are frequently observed, especially in benign small intestinal GISTs [1235]. Factors that correlate with malignancy are tumour size > 5 cm, mitotic count > 5 per 50 HPF, dense cellularity, and mucosal invasion (rarely observed). Even with low or absent mitotic activity, tumours larger than 5 cm are considered to have malignant potential. Small intestinal GISTs are positive for KIT (CD117) and usually for CD34, and a subset (30-50%) are positive for α-smooth muscle actin; most tumours are negative for desmin and almost all are negative for S100-protein.

Leiomyomas and leiomyosarcomas are rare in the small intestine, and can be identified immunohistochemically by their smooth muscle actin and desmin expression and lack of KIT.

Angiosarcomas are recognized by an anastomosing proliferation of atypical endothelial cells. Immunohistochemical demonstration of CD31, less consistently von Willebrand factor, is diagnostically useful [1904].

Kaposi sarcomas may involve small intestine, either the mucosa alone or more extensively. Histologically typical are elongated spindle cells with vascular slits. Cytoplasmic PAS-positive hyaline globules are present in some tumour cells. Immunohistochemically, the lesion-al cells are positive for CD31 and CD34. Human herpesvirus 8 can be demonstrated by PCR.

Lipomas exhibit the same morphological features as their colonic counterparts.

Genetics
Small intestinal GISTs show similar c-kit mutations in exon 11 as observed in gastric GISTs, and most mutations occur in the malignant cases. Comparative genomic hybridization shows common losses in chromosomes 14 and 22 similar to those seen in gastric GISTs.

Prognosis
The prognosis of small bowel sarcomas is largely dependent on the mitotic count, size, depth of invasion, and presence or absence of metastasis. In the SEER database, 5-year survival for localized tumours was 45% for sarcomas, compared to 92% for carcinoids and 63% for carcinomas [1928]. In a study of over one thousand stromal/smooth muscle sarcomas, the 5-year survival rate was 55% for sarcomas of small bowel, 60% for colorectum, 70% for stomach and 75% for oesophagus [462].
Secondary tumours of the small and large intestines

Definition
Tumours of the intestines that originate from an extra-intestinal neoplasm or which are discontinuous with a primary tumour elsewhere in the gastrointestinal tract.

Epidemiology
Metastatic spread to the small intestine is more frequent than to any other site in the gastrointestinal tract (see Table 3.02). Secondary carcinomas of the small bowel are as common as primary carcinomas at this site.

Origin
For small intestine, melanoma, lung, breast, colon and kidney are the most frequent primary sites (see Table 3.02). Metastatic spread from primary lung cancer to the small intestine is more frequent than to stomach and colon (Table 4.01). Virtually all primary cancers can occasionally lead to metastases in the small intestine and, because of the low frequency of primary small bowel cancer, a high proportion of small intestinal malignancies are metastatic.

The pathogenesis of intestinal metastasis usually involves haematogenous spread of tumour cells. Invasion from neighbouring primary tumours also occurs, e.g. pancreatic carcinoma to duodenum and prostate carcinoma to rectum.

Primary melanomas of the intestine are very rare. Although most melanomas found in the small bowel have no history

Table 4.01
Frequency of metastasis from breast (695 cases) and lung (747 cases) to gastrointestinal tract (130).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary site</th>
<th>Stomach</th>
<th>Small intestine</th>
<th>Colon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breast</td>
<td>3.6%</td>
<td>1.7%</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung</td>
<td>1.3%</td>
<td>4.4%</td>
<td>1.9%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fig. 4.27 Metastatic adenocarcinoma, small intestine. A Tumour is beneath swollen mucosa. B Tumour in muscularis propria. Submucosa is oedematous.

Fig. 4.28 A, B Metastatic malignant melanoma, small intestine.
of a primary tumour, the general consensus is that they are virtually all secondary, usually from misdiagnosed or regressed primary melanomas [458].

**Clinical features**

Small intestinal metastases can cause bleeding and obstruction as well as non-specific symptoms such as abdominal discomfort, gas distension, and diarrhoea [1378, 580].

**Imaging**

The identification of a small bowel tumour always raises the question of whether the tumour is primary or secondary. Contrast radiography shows narrowing and abnormalities of the small intestinal wall. Advanced cases result in stenosis with distension due to obstruction.

**Macroscopy**

Typical features of intestinal metastases include intestinal wall thickening, submucosal spread, and ulcers. Melanomas may not be pigmented and may appear as nodules or polyps.

**Histopathology**

Metastases are typically submucosal or subserosal making the distinction between primary and secondary tumours relatively easy. Cytokeratin immunohistochemistry may help to differentiate between primary colon cancer (positive for cytokeratin 20), metastases from ovary and breast (usually positive for cytokeratin 7) and those from liver, kidney and prostate (usually negative for both cytokeratins 7 and 20) [2047, 129]. On the other hand, the distinction between multiple primary small bowel carcinoids and their metastases may not be possible. This also applies to leiomyosarcomas/stromal tumours of the small intestine.

**Prognosis**

Intestinal metastases usually represent a late stage of disease in which other haematogenous metastases are also frequently found. Therefore, the prognosis is poor. Exceptions are melanoma and renal cancer in which metastases confined to the bowel may be associated with prolonged survival after resection.
CHAPTER 5

Tumours of the Appendix

The appendix is the most frequent site of carcinoids, i.e. tumours with endocrine differentiation, that span a wide range of morphological variety.

Adenocarcinomas of the appendix also show interesting morphological variations, from those that resemble the usual colorectal carcinoma to those that arise from a carcinoid and to mucinous tumours that may appear well differentiated and indistinguishable from adenoma and yet spread widely through the peritoneal cavity.
WHO histological classification of tumours of the appendix

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Epithelial tumours</th>
<th>Non-epithelial tumours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adenoma</td>
<td>8140/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubular</td>
<td>8211/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Villous</td>
<td>8261/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubulovillous</td>
<td>8263/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serrated</td>
<td>8213/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8480/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signet-ring cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8490/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8041/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
<td>8020/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoid (well differentiated endocrine neoplasm)</td>
<td>8240/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC-cell, serotonin-producing neoplasm</td>
<td>8241/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-cell, glucagon-like peptide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and PP/PYY producing tumour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubular carcinoid</td>
<td>8245/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goblet cell carcinoid (mucinous carcinoid)</td>
<td>8243/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed carcinoid-adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8244/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-epithelial tumours</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neuroma</td>
<td>9570/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipoma</td>
<td>8850/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leiomymoma</td>
<td>8890/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal stromal tumour</td>
<td>8890/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leiomyosarcoma</td>
<td>8890/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma</td>
<td>9140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Secondary tumours

Hyperplastic (metaplastic) polyp

TNM classification of tumours of the appendix

TNM classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>T – Primary Tumour</th>
<th>M – Distant Metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stage Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T0</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>T0</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 This classification is modified from the previous WHO histological classification of tumours (848) taking into account changes in our understanding of these lesions. In the case of endocrine neoplasms, it is based on the recent WHO classification (1784) but has been simplified to be of more practical utility in morphological classification. Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (542) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded to 0 for benign tumours, /3 for malignant tumours, and /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour.
Adenocarcinoma of the appendix

Definition
A malignant epithelial neoplasm of the appendix with invasion beyond the muscularis mucosae.

ICD-O codes
Adenocarcinoma 8140/3
Mucinous adenocarcinoma 8480/3
Signet-ring cell carcinoma 8490/3

Epidemiology
Adenocarcinoma of the appendix occurs in 0.1% of appendicectomies, corresponding to an estimated incidence of 0.2/100,000 per annum (393, 1928). Adenocarcinomas accounted for 58% of malignant appendiceal tumours in the SEER database, the remainder being mostly carcinoids. The rates for the carcinomas stayed constant during the period 1973-1987 (1928). The median age of patients with mucinous and non-mucinous adenocarcinoma was about 65 years in SEER data; other studies suggest a peak age at manifestation in the sixth decade (250, 393). Males appear to be more commonly affected than females (393).

Aetiology
Patients with chronic ulcerative colitis (UC) have an increased susceptibility to formation of epithelial dysplasia and malignancy in affected segments of bowel: inflammatory involvement of the appendix is seen in approximately half of UC cases with pancolitis. Both adenoma and adenocarcinoma of the appendix have been described in patients affected by long-standing ulcerative colitis (1394).

Clinical features
Signs and symptoms
Many patients with appendiceal adenocarcinoma have clinical features indistinguishable from acute appendicitis. Most of the remaining cases present as an abdominal mass (250, 393). Spread to the peritoneal cavity may produce large volumes of mucus, causing pseudomyxoma peritonei. Such cases may present with abdominal distension. Rarely, external fistulation occurs (251, 393, 707).

Imaging
Ultrasound, computerised tomography (CT) scan or barium enema are of limited benefit in the pre-operative diagnosis of cases presenting as acute appendicitis. Ultrasound and CT scan are the preferred imaging procedures in cases presenting with abdominal mass or pseudomyxoma peritonei (393, 707). Serial CT scanning and CEA measurements can assess the extent of peritoneal involvement and the subsequent course of the disease. Intraepithelial neoplasia of the appendix may occur concurrently with a carcinoma elsewhere in the large intestine (393).

Macroscopy
In cases of primary adenocarcinoma, the appendix may be enlarged, deformed or completely destroyed (250, 251, 1612). Well differentiated lesions are often cystic and may be called cystadenocarcinomas. A grossly appreciated swelling of the appendix due to the accumulation of mucus within the lumen can be termed mucocoele, but this is descriptive not a pathological diagnosis (250, 251).

Tumour spread and staging
Although the TNM classification currently uses the same criteria as for colorectal tumours, appendiceal cases should be separately classified. This is particularly important because of the special nature of pseudomyxoma peritonei, where malignant cells may be scarce and acellular mucin may seem to have spread further than the malignant cells (250). Well differentiated mucinous appendiceal adenocarcinomas generally grow slowly, and typically produce the clinical picture of pseudomyxoma peritonei. Lymph node metastases tend to occur late. Rarely, tumour growth in the retroperitoneum may produce pseudomyxoma retroperitonei (1194). The behaviour of non-mucinous carcinomas resembles that of their colonic counterparts.

Pseudomyxoma peritonei
Pseudomyxoma peritonei is the presence of mucinous material on peritoneal surfaces. It is not a complete histological

Fig. 5.01 Mucinous adenocarcinoma arising in a villous adenoma. The lumen is lined by a villous adenoma.
diagnosis in itself; the prognosis will depend on the nature of the causative lesion. Nevertheless, pseudomyxoma peritonei is often applied to a distinctive clinical picture produced by well differentiated mucinous adenocarcinomas in which the growth of malignant cells within the peritoneal cavity causes a slow but relentless accumulation of mucin. Cells may be very scanty within this mucinous material.

A distinctive feature of well differentiated mucinous carcinomatosis is its distribution in the abdomen. There is a tendency to spare the peritoneal surfaces of the bowel, whereas large-volume disease is found in the greater omentum, beneath the right hemidiaphragm, in the right retrohepatic space, at the ligament of Treitz, in the left abdominal gutter and in the pelvis (1854). In these cases, tumour growth tends to remain confined to the abdomen for many years. Mucinous cysts within the spleen occur occasionally (433).

It has been suggested that appendiceal adenomas can cause widespread pseudomyxoma peritonei with an ultimately fatal outcome, and some authors use the term ‘adenomucinosis’ for the spread of such lesions through the abdomen (1611, 1612). It is considered more likely that such cases are examples of well differentiated adenocarcinoma.

Although most cases of pseudomyxoma peritonei are due to spread from a primary carcinoma of the appendix, cases have been reported in association with mucinous carcinomas of other sites, including gallbladder, stomach, colorectum, pancreas, fallopian tube, urachus, lung, and breast (346, 612, 707, 981, 1199, 2199).

Although the ovary has been thought of as a common primary site (104, 1705), there is an accumulating body of evidence based on immunohistochemistry and molecular genetics suggesting that this is not the case, and that in most patients with low-grade mucinous tumours of the ovary and appendix with pseudomyxoma peritonei the lesions are probably metastatic from an appendiceal primary (1536, 1611, 1612, 1871, 2187).

Histopathology
The majority of appendiceal adenocarcinomas are well differentiated and mucinous (250, 706). If signet-ring cells account for more than 50% of the neoplasm, the term signet-ring cell carcinoma is appropriate.

The term mucinous cystadenocarcinoma may be used for well differentiated mucinous tumours with cystic structures. However, this designation is descriptive and does not constitute a separate disease entity (251, 2115).

Grading
Grading is the same as in the large intestine. Some adenocarcinomas of the appendix are so well differentiated that their neoplastic features may be very subtle (250).
Precursor lesions and benign tumours
By analogy with the rest of the large intestine, an adenoma-carcinoma sequence is assumed to occur in the appendix; the finding of a residual adenoma in some cases of adenocarcinoma supports this contention (1548). However, some adenocarcinomas appear to arise from goblet cell carcinoid tumours (209, 250). Compared to adenomas of the colon, adenomas of the appendix are more likely to be villous or serrated (250, 706, 1548, 2115, 2110). Many appendiceal serrated and villous adenomas display minimal cytological abnormalities; such lesions need to be distinguished from hyperplastic polyps or mucosal hyperplasia. Pedunculated hyperplastic polyps of the type seen in the colon are unusual in the appendix, but diffuse hyperplasia is relatively common (2184). The diagnosis of hyperplastic polyph/diffuse hyperplasia should not be made if there are cytological abnormalities in the epithelial cells; if any are present, then the diagnosis of adenoma should be considered. The presence of villous structures is also a pointer towards adenoma.

As they grow, adenomas of the appendix typically become cystic, and the lining epithelium becomes undulating rather than villous. Such lesions may produce a mucocoele and be given the descriptive appellation of cystadenoma.

Genetic susceptibility
Familial adenomatous polyposis coli (FAP)
A review of 71,000 appendix specimens revealed 33 benign and 6 malignant appendiceal tumours in patients with familial polyposis coli (324). Several cases of adenocarcinoma of the appendix have been reported in FAP patients, including a patient with appendiceal adenocarcinoma as the presenting feature (1464).

Hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC)
This familial cancer syndrome confers increased susceptibility to proximal colon cancer (1936), but it is not yet clear whether there is also an increased risk of appendiceal neoplasms.

Other polyposis syndromes
It is difficult to establish accurately the risk of genetic susceptibility to tumours of the appendix in Peutz-Jeghers and juvenile polyposis syndrome on account of the rarity of these conditions. Intussusception with an ‘inside-out’ appendix in Peutz-Jeghers syndrome has been reported, caused by a hamartomatous polyp of the appendix or an appendiceal polyp with villous adenomatous changes and focal carcinoma in situ (1243).

Genetics
Limited data are available on molecular genetic alterations in appendiceal tumours, and these data indicate similarities to those in colorectal tumours. KRAS mutations have been identified in approximately 70% of appendiceal mucinous adenomas, mostly in codon 12 and a few in codon 13 (1871). In addition, KRAS mutation has been identified in an appendix cystadenoma associated with a long history of ulcerative colitis (1123). Tumour suppressor gene allelic imbalances have been found in about half of appendiceal mucinous adenomas with loss of heterozygosity (LOH) at several chromosomal loci, including 5q22, 6q, 17p13, and 18q21. LOH was most fre-
quent at the 5q locus linked to the APC tumour suppressor gene which in the colorectum is strongly associated with transition to adenoma [1871]. In cases of pseudomyxoma peritonei (well differentiated mucinous adenocarcinoma), LOH at one or two polymorphic microsatellite loci was seen in approximately half of the cases and was considered an indication of monoclonality.

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

SEER data showed the 5-year survival rates for localized adenocarcinoma to be 95%, compared with a 5-year survival of 80% for mucinous or cystadenocarcinoma. When distant metastases were present, the 5-year survival rates were 0% and 51% respectively [1928]. This reflects the low aggressive potential of mucinous tumours that spread to the peritoneum [1769]. Features that have been associated with a poor prognosis in appendiceal adenocarcinoma include advanced stage, high-grade, and nonmucinous histology [345, 1365, 1769]. The spread of mucus beyond the right lower quadrant of the abdomen (whether or not cells are identified within it) is an independent prognostic variable, as is the presence of neoplastic cells outside the visceral peritoneum of the appendix [250]. When pseudomyxoma peritonei is present, abdominal distension, weight loss, high histological grade, and morphological evidence of invasion of underlying structures have been found to be poor prognostic factors, whereas complete excision of tumour is associated with prolonged disease-free survival [346, 1612, 612]. Cytological examination of aspirated mucus and DNA flow cytometry are unhelpful in predicting prognosis [612, 707].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adenoma (Cystadenoma)</td>
<td>Tumour confined to appendiceal mucosa and No histological evidence of invasion</td>
<td>Does not have the capacity to metastasize and can be cured by complete local excision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma (Cystadenocarcinoma)</td>
<td>Histological evidence of mural invasion or Presence of metastases, including spread to peritoneal cavity</td>
<td>Can spread beyond the appendix with peritoneal, lymph node or distant metastases.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 5.01**

Terminology of epithelial neoplasms of the appendix.
Definition
Tumours with endocrine differentiation arising in the appendix.

Epidemiology
Incidence and time trends
Carcinoids account for 50-77% of all appendiceal neoplasms (1252, 1131). Their incidence rate is 0.075 new cases per 100,000 population per year and appears to have been decreasing in the time period 1950-1991 (1251). Approximately 19% of all carcinoids are located in the appendix.

Age and sex distribution
The mean age at presentation is 32-43 years (range, 6 to 80 years) (1251, 1252, 1607). Tubular carcinoids occur at a significantly younger age than goblet cell carcinoids (average, 29 versus 53 years) (209). Appendiceal carcinoids occur more frequently in females than in males (1251). This could reflect the greater number of incidental appendicectomies performed in women (1252) but in the SEER database, the frequency of non-carcinoid appendiceal tumours is similar among males and females, suggesting that the higher rate of appendiceal carcinoids in women may not be due solely to higher rates of appendicectomy (1251). Furthermore, the prevalence of girls among children with appendiceal carcinoids can not be explained by differences in appendicectomy rates (866A, 1255).

Clinical features
The majority of appendiceal endocrine tumours are found incidentally in appendicectomy specimens; the majority of these are asymptomatic and located in the distal end of the appendix. In a small number of cases, carcinoids involving the remaining portions of the appendix may obstruct the lumen and produce appendicitis (2059, 209). Carcinoid syndrome caused by an appendiceal carcinoid is extremely rare and almost always related to widespread metastases, usually to the liver and retroperitoneum (1252, 1927).

Macroscopy
Appendiceal EC-cell carcinoids are firm, greyish-white (yellow after fixation), and fairly well circumscribed, but not encapsulated, and measure usually less than 1 cm in diameter (1252). Tumours > 2 cm are rare; most are located at the tip of the appendix (1254). Goblet-cell carcinoids and mixed endocrine-exocrine carcinomas of the appendix may be found in any portion of the appendix and appear as an area of whitish, sometimes mucoid induration without dilatation of the lumen. They range in size from 0.5 to 2.5 cm (442). Because of their diffusely infiltrative nature, goblet cell carcinoids tend not to form distinct tumours and their size generally cannot be assessed accurately. In a series of 33 cases (209) only two were suspected grossly; 11 involved the tip and 22 were circumferential.

Histopathology
Carcinoid (well differentiated endocrine neoplasm)
Most endocrine tumours of the appendix are serotonin-producing enterochromaffin (EC)-cell carcinoids, while only a minority are glucagon-like peptide and PP/PYY-producing L-cell carcinoids and mixed endocrine-exocrine carcinomas. They are classified according to the WHO histological classification of endocrine tumours (1784).
EC-cell, serotonin-producing carcinoid

Argentaffin EC-cells, producing both serotonin and substance P, are arranged in rounded solid nests with some peripheral palisading (type A structure according to Soga and Tazawa [1775]). Occasionally, there may also be glandular formations (type C structures), forming a mixed (A+C) pattern. Most tumours display muscular and lymphatic invasion or perineural involvement; two thirds of the cases invade the peritoneum, possibly through endolymphatic spread [1252]. Despite these signs of apparent aggressiveness appendiceal carcinoids infrequently produce lymph node or distant metastases, in contrast to ileal carcinoids.

No relevant histologic, cytological, or cytochemical differences have been detected between ileal and appendiceal carcinoids, despite their very different clinical behaviour, with the exception of the presence of S100-positive sustentacular cells surrounding tumour nests in appendiceal lesions. In this respect, EC-cell appendiceal carcinoids resemble subepithelial neuroendocrine complexes rather than intraepithelial endocrine cells [1115, 586, 1182]. In contrast, sustentacular cells are lacking in ileal and colonic EC-cell tumours, which develop from EC-cells of the mucosal crypts [1115, 1291].

L-cell, glucagon-like peptide and PP/PYY-producing carcinoid

These are much less common. L-cell tumours are non-argentaffin, producing glucagon-like peptides (GLP-1, GLP-2, and the enteroglucagon glicentin and oxyntomodulin) and PP/PYY. They feature a characteristic tubular or trabecular pattern (type B pattern according to Soga and Tazawa [1775, 820, 1724, 1783]). These tumours generally measure only 2 to 3 mm and are the appendiceal counterpart of L-cell tumours that are most frequent in the rectum.

Mixed endocrine-exocrine neoplasms

This term is used for certain tumours of the appendix that show features of both glandular and endocrine differentiation, i.e. goblet cell carcinoid, tubular carcinoid and mixed carcinoid-adenocarcinoma [2059, 1254].

Goblet-cell carcinoid. This tumour is characterized by a predominant submucosal growth. It typically invades through the appendiceal wall in a concentric manner that does not produce a well-defined tumour [209]. The mucosa is characteristically spared, with the exception of areas of connection of tumour nests with the base of the crypts. The tumour is composed of small, rounded nests of signet-ring-like cells resembling normal intestinal goblet cells, except for nuclear compression. Lumens are infrequently observed. Lysozyme-positive Paneth cells as well as foci resembling Brunner glands may be present [2059, 790]. Mucin stains are intensely positive within goblet cells and extracellular mucin pools [790]. Argentaffin and argyrophil cells, sparse or forming small nests, are identified in 50% and 88% of cases, respectively [2059].

Immunohistochemically, the endocrine cell component is positive for chromogranin A, serotonin, enteroglucagon, somatostatin, and/or PP [790, 725]. The goblet cells express CEA. On ultrastructural examination, both dense core endocrine granules and mucin droplets are found [442, 725]. Both elements are occasionally present within the cytoplasm of the same cell [442, 790].

Tubular carcinoid. This tumour is often misinterpreted as a metastatic adenocarcinoma, because it does not resemble the typical carcinoid and shows little contact with the mucosa. It is composed of small, discrete tubules, some with inspissated mucin in their lumen. Short trabecular structures are frequent, but solid nests are generally absent. In sparse cells or in small groups of tumour cells, the argentaffin reaction is positive in 75%
and the argyrophil reaction in 89% of cases (2059). Useful criteria for diagnosing this tumour are origin from the base of the crypts, integrity of the luminal mucosa, orderly arrangements, and absence of cytological abnormalities and mitoses. Immunohistochemically, tumour cells are often positive for chromogranin A, glucagon, serotonin, and IgA, while they are unreactive for S100 protein (586, 209).

**Mixed carcinoid-adenocarcinoma.** This term has been proposed to designate carcinomas of the appendix that arise by progression from a pre-existing goblet-cell carcinoid. These carcinomas occur in the apparent absence of neoplastic change in the mucosal epithelium (209).

**Genetics**
Loss of heterozygosity at MEN-1 gene locus in sporadic appendiceal carcinoids was reported (829), but has not been confirmed in more recent studies (394, 1938).

Unlike colonic adenocarcinomas, KRAS mutations have not been detected either in typical or in goblet-cell carcinoid of the appendix (1556), while in the same study, TP53 mutations (mainly G:C to A:T transitions) were detected in 25% of goblet-cell carcinoids.

**Prognosis and predictive factors**
The majority of patients with endocrine tumours of the appendix have a favourable prognosis. Clinically non-functioning, non-angioinvasive lesions confined to the appendiceal wall, and < 2 cm in diameter are generally cured by complete local excision, whereas invasion of the mesoappendix or beyond or metastatic spread indicates that the lesion is aggressive. The most important risk factors appear to be tumour size > 2 cm and invasion of the mesoappendix (1134). Lesions confined to the appendiceal wall that show angioinvasion or are > 2 cm in size, carry an uncertain malignant potential.

Location of tumours at the base of the appendix with involvement of the surgical margin or of the caecum is prognostically unfavourable, requiring at least a partial caecectomy to avoid residual tumour or subsequent recurrence (1931). The reported frequency of metastases from appendiceal carcinoids ranged from 1.4% and 8.8% in older series (1252, 1927, 1254, 1780), while in a more recent study the frequency of regional metastases was 27%, and that of distant metastases 8.5% (1251).

The 5-year survival of patients with appendiceal carcinoid is 94% for localized disease, 85% for regional disease, and 34% for distant metastases (1251). Goblet-cell carcinoids are more aggressive than conventional carcinoids, but not as malignant as adenocarcinomas of the appendix. In one study the percentage of patients dead of goblet cell carcinoids was 12.5% (442). Tubular carcinoids, in contrast, are clinically benign (209).
Neuromas are common in the appendix. The most frequent manifestation is the axial neuroma, which causes fibrous obliteration of the appendiceal lumen. Occasionally, neuromas may be found in the mucosa or submucosa without luminal obliteration (1423, 251, 1818). Appendiceal neuromas may be reactive lesions. Histologically, they consist of a myxoid and collagenous background within which a variety of cells is present, including nerve fibres, spindle cells that immunoexpress S-100 protein, endocrine cells, mast cells and eosinophils. In this context, the presence of endocrine cells should not be mistaken for carcinoid tumour. However, it has been suggested that some carcinoids of the appendix might develop in the same setting as appendiceal neuroma (251).

Stromal tumours may affect the appendix on rare occasions; they have generally been described in the literature as being of smooth muscle type (324, 865).

Kaposi sarcoma may be found in the appendix as part of the acquired immuno-deficiency syndrome (406). Rarely, it occurs in individuals without evidence of HIV infection (295).

Malignant lymphomas involve the appendix usually as part of more general intestinal spread. Lymphomas presenting as primary disease of the appendix are rare; some are of Burkitt type (1295, 1761).

Secondary tumours are unusual in the appendix. Primary sites include carcinomas of the gastrointestinal and urogenital tract, breast, lung, and gallbladder. Metastatic thymoma and melanoma have also been reported (130, 98, 570, 607, 1051, 1407, 1615, 1822, 2129). A common pattern is serosal involvement, presumably due to transcoelomic spread.
Colorectal carcinomas vary considerably throughout the world, being one of the leading cancer sites in the developed countries. Both environmental (diet) and genetic factors play key roles in its aetiology. Genetic susceptibility ranges from well-defined inherited syndromes, e.g. familial adenomatous polyposis, to ill-defined familial aggregations. Molecular genetic mechanisms are diverse, and recent data suggest two main pathways: a mutational pathway, which involves inactivation of tumour suppressor genes such as APC; and microsatellite instability which occurs in hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) and a proportion of sporadic carcinomas.

The main precursor lesion is the adenoma, which is readily detected and treated by endoscopic techniques. Non-neoplastic polyps are not considered precancerous unless they occur in polyposis syndromes. Inflammatory bowel diseases, such as chronic ulcerative colitis, bear resemblance to Barrett oesophagus as a precursor lesion with a potential for control by endoscopic surveillance. Cure is strongly related to anatomic extent, which makes accurate staging very important.

Lymphomas, endocrine tumours, and mesenchymal tumours are quite uncommon at this site.
WHO histological classification of tumours of the colon and rectum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Epithelial tumours</th>
<th>Non-epithelial tumours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adenoma</td>
<td>Lipoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubular</td>
<td>Leiomysarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Villous</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal stromal tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubulovillous</td>
<td>Leiomyosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serrated</td>
<td>Angiosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Malignant melanoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia) associated with chronic inflammatory diseases</td>
<td>Malignant lymphomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-grade glandular intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
<td>Marginal zone B-cell lymphoma of MALT Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-grade glandular intraepithelial neoplasia</td>
<td>Mantle cell lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma</td>
<td>Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Burkitt lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Burkitt-like/ataypical Burkitt-lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signet-ring cell carcinoma</td>
<td>Others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small cell carcinoma</td>
<td>Median }}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td>N0 M0 M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenosquamous carcinoma</td>
<td>T4 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medullary carcinoma</td>
<td>Stage IV Any T Any N M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
<td>Any T N2 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoïd (well differentiated endocrine neoplasm)</td>
<td>Stage III Any T N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC-cell, serotonin-producing neoplasm</td>
<td>Stage II T3 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-cell, glucagon-like peptide and PP/PYY producing tumour</td>
<td>Stage I T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed carcinoïd-adenocarcinoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TNM classification of tumours of the colon and rectum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM classification</th>
<th>Stage Grouping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T – Primary Tumour</td>
<td>Stage 0 Tis N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
<td>Stage I T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumour</td>
<td>Stage II T3 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ: intraepithelial or invasion of lamina propria</td>
<td>Stage III Any T N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Tumour invades submucosa</td>
<td>Stage IV Any T Any N M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Tumour invades muscularis propria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 Tumour invades through muscularis propria into subserosa or into non-peritonealized pericolic or perirectal tissues</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 Tumour directly invades other organs or structures and/or perforates visceral peritoneum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N – Regional Lymph Nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1 Metastasis in 1 to 3 regional lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2 Metastasis in 4 or more regional lymph nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 This classification has been simplified to be of more practical utility in morphological classification.
2 Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /3 for malignant tumours, /2 for in situ carcinomas and grade III intraepithelial neoplasia, and /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour. Intraepithelial neoplasia does not have a generic code in ICD-O. ICD-O codes are available only for lesions categorized as glandular intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8148/2), and adenocarcinoma in situ (8140/2).

1 This classification is modified from the previous WHO histological classification (8453) taking into account changes in our understanding of these lesions. In the case of endocrine neoplasms, it is based on the recent WHO classification (1784) but has been simplified to be of more practical utility in morphological classification.

1 Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (542) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /3 for malignant tumours, /2 for in situ carcinomas and grade III intraepithelial neoplasia, and /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour. Intraepithelial neoplasia does not have a generic code in ICD-O. ICD-O codes are available only for lesions categorized as glandular intraepithelial neoplasia grade III (8148/2), and adenocarcinoma in situ (8140/2).

1 {1, 68}. This classification applies only to carcinomas.
2 A help desk for specific questions about the TNM classification is available at http://tnm.uicc.org.
3 This includes cancer cells confined within the glandular basement membrane (intraepithelial) or lamina propria (intramucosal) with no extension through muscularis mucosae into submucosa.
4 Direct invasion in T4 includes invasion of other segments of the colorectum by way of the serosa, e.g. invasion of sigmoid colon by a carcinoma of the cecum.
Carcinoma of the colon and rectum

Definition
A malignant epithelial tumour of the colon or rectum. Only tumours that have penetrated through muscularis mucosae into submucosa are considered malignant at this site. The presence of scattered Paneth cells, neuroendocrine cells or small foci of squamous cell differentiation is compatible with the diagnosis of adenocarcinoma.

ICD-O codes
Adenocarcinoma 8140/3
Mucinous adenocarcinoma 8480/3
Signet-ring cell carcinoma 8490/3
Small cell carcinoma 8041/3
Squamous cell carcinoma 8070/3
Adenosquamous carcinoma 8560/3
Medullary carcinoma 8510/3
Undifferentiated carcinoma 8020/3

Epidemiology
An estimated 875,000 cases of colorectal cancer occurred worldwide in 1996, representing about 8.5% of all new cancers [1531]. The age-standardized incidence (cases/100,000 population) varies greatly around the world, with up to 20-fold differences between the high rates in developed countries of Europe, North and South America, Australia/New Zealand, and Asia and the still lower rates in some recently developed countries (Malaysia, Korea) and in developing countries of Africa, Asia and Polynesia. Significant differences also exist within continents, e.g. with higher incidences in western and northern Europe than in central and southern Europe [336]. Among immigrants and their descendants, incidence rates rapidly reach those of the adopted country, indicating that environmental factors are important. According to the U.S. SEER database, the incidence rate for adenocarcinoma of the colon is 33.7/100,000 and increased by 18% during the period from 1973 through 1987 while the incidence of rectal adenocarcinoma (12.8/100,000) and mucinous adenocarcinoma in the colon and rectum (0.3 and 0.8, respectively) remained relatively constant [1928]. During the last decade of the 20th century, incidence and mortality have decreased [566]. By contrast, the incidence in Japan, Korea and Singapore is rising rapidly [737], probably due to the acquisition of a Western lifestyle. Incidence increases with age [2121]: carcinomas are rare before the age of 40 years except in individuals with genetic predisposition or predisposing conditions such as chronic inflammatory bowel disease. Incidence rates in the 1973-87 SEER data for colonic and rectal adenocarcinoma for males were higher than those for females; whites had higher rates than blacks for rectal adenocarcinoma, but blacks had higher rates for colonic adenocarcinoma [1928]. During 1975-94, a decrease in incidence in whites was evident, while the incidence of proximal colon cancers in blacks still increased [1958].

Aetiology
Diet and lifestyle
A high incidence of colorectal carcinomas is consistently observed in populations with a Western type diet, i.e. highly caloric food rich in animal fat combined
with a sedentary lifestyle. Epidemiological studies have indicated that meat consumption, smoking and alcohol consumption are risk factors. Inverse associations include vegetable consumption, prolonged use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, oestrogen replacement therapy, and physical activity (1531, 2121). Fibre may have a protective role, but this has been questioned recently. The molecular pathways underlying these epidemiological associations are poorly understood, but production of heterocyclic amines during cooking of meat, stimulation of higher levels of fecal bile acids and production of reactive oxygen species have been implicated as possible mechanisms (416, 1439).

Vegetable anticarcinogens such as folate, antioxidants and inducers of detoxifying enzymes, binding of luminal carcinogens, fibre fermentation to produce protective volatile fatty acids, and reduced contact time with colorectal epithelium due to faster transit may explain some of the inverse associations.

**Chronic inflammation**

Chronic inflammatory bowel diseases are significant aetiological factors in the development of colorectal adenocarcinomas (1582). The risk increases after 8-10 years and is highest in patients with early-onset and widespread manifestation (pancolitis).

**Ulcerative colitis.** This chronic disorder of unknown aetiology affects children and adults, with a peak incidence in the early third decade. It is considered a premalignant disorder, with duration and extent of disease being the major risk factors. Population-based studies show a 4.4-fold increase in mortality from colorectal carcinoma (1504, 448, 1835, 1214). In clinical studies, the increase in incidence is usually higher, up to 20-fold (647, 990). Involvement of greater than one half of the colon is associated with a risk to develop carcinoma of approximately 15%, whereas left sided disease may bear a malignancy risk of 5% (1727, 1045). Ulcerative proctitis is not associated with an increased carcinoma risk.

**Crohn disease.** Development of carcinoma is seen both in the small intestine and the large intestine. The risk of colorectal malignancy appears to be 3 fold above normal (581). Long duration and early onset of disease are risk factors for carcinoma.

**Modifying factors.** Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and some naturally occurring compounds block the biochemical abnormalities in prostaglandin homeostasis in colorectal neoplasms. Some of these agents cause a dramatic involution of adenomas but their role in the chemoprevention of adenocarcinoma is less clear. Polymorphisms in key enzymes can alter other metabolic pathways that modify protective or injurious compounds, e.g. methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase, N-acetyltransferases, glutathione-S-transferases, aldehyde dehydrogenase and cytochrome P-450 (1766, 686, 1300). These polymorphisms may explain individual susceptibility or predisposition among populations with similar exposures (1555).

**Irradiation.** A rare but well recognized aetiological factor in colorectal neoplasia is therapeutic pelvic irradiation (1974).

**Localization**

Most colorectal carcinomas are located in the sigmoid colon and rectum, but there is evidence of changing distribution in recent years, with an increasing proportion of more proximal carcinomas.
Molecular pathology has also shown site differences: tumours with high levels of microsatellite instability (MSI-H) or *ras* proto-oncogene mutations are more frequently located in the caecum, ascending colon and transverse colon.

**Clinical features**

**Signs and symptoms**

Some patients are asymptomatic, especially when their neoplasm is identified by screening or surveillance. Haematochezia and anaemia are common presenting features due to bleeding from the tumour. Many patients experience change in bowel habit; in the right colon, the fluid faeces can pass exophytic masses, whereas in the left colon the solid faeces are more often halted by annular tumours so that constipation is more common. There may be associated abdominal distension. Rectosigmoid lesions can produce tenesmus. Other symptoms include fever, malaise, weight loss, and abdominal pain. Some patients present with the complications of obstruction or perforation.

**Imaging**

Modern imaging techniques permit non-invasive detection and clinical staging. Conventional barium enema detects large tumours, while air-contrast radiography improves the visualization of less advanced lesions. Cross-sectional imaging by CT, MRI imaging and transrectal ultrasoundography permit some assessment of the depth of local tumour invasion and the presence of regional and distant metastases [2202]. Scintigraphy and positron emission tomography are also used.

**Endoscopy**

The development of endoscopy has had a major impact on diagnosis and treatment. Colonoscopy allows observation of the mucosal surface of the entire large bowel with biopsy of identified lesions. Chromoendoscopy employing dyes to improve visualization of non-protruding lesions and magnification, have been developed. The flat neoplastic lesions

![Fig. 6.06 A Endoscopic view of two small flat adenomas highlighted with indigo-carmine to show the abnormal tubular pit pattern. B Magnifying video endoscopy of a tubulovillous adenoma highlighted with indigo-carmine to show cribriform pattern. C Histological section of a flat elevated tubular adenoma showing low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia. D Stereomicroscopic view with indigo-carmine dye spray of a depressed adenoma with high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia containing very small round pits.](image)

![Fig. 6.07 A Small adenocarcinoma invading muscularis propria, arising in a depressed adenoma. B Early adenocarcinoma invading submucosa, arising in a flat adenoma.](image)
Tumours of the colon and rectum have been designated by Japanese gastroenterologists as 'type II', with three subtypes: IIa, 'en plateau' elevated; IIb, completely flat; and IIc, 'en plateau' depressed. The depressed lesions have, despite a smaller diameter, a poor prognosis with prompt penetration in the submucosa. The pit pattern of the surface at magnification 100 allows a reliable prediction of histology. Therapeutic endoscopy, including snare polypectomy and endoscopic mucosectomy, can be used to remove colorectal neoplasms, especially adenomas, and carcinomas with minimal submucosal invasion. Protruded neoplasms can usually be resected by snare polypectomy. Superficial lesions (flat and depressed) and some protruded lesions may be removed by endoscopic mucosal resection [2121, 2122, 1164].

**Macroscopy**

The macroscopic features are influenced by the phase in the natural history of tumours at the time of discovery. Carcinomas may be exophytic/fungating with predominantly intraluminal growth, endophytic/ulcerative with predominantly intramural growth, diffusely infiltrative/liniitis plastica with subtle endophytic growth, and annular with circumferential involvement of the colorectal wall and constriction of the lumen. Overlap among these types is common. Pedunculated exophytic lesions have a mural attachment narrower than the head of the tumour, with the stalk consisting of uninvolved mucosa and submucosa, while sessile exophytic tumours have broad attachment to the wall. Carcinomas of the proximal colon tend to grow as exophytic masses while those in the transverse and descending colon are more often endophytic and annular. On cut section, most colorectal carcinomas have a relatively homogeneous appearance although areas of necrosis can be seen. Adenocarcinomas of the mucinous (colloid) type often have areas with grossly visible mucus. Carcinomas with high levels of microsatellite instability (MSI-H) are usually circumscribed and about 20% are mucinous [842].

**Tumour spread and staging**

Following transmural extension through the muscularis propria into pericolic or perirectal soft tissue, the tumour may involve contiguous structures. The consequences of direct extension depend on the anatomic site. An advanced rectal carcinoma may extend into pelvic structures such as the vagina and urinary bladder, but cannot gain direct access to the peritoneal cavity when it is located distal to the peritoneal reflection. By contrast, colonic tumours can extend directly to the serosal surface. Perforation can be associated with transcoelomic spread to the peritoneal cavity (peritoneal carcinomatosis). Involvement of the peritoneal surface should only be diagnosed if the peritoneum is ulcerated or if tumour cells have clearly penetrated the mesothelium. Since the peritoneal surface infiltrated by tumour cells may become adherent to adjacent structures, direct extension into adjoining organs can also occur in colonic carcinomas that have invaded the peritoneal portion of the wall [62]. Implantation due to surgical manipulation occurs only occasionally, but has been reported after laparoscopic colectomy for cancer [1106]. Spread via lymphatic or blood vessels can occur early in the natural history and lead to systemic disease. Despite the presence of lymphatics in the colorectal mucosa, lymphogenic spread does not occur unless the muscularis mucosae is breached and the submucosa is invaded. This biological behaviour stands in sharp contrast to carcinomas of the stomach where metastasis occurs occa-
Adenocarcinoma occasionally from purely intramucosal carcinomas. Invasion of portal vein tributaries in the colon and vena cava tributaries in the rectum can lead to haematogenous dissemination.

Staging
The classification proposed by C. Dukes in 1929-35 for rectal cancer serves as the template for many staging systems currently in use. This family of classifications takes into account two histopathological features: depth of penetration into the wall and the presence or absence of metastasis in regional lymph nodes. The TNM classification (66) is replacing the Dukes classification.

Histopathology
The defining feature of colorectal adenocarcinoma is invasion through the muscularis mucosae into the submucosa. Lesions with the morphological characteristics of adenocarcinoma that are confined to the epithelium or invade the lamina propria alone and lack invasion through the muscularis mucosae have virtually no risk of metastasis. Therefore, ‘high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia’ is a more appropriate term than ‘adenocarcinoma in-situ’, and ‘intramucosal neoplasia’ is more appropriate than ‘intramucosal adenocarcinoma’. Use of these proposed terms helps to avoid overtreatment.

Most colorectal adenocarcinomas are gland-forming, with variability in the size and configuration of the glandular structures. In well and moderately differentiated adenocarcinomas, the epithelial cells are usually large and tall, and the gland lumina often contain cellular debris.

Mucinous adenocarcinoma
This designation is used if > 50% of the lesion is composed of mucin. This variant is characterized by pools of extracellular mucin that contain malignant epithelium as acinar structures, strips of cells or single cells. Many high-frequency micro-satellite instability (MSI-H) carcinomas are of this histopathological type.

Signet-ring cell carcinoma
This variant of adenocarcinoma is defined by the presence of > 50% of tumour cells with prominent intracytoplasmic mucin (1672).

The typical signet-ring cell has a large mucin vacuole that fills the cytoplasm and displaces the nucleus. Signet-ring cells can occur in the mucin pools of mucinous adenocarcinoma or in a diffusely infiltrative process with minimal extracellular mucin. Some MSI-H carcinomas are of this type.

Adenosquamous carcinoma
These unusual tumours show features of both squamous carcinoma and adenocarcinoma, either as separate areas within the tumour or admixed. For a lesion to be classified as adenosquamous, there should be more than just occasional small foci of squamous differentiation. Pure squamous cell carcinoma is very rare in the large bowel.
Tumours of the colon and rectum

Medullary carcinoma
This rare variant is characterized by sheets of malignant cells with vesicular nuclei, prominent nucleoli and abundant pink cytoplasm exhibiting prominent infiltration by intraepithelial lymphocytes. It is invariably associated with MSI-H and has a favourable prognosis when compared to other poorly differentiated colorectal carcinomas.

Undifferentiated carcinoma
These rare tumours lack morphological evidence of differentiation beyond that of an epithelial tumour and have variable histological features. Despite their undifferentiated appearances, these tumours are genetically distinct and typically associated with MSI-H.

Other variants
Carcinomas that include a spindle cell component are best termed spindle cell carcinoma or sarcomatoid carcinoma. The spindle cells are, at least focally, immunoreactive for cytokeratin. The term carcinosarcoma applies to malignant tumours containing both carcinomatous and heterologous mesenchymal elements. Other rare histopathological variants of colorectal carcinoma include pleomorphic (giant cell), choriocarcinoma, pigmented, clear cell, stem cell, and Paneth cell-rich (crypt cell carcinoma). Mixtures of histopathological types can be seen.

Carcinosarcoma
Carcinomas that include a spindle cell component are best termed sarcomatoid carcinoma or spindle cell carcinoma. The spindle cells are, at least focally, immunoreactive for cytokeratin. The term carcinosarcoma applies to malignant tumours containing both carcinomatous and heterologous mesenchymal elements.

Grading
Adenocarcinomas are graded predominantly on the basis of the extent of glandular appearances, and should be divided into well, moderately and poorly differentiated, or into low-grade (encompassing well and moderately differentiated adenocarcinomas) and high-grade (including poorly differentiated adenocarcinomas and undifferentiated carcinomas). Poorly differentiated adenocarcinomas should show at least some gland formation or mucus production: tubules are typically irregularly folded and distorted.

When a carcinoma has heterogeneity in differentiation, grading should be based on the least differentiated component, not including the leading front of invasion. Small foci of apparent poor differentiation are common at the advancing edge of tumours, but this feature is insufficient to classify the tumour as poorly differentiated.

The percentage of the tumour showing formation of gland-like structures can be used to define the grade. Well differentiated (grade 1) lesions exhibit glandular structures in > 95% of the tumour; moderately differentiated (grade 2) adenocarci-
Adenocarcinoma has 50-95% glands; poorly differentiated (grade 3) adenocarcinoma has 5-50%; and undifferentiated (grade 4) carcinoma has < 5%. Mucinous adenocarcinoma and signet-ring cell carcinoma by convention are considered poorly differentiated (grade 3). Medullary carcinoma with MSI-H appears undifferentiated. Additional studies of the biological behaviour of MSI-H cancers are needed to relate the morphological grade and molecular subtypes of mucinous, signet-ring cell and medullary carcinoma to outcome since MSI-H carcinomas have an improved stage-specific survival (788, 924, 1098).

Precursor lesions
During the past decade the natural history of colorectal carcinomas has been extensively studied in correlation with the underlying accumulation of genetic alterations.

Aberrant crypt foci (ACF)
The earliest morphological precursor of epithelial neoplasia is the aberrant crypt focus (ACF). Microscopic examination of mucosal sheets dissected from the bowel wall and stained with methylene blue, or mucosal examination with a magnifying endoscope, reveal ACFs to have crypts of enlarged calibre and thickened epithelium with reduced mucin content. Microscopy shows two main types: ACFs with features of hyperplastic polyps and a high frequency of ras proto-oncogene mutations, and dysplastic ACFs (micro-adenomas) associated with a mutation of the APC gene (1375). Progression from ACF through adenoma to carcinoma characterizes carcinogenesis in the large intestine (1326).

Adenomas
These precursor lesions are defined by the presence of intraepithelial neoplasia, histologically characterized by hypercellularity with enlarged, hyperchromatic nuclei, varying degrees of nuclear stratification, and loss of polarity. Nuclei may be spindle-shaped, or enlarged and ovoid. Inactivation of the APC/beta-catenin pathway commonly initiates the process and results in extension of epithelial proliferation in dysplastic epithelium from the base of the crypts, where it normally occurs, toward or onto the luminal surface (851, 1528). Polyps appear to grow as a consequence of accelerated crypt fission resulting from APC gene mutation (564). Intraepithelial neoplasia can be low-grade or high-grade, depending on the degree of glandular or villous complexity, extent of nuclear stratification, and severity of abnormal nuclear morphology. Paneth cells, neuroendocrine cells and squamous cell aggregates may be seen in adenomas and may become a dominant constituent of the epithelium.

Macroscopy
Colorectal adenomas can be classified into three groups: elevated, flat, and depressed (973). Elevated adenomas range from pedunculated polyps with a long stalk of non-neoplastic mucosa to those that are sessile. Flat or non-protruding adenomas and depressed adenomas are recognized macroscopically by mucosal reddening, subtle changes in texture, or highlighting by dye techniques. The term adenoma is applied even though the lesions are not polypoid because intraepithelial neopla-
sia (dysplasia) is the hallmark of these lesions. Depressed adenomas are usually smaller than flat or protruding ones and tend to give rise to adenocarcinoma while still relatively small (mean diameter, 11 mm) due to a greater tendency to progress [1628]. These adenomas have a lower frequency of ras mutation than polypoid adenomas [974].

**Histopathology.** Tubular adenomas are usually protruding, spherical and pedunculated, or non-protruding (flat). Microscopically, dysplastic glandular structures occupy at least 80% of the luminal surface. Villous adenomas are typically sessile with a hairy-appearing surface. Microscopically, leaf-like projections lined by dysplastic glandular epithelium comprise more than 80% of the luminal surface. Distinction of villous structures from elongated separated tubules is sometimes problematical. Villous architecture is defined arbitrarily by the length of the glands exceeding twice the thickness of normal colorectal mucosa. Tubulovillous adenomas have a mixture of tubular and villous structures with a ratio between 80%/20% and 20%/80%. Serrated adenomas are characterized by the saw-tooth configuration of a hyperplastic (metaplastic) poly on low power microscopy, but the epithelium lining the upper portion of the crypts and luminal surface is dysplastic. Serrated adenomas can also have a tubular or villous component, but low-levels of microsatellite instability (MSI-L) and altered mucin are characteristic of these serrated lesions [840]. By contrast, mixed hyperplastic poly/adenoma contains separate identifiable areas of each histopathological type [1092]. Occasionally, some villous adenomas show in the slopes of the villi closely packed small glands; those adenomas have been referred to as villo-microglandular adenomas [972].

Although tiny flat or depressed adenocarcinomas are well-described, it is difficult to determine if de novo adenocarcinomas without a benign histopathological precursor lesion ever occur in the large bowel, because adenocarcinoma can overgrow the precursor lesion. The prolonged time interval usually required for progression of intraepithelial to invasive neoplasia offers opportunities for prevention or interruption of the process to reduce mortality due to colorectal carcinoma.

Intraepithelial neoplasia can also occur in the absence of an adenoma, in a pre-existing lesion of another type (such as a hamartomatous poly in juvenile polyposis syndrome and Peutz-Jeghers syndrome), and in chronic inflammatory diseases.

**Hyperplastic (metaplastic) polyps**

The definition is a mucosal excrescence characterized by elongated, serrated crypts lined by proliferative epithelium in the bases with infolded epithelial tufts and enlarged goblet cells in the upper crypts and on the luminal surface, imparting a saw-tooth outline. In the appendix, diffuse hyperplasia may occur as a sessile mucosal proliferation. The epithelial nuclei in the serrated region are small, regular, round and located at
Adenocarcinoma

...the base of the cells adjoining the basement membrane, which is often thickened beneath the surface epithelial cells. The cytoplasm contains prominent mucin vacuoles, which are usually larger than normal goblet cells. The proliferative zone often shows increased cellularity and mitotic activity, which can be mistaken for adenoma. Hyperplastic polyps are traditionally considered non-neoplastic, but ras mutation is common, clonality has been demonstrated, and biochemical abnormalities and epidemiological associations that occur in colorectal adenomas and carcinomas have been found (851, 663, 1178). These lines of evidence suggest that hyperplastic polyps may be neoplastic but have a molecular pathogenesis that differs from the adenoma-adenocarcinoma sequence due to absence of inactivation of the APC/beta-catenin pathway.

**Juvenile polyps**

Sporadic juvenile polyps are typically spherical, lobulated and pedunculated and considered hamartomatous. They most commonly occur in children. The surface is often eroded and friable, and the cut surface typically shows mucin-containing cysts. On histology, the abundant stroma is composed of inflamed, often oedematous granulation tissue that surrounds cystically dilated glands containing mucin. The glands are lined by cuboidal to columnar epithelial cells with reactive changes. The juvenile polyps in patients with juvenile polyposis syndrome may have the macroscopic and microscopic appearances of sporadic juvenile polyps, but they often have a frond-like growth pattern with less stroma, fewer dilated glands and more proliferated small glands (microtubular pattern) than their sporadic counterparts. Intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia) is rare in sporadic juvenile polyps. Intraepithelial neoplasia in this setting results from inactivation of the APC/beta-catenin pathway analogous to the genetic basis of adenoma formation (2145).

**Peutz-Jeghers polyps**

These are discussed in the small intestine section.

**Reactive lesions**

**Inflammatory polyps.** These non-neoplastic polyps are composed of varying proportions of reactive epithelium, inflamed granulation tissue and fibrous tissue, often with morphological similarity to juvenile polyps; inflammatory polyps are seen in a variety of chronic inflammatory diseases including chronic inflammatory bowel disease and diverticulitis.

**Lymphoid polyps.** These result from aggregates of reactive mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue with conspicuous germinal centres located in the mucosa and/or submucosa.

**Mucosal prolapse.** On occasion, mucosal prolapse can produce morphological features that mimic neoplasia, including polyps, masses and ulcers characterized histologically by elongated, distorted, regenerative glands surrounded by a proliferation of smooth muscle fibres from the muscularis mucosae, together with superficial erosions, inflamed granulation tissue and fibrosis (159). Widening of gland lumina at the surface is common. Examples of this phenomenon include inflammatory cloacogenic polyp (1083), solitary rectal ulcer and cap polyp. The process can extend into the bowel wall, producing colitis cystica profunda.

**Neoplasia in chronic inflammatory bowel disease**

There is evidence that the natural history of colorectal carcinomas associated with chronic colitis differs from that of ordinary adenomas both morphologically and with respect to the type and sequence of genetic alterations.
Ulcerative colitis (UC)

Development of carcinoma is apparently metachronous to the development of intraepithelial neoplasia (classified as low-grade and high-grade) complicating chronic colitis. Because invasion can be associated with intraepithelial neoplasia exhibiting relatively mild morphological changes, high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia is diagnosed in colitis on the basis of abnormalities that are less severe than the criteria for high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia in adenomas. It may be flat or present as a ‘dysplasia associated lesion or mass’ (DALM); the latter is often associated with a synchronous carcinoma arising beneath the dysplastic surface. DALMs are considered high-grade lesions through their architecture alone, and both DALM of any grade of dysplasia and high-grade flat dysplasia are associated with invasive carcinoma in about 40% of cases. The diagnosis of DALM and high-grade flat dysplasia usually leads to total colectomy (1687). It may be difficult to distinguish a DALM from an incidental adenoma in a patient with UC.

Attempts have been made to identify early dysplastic lesions in UC with cell cycle proliferation markers. Topoisomerase II alpha and Ki-67 have been shown to increase significantly over baseline expression in UC related dysplasias. Ki-67 positive cells are found both at the surface and the base of the crypts, indicating a fundamental deregulation of the proliferative cell pool (1368). Mutations of TP53 appear to be an early event and are already present in intraepithelial neoplasia associated with UC, in contrast to the adenoma-carcinoma sequence in sporadic colorectal carcinomas. Some TP53 mutations have even been observed in non-dysplastic mucosa of chronic inflammation (516, 1463, 2175).

Alterations of p16 have also been identified in early UC but only very infrequently in adenomas. Both tumour tissue and multiple colorectal cancer cell lines studied showed absence of LOH in 9p 1 (2019, 878). Microsatellite instability and gene alterations in p16 and p53 may represent early events during the development of dysplasia and carcinoma, and these changes may lead to susceptibility for allelic loss of other genes such as APC and DCC. It has been shown that LOH of genetic areas close to the VHL locus on 3p is frequently present in DALM lesions and, less frequently, in flat dysplastic lesions. These changes are not usually seen in sporadic adenomas (515). This may indicate that dysplasia in UC and sporadic adenomas may follow different genetic pathways.

Crohn disease

Intraepithelial neoplasia, classified as low-grade or high-grade, is associated with a high proportion of Crohn carcinomas, either adjacent to the invasive lesion or at a distance from it (1757). Similar to UC, polyloid dysplastic lesions are diagnosed as DALM in Crohn’s disease. Mucinous adenocarcinomas are seen in Crohn disease more frequently than in sporadic colorectal carcinomas (656). There is an increased frequency of adenocarcinomas within perianal fistulas, and of squamous cell carcinomas of the anal mucosa (992). Similar to UC, TP53 and c-KRAS mutations are observed earlier in Crohn-associated intraepithelial neoplasia than in the adenoma-carcinoma sequence of sporadic colorectal cancer (1562).

Genetic susceptibility

The spectrum of genetic susceptibility is broad, ranging from well-defined autosomal dominantly inherited syndromes with known germline genetic mutations to ill-defined familial aggregation (1531, 1928, 642). The diseases are traditionally divided into polyposis syndromes characterized by large numbers of polyps, e.g. familial adenomatosis coli (FAP), and non-polyposis syndromes with a small number of or absence of polyps, e.g. hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC). They are described in the following chapters. A non-truncating polymorphism of the APC gene that induces an unstable polyadenin repeat sequence, occurs in approximately 5% of Ashkenazi Jews.
and carries a modestly elevated risk of colorectal cancer. Only small numbers of adenomas occur in patients with this form of germline APC alteration (1004).

**Li-Fraumeni syndrome**

MIM No: Li-Fraumeni syndrome 151623; TP53 mutations 191170

Li-Fraumeni syndrome is an autosomal dominant disorder characterized by multiple primary neoplasms in children and young adults, with a predominance of soft tissue sarcomas, osteosarcomas and breast cancer, and an increased incidence of brain tumours, leukaemia and adrenocortical carcinomas (1403). Criteria for proband identification are: (1) occurrence of sarcoma before age 45, (2) at least one first-degree relative with any tumour before age 45, and (3) at least one first- or second-degree relative with cancer before age 45 or with sarcoma at any age (717, 141, 1066).

In about 70% of Li-Fraumeni kindreds, affected family members carry a germline mutation in TP53 (1151). From 1990 to 1999, a total of 144 families with a TP53 germline mutation were identified. A database of these mutations is available at http://www.iarc.fr/p53/Germ.htm (699). As with somatic mutations, germline mutations cluster in conserved regions of exons 4 to 9, with major hotspots at codons 175, 248 and 273. It has been suggested that cancer phenotype correlates with the position of the mutation within the coding sequence, with lower age of clinical manifestation in probands with mutations falling in the DNA-binding domain of the p53 protein (142). The most frequent type of germline mutation is transition (GC to AT) at CpG dinucleotides 556. The molecular basis of tumour predispositions in families within TP53 germline mutations is not known. Recent studies have excluded tumour suppressor genes such as PTEN and CDKN2 (214).

**Gastrointestinal manifestations**

Neoplasms of the digestive tract represent 7% of the tumours observed in Li-Fraumeni families. Most of these tumours are colorectal carcinoma, with a minority of stomach carcinomas. The male:female ratio is 1.5 and the mean age at clinical manifestation is 45, which correspond to a relatively long latency period as compared to other types of cancers occurring in Li-Fraumeni families (1403). Preferential familial occurrence of stomach cancer

**Fig. 6.35** Proliferating cells demonstrated by immunohistochemistry for MIB1. **A** Hyperplastic polyp with proliferative cells restricted to the basal parts of the crypts. **B** Tubular adenoma with proliferating adenomatous epithelium also at the luminal surface.

**Fig. 6.36** Hyperplastic polyps. Typical sessile appearance.

**Fig. 6.37** Hyperplastic polyp with deep proliferative, non-serrated zone protruding into submucosa.

**Fig. 6.38** Hyperplastic polyp. **A** Pedunculated. **B** Short deep proliferative zone and superficial serrated mature zone.
(familial clustering) has been observed only in Japan, a country at high incidence for that type of tumour. Cancers of the liver and of the upper gastrointestinal tract are exceedingly rare (less than 0.5% of all Li-Fraumeni neoplasms). In these neoplasms, sporadic cases often carry somatic TP53 mutations. The low frequency of these tumours in families with germline TP53 mutations suggests that the pre-existence of a TP53 mutation is not sufficient to increase the likelihood of cancer development.

**BRCA 1 and BRCA 2**

In a retrospective analysis of 33 large, high-risk breast and breast/ovarian cancer families linked to the BRCA1 locus, a significantly elevated risk of colon cancer was found, with an estimated relative risk of 4.11 (95% CI 2.36 - 7.15) [518]. This corresponds to a risk of colon cancer by age 70 of about 6%. In this study, there did not seem to be any increased relative risk at younger ages, although power to detect either sex or age effects was somewhat low in this set of data. In a similar study of BRCA2 carriers [69], no increased risk of colorectal cancer was observed. However, there was a significantly elevated risk for both stomach and gallbladder tumours among known or likely mutation carriers with estimated relative risks associated with BRCA2 of 2.6 (95% CI 1.46 - 4.61) and 5.0 (1.50 - 16.5), respectively.

**Molecular genetics**

The development of most colorectal carcinomas is believed to begin in a colorectal epithelial cell with a mutational inactivation of the APC (adenomatous polyposis coli) suppressor gene [922, 636, 186]. This inactivation has multiple consequences, including interference with E-cadherin homeostasis and dysregulation of transcription of genes. Clonal accumulation of additional genetic alterations then occurs, including activation of proto-oncogenes such as c-myc [680] and ras, and inactivation of additional suppressor genes. The genes commonly inactivated during progression include genes on chromosome 18 [1583, 614] and the TP53 gene on the short arm of chromosome 17 [1056, 415]. The mutated TP53 gene product, in turn, fails to regulate normally a variety of genes regulated by wild-type p53, including p21WAF1/CIP1 cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor which complexes with proliferating cell nuclear antigen [349], and genes leading to apoptosis, including BAX [278]. For many suppressor genes, inactivation of one allele is often caused by loss of all or part of the chromosome where the gene resides. Various other chromosomal loci have high frequencies of loss in colorectal cancer due to chromosomal instability [1044], but the target genes are not yet known.

**Microsatellite instability (MSI)**

Some colorectal cancers are distinguished by extensive nucleotide insertions or deletions in numerous, intrinsically unstable repeated sequences in tumour DNA, termed microsatellite instability (MSI), also termed ubiquitous somatic mutations, DNA replication errors (RER), or nucleotide instability (1540, 860).

MSI is defined as a change of any length due to either insertion or deletion of repeating units, in a microsatellite within a...
tumour when compared to normal tissue. It has been recommended that a panel of five microsatellites should be used as a reference standard (BAT25, BAT26, DSS346, D2S123, D17S250) for carcinomas of the large intestine (164). If two or more of these markers show MSI, the lesion is classified as high-frequency microsatellite instability (MSI-H); if only one marker shows MSI, it is classified as low-frequency microsatellite instability (MSI-L); if no markers show MSI it is classified as microsatellite stable (MSS). If more than five markers are used, the criteria should be modified to reflect the percentage of markers demonstrating MSI. Thus, MSI-H lesions would exhibit MSI in more than 30-40% of markers tested. MSI-H carcinomas are characteristic of hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer syndrome (HNPCC) due to germline mutation of one of a group of DNA mismatch repair genes followed by somatic inactivation of the other allele. Sporadic MSI-H tumours comprise about 15% of colorectal carcinomas. They usually follow transcriptional silencing of both alleles of the hMLH1 mismatch repair gene due to aberrant methylation of cytosine residues in the cytosine and guanine-rich promoter region (886, 696). The alterations that accumulate during progression of both hereditary and sporadic neoplasms characterized by MSI-H include mutations in microsatellites within the coding region of some genes, such as the type II receptor for TGF-beta1 and BAX (548). In contrast to microsatellite-stable cancers, MSI-H cancers display nucleotide rather than chromosomal instability; allelic deletions are rare (1044). Recent studies indicate a functional link between defective DNA mismatch repair and the Wnt-signalling pathway. Approximately 25% of sporadic colorectal carcinomas with defective mismatch repair (MSI-H) were shown to contain frameshift mutations in the AXIN2 gene, which leads to a stabilization of β-catenin and activation of β-catenin/T-cell factor (TCF). This was associated with an accumulation in tumour cell nuclei which was absent in colorectal cancer without mismatch repair deficiency and in the absence of APC mutations. AXIN2 mutant protein appears to be more stable than the wild-type gene product, suggesting a dominant-negative effect (1079A).

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

**Morphology.** Macroscopic and microscopic features reportedly related to prognosis are summarized in Table 6.01 (2348). Poor prognosis has been associated with both large and small tumour size, with sessile and ulcerated configuration as contrasted with polyoid cancer, with extensive involvement of the bowel circumference, with the presence of complete bowel obstruction, with perforation, and with serosal deposits.
Histopathological features related to poor prognosis include deep infiltration of the layers of the wall, extensive involvement of a particular layer, an infiltrative pattern of the invasive edge of the tumour as contrasted to an expansile pattern, and poor differentiation, including signet-ring cell and mucinous adenocarcinoma, adenosquamous carcinoma, small cell carcinoma and anaplastic carcinoma (1672, 1946, 220, 916, 266). Mucinous adenocarcinomas of the rectum often present at a later stage and have the poorest overall prognosis (1928), but the MSI status influences the aggressiveness of this histopathological subtype (1221). Other studies have shown no significant difference in prognosis between mucinous and non-mucinous varieties of adenocarcinoma (1543).

**Lymph node metastasis.** Metastasis to numerous nodes, those close to the mesenteric margin, at great distance from the primary tumour, or in retrograde lymph nodes, have been associated with poor prognosis while the prognostic value of identification of micrometastasis in lymph nodes by immunohistochemical or molecular techniques is still controversial (1564, 1387, 221).

**Angiogenesis.** Neovascularization of tumour stroma is crucial in supporting tumour growth, and high levels of microvessel density have been interpreted as an adverse prognostic feature (2010).

**Inflammatory response.** The presence of an intense inflammatory infiltrate with polymorphonuclear leukocytes (particularly eosinophils), lymphocytes, plasma cells, mast cells and histiocytes, as well as prominent desmoplasia have been associated with improved prognosis (1352). In the regional lymph nodes, hyperplasia of the paracortical T-lymphocyte areas and the B-cell germinal centers have also been reported as favourable, as has sinus histiocytosis.

**Other features** of colorectal carcinomas that have been shown to be of prognostic value in some studies include angiolymphatic invasion, perineural space involvement, extramural venous involvement, peritumoral lymphocytic response, and tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes. Some of these features are evaluated in a classification proposed by Jass (389). A microacinar pattern of growth, defined as discrete, small, relatively regular tubules, is associated with reduced survival (559, 2100).

**Extent of resection.** A short longitudinal surgical resection margin (2-5 cm), reflecting the surgical technique employed, has been associated with poor outcome. In rectal cancer, clearance from the circumferential margin is important. The circumferential margin represents the adventitial soft tissue margin closest to the deepest penetration of the tumour. For all segments of the large intestine that are incompletely enveloped by peritoneum or not enveloped, the circumferential margin is created by blunt or sharp dissection at operation. The mesocolic margin in resection specimens of colon cancer is usually well distant from the primary tumour, but the status of the circumferential margin is particularly important in rectal carcinoma due to the anatomic proximity of pelvic structures (15).

**Genetic predictive markers.** Some of the genetic alterations identified in colorectal cancers are markers for prognosis (313, 1206). Allelic loss of chromosome 18q was found to be an adverse prognostic indicator. Other studies reported that loss of chromosomes 17p, 1p, 5q, 8p or 18q, decreased DCC gene expression, p53
overexpression, reduced p27<sup>kip1</sup> expression, high expression of cyclin A, ras gene mutation, expression of enzymes involved in matrix degradation and their inhibitors (cathepsin-L, urokinase, tissue-type plasminogen activator, tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases), expression of genes involved in apoptosis (bcl2, bax, survivin), expression of cell surface molecules (CD44 and its variants, ICAM1, galectin 3) and metabolic enzymes (GLUT1 glucose transporter, manganese-superoxide dismutase, thymidylate synthetase, ornithine decarboxylase, cyclooxygenase 2) have prognostic value. In addition, colorectal cancers manifesting MSI-H have been reported to have a lower frequency of metastasis and improved prognosis when compared to microsatellite-stable tumours.

**Response to therapy.** No pathological features have been reported as predictive of therapeutic response, but some molecular alterations have potential as predictive markers. Studies in cell lines of colonic and other carcinomas have shown that in vitro, the status of TP53 is crucial (1382). The TP53 pathway is closely linked to regulation of the cell cycle and of apoptosis. The presence of wild-type p53 in cell lines is associated with in vitro growth inhibition in response to many chemotherapeutic agents, and with radiation-induced upregulation of p21<sup>WAF1/CIP1</sup> and cell cycle arrest. Tumours manifesting MSI-H may respond to 5-FU-based chemotherapy (1109), while p53 protein accumulation was associated with lack of response to postoperative adjuvant chemotherapy with 5-FU and levamisole (24). Chromosome 18q loss was associated with an unfavourable survival rate in this setting.

Major problems exist in the interpretation of various pathological features as prognostic and predictive markers. Many of these features are interrelated but have been treated for statistical purposes as independent variables in studies. At present, anatomic staging is the mainstay of clinical decision-making.

**Table 6.01**

Prognostic factors in colorectal carcinoma.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Features of the primary tumour</th>
<th>Evidence of vessel invasion</th>
<th>Evidence of host response</th>
<th>Consequences of surgical technique</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anatomic extent of disease (TNM)</td>
<td>Extramural venous involvement</td>
<td>Angiogenesis</td>
<td>Distance between resection margin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extent of circumferential involvement</td>
<td>Lymphatic vessel or perineural space involvement tumour</td>
<td>Local inflammatory and desmoplastic response to infiltrating</td>
<td>and tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowel obstruction</td>
<td>Reactive changes in regional lymph nodes</td>
<td>Presence of residual tumour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perforation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pattern of invasion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade of differentiation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Familial adenomatous polyposis

Definition
Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) is an autosomal dominant disorder characterized by numerous adenomatous colorectal polyps that have an intrinsic tendency to progress to adenocarcinoma. It is caused by a germline mutation in the Adenomatous Polyposis Coli (APC) gene which is located on the long arm of chromosome 5 (5q21-22). Gardner syndrome is a variant of FAP that includes epidermoid cysts, osteomas, dental anomalies and desmoid tumours, in addition to colorectal adenomas. Turcot syndrome is a variant that is associated with a brain tumour (medulloblastoma). An attenuated FAP form has been distinguished from classic FAP, where the number of adenomas is less than 100 in the colon.

MIM No.: FAP, including Gardner syndrome, 175100; Turcot syndrome, 276300

Synonyms
Adenomatous polyposis coli, familial polyposis coli, Bussey-Gardner polyposis, Gardner syndrome, familial multiple polyposis, familial adenomatosis, familial polyposis of the colon and rectum, familial adenomatous polyposis coli, etc.

Incidence
Estimates of the incidence of FAP vary between 1 per 7000 and 1 per 30,000 newborns. The mean annual incidence rate has been constantly from 1 to 2 per 1,000,000 in Denmark and Finland while the prevalence has increased to more than 25 per 1,000,000 since the creation of preventive polyposis registries [205; 836]. In general, FAP underlies less than 1% of all new colorectal cancer cases. Between 30 and 50% of new FAP patients are solitary cases, probably representing new mutations of the APC gene. The following diagnostic criteria have been established: (1) 100 or more colorectal adenomas or (2) germline mutation of the APC gene or (3) family history of FAP and at least one of the following: epidermoid cysts; osteomas; desmoid tumour.

Colonoscopy
The colorectal polyps are adenomas, most often tubular, and resemble their sporadic counterparts.

Localization
Colorectal adenomas in FAP occur throughout the colon but follow the general distribution of sporadic adenomas, with greatest density in the rectum and sigmoid colon. The distribution of cancers follows that of the adenomas.

Clinical features
Age at clinical manifestation
Colorectal adenomas become detectable at endoscopic examination (sigmoidoscopy) between the age of 10 and 20 years, increasing in number and size with age. The most important clinical feature of FAP is the almost invariable progression of one or more colorectal adenomas to cancer. The mean age of development of colorectal cancer is about 40 years, but the cancer risk is 1 to 6% already at...
the age of 20 to 25 years (835), and colorectal cancer has been reported even in children with FAP. Extracolonic manifestations such as epidermoid cysts, mandibular osteomas, desmoid tumours or congenital hypertrophy of the retinal pigment epithelium (CHRPE) may present in children and can serve as markers of FAP.

**Symptoms and signs**

In the early phase of FAP adenomas do not cause any symptoms. Specific symptoms due to colorectal adenomas are rectal bleeding and diarrhoea often accompanied by mucous discharge and abdominal pain. Symptoms appear gradually and may be easily overlooked; the mean age of appearance of symptoms was 33 years and the mean age of diagnosis 36 years in about 200 FAP patients who had no prophylactic screening arranged (216). Two thirds of patients diagnosed to have FAP on the basis of symptoms (propositi) already have colorectal cancer whereas in asymptomatic members of known FAP families cancer is very rare at the time of the detection of FAP provided that prophylactic endoscopic screening was arranged in good time, i.e. before the age of 20 years (836).

**Imaging and FAP screening**

The appropriate screening method for diagnosing FAP is flexible sigmoidoscopy, which should be arranged for all children of an affected FAP parent from the age of 10 to 15 years and continued at 1 to 2 year intervals up to the age of 40 years if adenomas are not detected. Endoscopies can be replaced by genetic testing for the specific APC mutation in those families where the mutation has been identified. A positive test is diagnostic for FAP and signifies the need for prophylactic colectomy or proctocolectomy when the colorectal adenomas become detectable, at the age of 20 to 25 years at the latest. If the operation is not performed immediately after the diagnosis of FAP, colonoscopy should be undertaken to evaluate the entire colon because large adenomas or cancer may reside beyond the reach of the flexible sigmoidoscope. Endoscopic evaluation of the upper gastrointestinal tract is recommended at the time of prophylactic colectomy or proctocolectomy, and should be repeated at 2 to 5 year intervals depending on the finding of adenomas in duodenal and gastric biopsies (888). Double contrast barium enema and barium meal may be used to demonstrate polyps but are inferior to endoscopy because biopsies are required to provide histological evidence for a definite diagnosis of FAP.

**Macroscopy**

Most polyps in FAP are sessile and spherical or lobulated. Scattered larger pedunculated polyps are much less numerous (205; 835; 836; 688). The colorectal polyps appear first in adolescence and, by the late teens, usually number thousands, typically carpeting the lining of the whole large bowel. Their number varies between families, in some being little more than 100, even in adults (1988), whereas, in the majority of families, there are profuse polyps, numbering thousands. Typically, the polyps are scattered evenly along the whole large bowel but, in over one third of cases, their density is greatest in the proximal colon. Adult patients with rectal sparing have been described, even when adenocarcinoma was present in the right colon (1503). In any one patient the polyps range from barely visible mucosal nodules to pedunculated polyps of up to 1 cm or more. In some patients and families the adenomas mostly measure only a few millimetres while in others they are larger, with polyps up to several centimetres. In contrast, in attenuated FAP, the polyps are so few that they may not be noticed at rigid sigmoidoscopy. Polyps rarely appear until late childhood (216) and are rarely larger than 1 cm until adulthood. Adenocarcinomas arise in only a small percentage of the adenomas.

**Histopathology**

Adenomas in FAP begin as single dysplastic crypts (‘unicryptal’ adenomas). In practice, to find more than one of these in a colon is unique to FAP. By excessive and asymmetrical crypt fission (1086; 433; 2062), probably due to loss of APC-controlled growth and tissue organization, they develop into oligocryptal adenomas, which may not be visible as polyps before further growth into grossly visible adenomatous polyps. Most adenomas in FAP display a tubular architecture; infrequently they are tubulovillous or villous. Non-polypoid, flat adenomas account for approximately 5% of adenomas in the colon of affected family members (1181). AF adenomas and carcinomas in FAP are histologically identical to sporadic lesions.
Proliferation
The histologically normal intestinal mucosa in FAP shows no increase in the rate of epithelial cell proliferation (2062). Mitotic activity is not increased (1315) except in the adenomatous epithelium, in which cell proliferation is identical with that in sporadic adenomas.

Small intestinal polyps
Small bowel polyps, particularly duodenal polyps, are also adenomas. They develop preferentially in the periampullary region of the duodenum, probably due to a co-carcinogenic effect of bile (1679, 1805). They become evident ten years later than the colorectal polyps. Using side-viewing endoscopy, adenomas have been found in 92% of patients with FAP at routine screening (1809). They increase in size and number with time and carry a lifetime risk of duodenal or periampullary cancer of about 4% (688). Ampullary and periampullary adenocarcinoma is one of the principal causes of death in patients who have undergone prophylactic proctocolectomy (1809).

Extra-intestinal manifestations
Several other organs are involved in FAP but extra-intestinal manifestations rarely determine the clinical course of the disease.

Stomach
Gastric adenomas do occur with increased frequency (425) but the most common abnormality is the fundic gland polyp. This is a non-neoplastic mucus retention type of polyp, grossly visible as a smooth dome-shaped nodule in the gastric body and fundus, usually multiple. Histologically, the lesion is characteristically undramatic, consisting of gastric body mucosa that is often normal apart from cystic dilatation of glands. There is evidence of increased cell proliferation and dysplasia developing in these polyps (2144) but progression to adenocarcinoma is only a rare occurrence (2214).

Liver and biliary tract
There is an increased incidence of hepatoblastoma in the male infants of families with FAP (563; 578). Dysplasia has been demonstrated in the bile duct and gallbladder epithelium in patients with FAP (1377) and these patients are at risk of developing adenocarcinoma of the biliary tree (1806).

Extra-gastrointestinal manifestations
Soft tissues
Tissues derived from all three germ layers are affected in FAP. As well as the endodermal lesions so far described, mesodermal lesions in the form of a fibromatosus type of polyp, usually referred to as desmoid tumour, develop in a substantial minority of patients (315). Desmoid tumours arise in either the retroperitoneal tissues or in the abdominal wall, often after trauma or previous surgery involving that site.

A desmoid is a mass of firm pale tissue, characteristically growing by expansion, usually rounded in shape. Desmoids begin as small scar-like foci of fibrosis in the retroperitoneal fat and, when large, typically extend around and between other structures such as the small or large bowel, ureters and major blood vessels. Histologically, these lesions are composed of sheets of elongated myofibroblasts, arranged in fascicles and whorls. The lesions have a dense, tough consistency and there is a variable amount of collagen. They are well vascularized and contain numerous small blood vessels that bleed profusely when incised.

Bones
Bone lesions include exostoses and endostoses. Endostoses of the mandible are found in the majority of patients (203). They are almost always small and symptomless. Exostoses may be solitary or multiple and tend to arise in the long bones.

Teeth
Dental abnormalities have been described in 11 to 80% of individuals with FAP (241). The abnormalities may be impaction, supernumerary or absent teeth, fused roots of first and second molars or unusually long and tapered roots of posterior teeth.

Eye
In 75-80% of patients, ophthalmoscopy reveals multiple patches of congenital
hypertrophy of retinal pigment epithelium (CHRPE) (280). Ultrastructurally, they are freckle-like plaques of enlarged melanin-containing retinal epithelial cells (1466). Their value for diagnosis is limited by inconsistency and variation between families.

Skin
Epidermal cysts, usually of the face and often multiple, were first described in FAP by Gardner (565).

Endocrine system
There is a definite but relatively slight increase in the incidence of endocrine tumours in FAP, including neoplasia of pituitary, pancreatic islets and adrenal cortex (1160), as well as multiple endocrine neoplasia syndrome, type 2b (1500) but these are of insufficient frequency or gravity to form part of a routine screening protocol. The best documented endocrine association is papillary carcinoma of thyroid (268), largely restricted to women (202).

Nervous system
The concurrent presence of a brain tumour and multiple colorectal polyps constitutes Turcot syndrome. Some individuals affected in this way are victims of FAP, with a germline defect of APC. These are infants or young children who present with medulloblastoma and colorectal polyps (658). Other individuals present later in life with a glioma, usually an astrocytoma or glioblastoma multiforme and are usually associated with hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer (HNPCC) rather than FAP (262).

Genetics
FAP is an autosomal dominant disease with almost complete penetrance by 40 years of age. APC germline mutations are the only known cause of FAP.

Gene structure and expression
The APC gene was localized to chromosome 5q21-22 by Bodmer et al. (156) and Leppert et al. (1047). It was isolated by the group of White (868; 629) and by the laboratories of Nakamura and Vogelstein (920; 1364). It spans over a region of 120 Kb and is composed of at least 21 exons, 7 of which are alternatively expressed (1658). 16 APC transcripts that differ in their 5'-most regions and arise by the alternative inclusion of 6 of these exons have been identified. The APC gene is ubiquitously expressed in normal tissues, with highest levels in the central nervous system. Tissue-specific differences were observed in the expression of APC transcripts without exon 1, a coding region for a heptad repeat that supports homodimerization of the APC protein.

Gene product and function
The APC protein is a 2,843-amino acid polypeptide that is a negative regulator in the Wnt signaling pathway. The protein contains several functional domains that act as binding and degradation sites for β-catenin and control the β-catenin intracellular concentration. A protein-binding domain near the carboxy-terminal of APC mediates phosphorylation by glycosynthase kinase 3β (GSK3b) and stabilizes the formation of a complex between the two proteins (1627). In an unstimulated cell, GSK3b promotes phosphorylation of the protein conductin/axin which is added to the APC GSK3b complex (2107; 124). Phosphorylated axin recruits β-catenin, which is in turn phosphorylated and targeted for degradation through an APC-dependent ubiquitin-proteasome pathway (11). Normal Wnt signalling inhibits GSK3b activity and dephosphorylates axin. As a result, β-catenin is released from the complex (2107). In the cytoplasm, β-catenin is involved in cytoskeletal organization with binding to microtubules. It also interacts with E-cadherin, a membrane protein involved in cell adhesion. Free β-catenin shuttles to the nucleus where it binds to the transcription factors of the TCF/LEF family. The resulting complexes activate c-MYC (680) and cyclin D1 transcription (1753; 1922). Lack of functional APC causes unregulated intracellular accumulation of β-catenin and thereby constitutive expression of c-MYC and of the cyclin D1 gene (CDD1).
**Gene mutations**

The germline mutation rate leading to a new deleterious APC allele is estimated to be 5 to 9 per million gametes. As a result, most families exhibit unique mutations, and individuals with no previous family history of FAP are not uncommon. They may represent up to one fourth of propositi [143]. A deleterious APC mutation may be found in about 95% of FAP patients. The vast majority of the mutant alleles lead to the synthesis of a truncated protein. About 10% of the mutations are large interstitial deletions that may involve the entire gene. Rare missense mutations, most with uncertain functional consequences, have been described. Mutations at codons 1061 and 1309 account for 20% of all identified germline mutations in the APC gene. In up to 5% of families, the genetic defect causing FAP is not yet known [1003].

**Genetics of FAP associated tumours**

Consistent with the 2-hit model of carcinogenesis by tumour suppressor genes, the wild type APC allele is lost or mutated in the vast majority of FAP associated tumours, including colorectal adenomatous polyps and carcinoma, desmoid tumours [1245], medulloblastoma [202], gastroduodenal tumours [1949], thyroid carcinoma [822] and hepatoblastoma [980]. Each colorectal adenomatous polyp is a premalignant lesion that may progress to carcinoma in an unpredictable fashion. In addition to APC mutations, colon carcinomas in FAP patients contain somatic mutations that are similar to those found in the most frequent type of sporadic colon cancers not associated with replication errors. TP53 mutation and 17p allele loss have been observed in 40% of invasive carcinomas [910]. However, in some families TP53 may not be involved [30]. Loss of alleles on chromosome 18 and 22 were observed in 46% and 33% respectively. The KRAS mutation frequency increases from 11% inmoderately to 36% in severely dysplastic adenomas [30]. KRAS mutations may potentiate cyclin D1 transcription [680]. Interestingly, the type of APC germline mutation may influence the mode of inactivation of the second APC allele [30].

**Animal model**

Heterozygous mutant mice for a defective Apc allele develop multiple intestinal neoplasia [1245]. The homozygous mutant embryos die prior to gastrulation [1811]. Expression of the secretory phospholipase Pla2g2a is associated with a decreased number and size of adenoma in heterozygous mutant Apc mice [1293]. Implication of PLA2G2A polymorphism in FAP expressivity has not been demonstrated in humans.

**Genotype / phenotype relationships**

There are well documented relationships between the location of the mutation on the APC gene and the FAP phenotype. APC mutations in the first or last third of the gene are associated with attenuated colorectal polyposis (AAPC) characterized by the occurrence of less than 100 polyps and a late onset [1284]. Fundic gland polyposis is prevalent in the attenuated form of FAP but desmoids may be present only if the AAPC causing mutation lies in the 3’ end of the APC gene. Indeed, mutations after codon 1444 are associated with an increased susceptibility to desmoid tumours [340]. CHRPE

---

**Fig. 6.60** Mesenteric fibromatosis (desmoid tumour) in a patient with FAP. A The lesion entraps loops of small intestine. B Collagen bands and small vessels.

**Fig. 6.61** Structure of the APC gene and location of somatic and germline mutations. From: P. Polakis, Biochim Biophys Acta 1332: F127-F147 (1997)
lesions are a consistent feature, except if the APC mutation is located before exon 9 and after codon 1387 (1810; 340). Mutations in the central region of the gene, including the mutational hotspot at codon 1309, correlate with a severe phenotype characterized by development of thousands of polyps at a young age (258). In contrast to mutant APC proteins truncated at codon 386 or 1465, which interfered only weakly with wild-type APC activity in an in vitro system, a mutant APC protein truncated at codon 1309 was shown to be a strong inhibitor and may thus have dominant negative properties (1422). These observations point to a possible mechanism that could contribute to the genotype/phenotype relationships observed in FAP. There may also be a correlation between slow acetylation genotypes and extracolonic manifestations of the disease (1308).

Application of genetic testing in the clinical setting

In the absence of systematic, family-based screening programs, the presenting features are usually those of malignancy, such as weight loss and inanition, bowel obstruction, or bloody diarrhoea. In such cases, patient evaluation will frequently find a colorectal carcinoma. Occasionally, the extracolonic features of the condition may lead to presentation and diagnosis. Cases of new mutation still present in these ways, but in areas with well organized registers, gene carriers among relatives of affected patients are identified prior to symptoms either by DNA-based genetic tests or by bowel examination.

The most commonly used commercially available genetic testing for FAP involves identification of the mutant APC allele by in vitro detection of truncated APC protein (414). This approach is referred to as in vitro protein synthesis (IVPS) testing. IVPS testing is able to detect mutation carriers in about 80% of families. Once evidence of a disease-causing mutation is found in an index case by this method, testing is near 100% predictive in other family members. It is imperative that genetic counselling be undertaken throughout the process of genetic testing. Without this, genetic testing and the use of the results are poorly applied in the clinical setting (1703).

Screening in gene carriers is similar to that in families where genetic testing is not applied or does not work and usually involves sigmoidoscopy every 1 to 2 years, beginning between age 10 and 12 years. If a genetic diagnosis is made after that age, full colonoscopy should probably be done in view of the risk of lesions higher in the colon. Preventive total colectomy is proposed to gene carriers when polyposis becomes conspicuous. Genotype/phenotype correlations may be used to adapt clinical management to individual FAP patients.

A family member who has a negative DNA based genetic test can forgo screening if (1) the mutation found in other affected family members is obviously deleterious and (2) if the individual with a negative test has been unambiguously shown to be a non-gene carrier by DNA testing. Such individuals need no further screening as their risk to develop colon cancer is similar to that of the general population.
Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer

Definition
Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC, Lynch syndrome) is an autosomal dominant disorder, characterized by the development of colorectal carcinoma, endometrial carcinoma, and cancer of the small intestine, ureter, or renal pelvis.

MIM No. 120435-6

Diagnostic criteria
In 1990, the International Collaborative Group on HNPCC (ICG-HNPCC) proposed a set of selection criteria to provide a basis for uniformity in collaborative studies (2003). These criteria, referred to as Amsterdam Criteria I (ACI), have been widely used since then. Recently, the criteria have been revised to include the extracolonic cancers that are part of the syndrome. The new set of diagnostic criteria (ACII), is shown in Table 6.02 (2004). They identify families that are very likely to represent HNPCC. On the other hand, they are not intended to serve as a guide to exclude suspected families from genetic counselling and mutation analysis.

Clinical features
Predisposed individuals from HNPCC families have a high lifetime risk of developing colorectal carcinoma (70-85%), endometrial carcinoma (50%), as well as certain other cancers (below 15%) (5, 2071, 2005). Colorectal lesions are often diagnosed at an early age (mean, 45 years), and are located in the proximal part of the colon in about two-thirds of the patients. Synchronous or metachronous colorectal carcinoma is present in 35% of patients. In over 90% of the cases, it shows microsatellite instability (MSI) (Table 6.04) (839, 1166, 1129). The adenomas that occur in HNPCC tend to develop at an early age, to have villous components and to be more dysplastic than adenomas detected in the general population. Although multiple adenomas may be observed in HNPCC, florid polyposis is not a feature. Extracolonic lesions include cancer of the endometrium, renal pelvis/ureter, stomach, small bowel, ovary, brain, hepatobiliary tract, and also sebaceous tumours. Among these tumours, carcinoma of the endometrium, ureter, renal pelvis, and small bowel have the highest relative risk, and are therefore the most specific for HNPCC (Table 6.03). The occurrence of sebaceous gland tumours together with HNPCC type internal malignancy is referred to as the Muir-Torre syndrome (322). The association of primary brain tumours (usually glioblastomas) with multiple colorectal adenomas is referred to as the Turcot syndrome (1979). The latter has a shared genetic basis with HNPCC on the one hand and FAP on the other hand (658).

Pathology
The pathology of HNPCC tumours is similar to that of sporadic colorectal carcinoma showing high levels of instability at short tandem repeat sequences, microsatellites (MSI-H). Many studies make no distinction between familial and non-familial MSI-H carcinomas. The following descriptions apply to all MSI-H carcinomas, but highlight subtle differences between HNPCC cancers and their sporadic counterparts where these are known.

Fig. 6.62 Mucinous adenocarcinoma from a patient with HNPCC.

Fig. 6.63 Abundant lymphocytes infiltrate the neoplastic epithelium in these poorly differentiated (A) and moderately differentiated (B) adenocarcinomas from patients with HNPCC.
Macroscopy

HNPPC cancers show a predilection for the proximal colon including caecum, ascending colon, hepatic flexure and transverse colon (1130). At least 60% occur in the proximal colon. The gross appearances have not been studied in detail. However, since HNPPC and MSI-H colorectal carcinomas show a consistent trend towards good circum-scription (842, 1723), they are more likely to present as polyoid growths, plaques, ulcers or bulky masses and less likely to present as diffuse growths or tight strictures.

Adenomas are not numerous but are likely to be more frequent in HNPPC subjects than age-matched controls (846). Colonoscopic studies indicate that the distribution of adenomas in HNPPC may not mirror the proximal colonic predilec tion of carcinoma (846). This could be due to the occurrence of sporadic distal adenomas in older HNPPC subjects or because proximal adenomas are more likely to progress to cancer.

Histopathology

No individual microscopic feature is specific to HNPPC, but particular groups of features are diagnostically useful (1723). Identical features are found in the 10 to 15% of sporadic colorectal cancers that show high levels of DNA microsatellite instability (MSI-H) (842). However, sporadic MSI-H cancers present in older subjects lacking a family history of bowel cancer. HNPPC and sporadic MSI-H colorectal cancers fall into three groups based on site and microscopic criteria.

**Proximally located mucinous adenocarcinomas.** These are usually well circum-scribed and well or moderately differentiated. Lymphocytic infiltration is not prominent but tumour infiltrating (intra-epithelial) lymphocytes (TIL) may be evident in non-mucinous areas. Tubulo-villosus or villous adenomatous remnants adjacent to the cancer may be present. Mucin production may be more common in subjects with an MSH2 germline mutation (1723).

**Proximally located, poorly differentiated adenocarcinomas.** Poor differentiation indicates a failure of gland formation, the malignant epithelium being arranged in small clusters, irregular trabeculae or large aggregates. Tumours are well circumscribed and lack an abundant desmoplastic stroma. Some are peppered with TIL. A Crohn-like lymphocytic reaction may be present. This subtype has been described as medullary or ‘undifferentiated’, though the majority contains subclones in which glandular differentiation is evident. This subtype may be more common in subjects with an MSH2 mutation (1723). In general, colorectal cancers showing TIL and/or a Crohn-like lymphocytic reaction appear to be more common in subjects with an MLH1 germline mutation (1723).

**Adenomas in HNPPC.** These are more likely to show features indicative of increased cancer risk including villosity and high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia (846). Immunohistochemical staining to demonstrate loss of expression of MLH1 or MSH2 may assist in pinpointing the underlying germline mutation. However, antigenicity may be retained in the case of MLH1, even if genetic changes have resulted in a non-functioning protein (1924A: 1924B). Virtually all sporadic MSI-H carcinomas lose MLH1 through methylation.

Immunohistochemical staining of MSI-H colorectal cancers confirms that the majority of TIL are CD3 positive T-cells and most, in turn, are cytotoxic (CD8 positive) (423). In H&E sections, lymphocytes are difficult to discern when the percentage of CD3 positive lymphocytes (out of all epithelial nuclei) is less than about 5%. CD3 counts in excess of 5% occur in around 70% of MSI-H cancers. CD3 counts in excess of 10% are highly specific for MSI-H cancers. The nodular arrangements of lymphocytes occurring peri-tumourally or within the serosa (Crohn-like reaction) are B-lymphocytes surrounded by T-lymphocytes.

Genetics

**Acquired genetic changes in HNPPC cancers**

The demonstration of DNA microsatellite instability serves as an important bio-marker for HNPPC cancers. Bandshifts in BAT26 are highly sensitive for both familial and sporadic MSI-H cancers (3), though some cases may be missed (548).

---

Table 6.02

Revised diagnostic criteria for HNPPC (Amsterdam criteria II)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One patient should be a first degree relative of the other two</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least two successive generations should be affected.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least one tumour should be diagnosed before age 50.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial adenomatous polyposis should be excluded in the CRC case(s) if any.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumours should be verified by histopathological examination.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Table 6.03

Summary of clinical, pathological and genetic features of HNPPC (Lynch syndrome)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Familial clustering of colorectal and/or endometrial cancer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excess risk of cancer of the ovary, uterine/renal pelvis, small bowel, stomach, brain, hepatobiliary tract, and skin (sebaceous tumours)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development of multiple cancers at an early age</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Features of colorectal adenoma include: (1) variable numbers from one to a few; (2) increased proportion of adenomas with a villous growth pattern (3) a high degree of dysplasia; (4) rapid progression from adenoma to carcinoma and (5) high frequency of microsatellite instability (MSI-H)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Features of colorectal cancer include: (1) predilection for proximal colon; (2) improved survival; (3) multiple colorectal cancers (4) increased proportion of mucinous tumours, poorly differentiated tumours, and tumours with marked host-lymphocytic infiltration and lymphoid aggregation at the tumour margin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer 127
A panel of five markers (BAT25, BAT26, D2S123, D5S346 and D17S250) has been recommended for screening purposes [164]. Bandshifts at two or more microsatellite loci are indicative of MSI-H. Around 60% of HNPCC adenomas are MSI-H [2]. Most MSI-H cancers are diploid or near diploid and the frequency of loss of heterozygosity (LOH) is low for the traditional loci 5q, 17p and 18q [962, 841]. The frequency of APC, KRAS and TP53 mutation is reduced [962, 841]. Conversely, mutations are encountered in TGFRII, IGF2R, BAX, E2F-4, MSH3, MSH6 and caspase 5 [548, 1165, 1699, 1793, 2156, 1558]. In general, the driving force for colorectal cancer development and progression may be DNA instability (mutator pathway) or chromosomal instability (suppressor pathway). HNPCC cancers and sporadic MSI-H cancers share the mutator pathway.

**Mode of inheritance, chromosomal location, and structure**

HNPCC is transmitted as an autosomal dominant trait. It is associated with germline mutations in five genes with verified or putative DNA mismatch repair function, namely MSH2 (MutS homologue 2), MLH1 (MutL homologue 1), PMS1 (Postmeiotic segregation 1), PMS2 (Postmeiotic segregation 2), and MSH6 (MutS homologue 6). Structural characteristics of these genes are given in Table 6.04. Homozygous MLH1 mutations confer to a neurofibromatosis 1 like phenotype [2048, 1580].

**Gene product**

HNPCC genes are ubiquitously expressed in adult human tissues, and therefore, the expression pattern does not seem to explain the selective organ involvement in this syndrome. Expression is particularly prominent in the epithelium of the digestive tract as well as in testis and ovary [505, 1030, 2120]. In the intestine, expression is confined to the replicating compartment, i.e. the bottom half of the crypts. Immunohistochemical staining against these proteins is nuclear.

**Function**

The protein products of HNPCC genes are key players in the correction of mismatches that arise during DNA replication [957]. Two different MutS-related heterodimeric complexes are responsible for mismatch recognition: MSH2-MSH3 and MSH2-MSH6. While the presence of MSH2 in the complex is mandatory, MSH3 can replace MSH6 in the correction of insertion-deletion mismatches, but not single-base mispairs. Following mismatch binding, a heterodimeric complex of MutL-related proteins, MLH1-PMS2 (and possibly another alternative complex formed by MLH1-MLH3) is recruited, and this larger complex, together with numerous other proteins, accomplishes mismatch repair. The observed functional redundancy in the DNA mismatch repair protein family may help explain why mutations in MSH2 and MLH1 are prevalent in HNPCC families, while mutations in PMS1, PMS2, and MSH6 are much less frequent, and no germline mutations in MSH3 or MLH3 have been reported, so far (see below). Mismatch repair deficiency gives rise to microsatellite instability, and as such may aid in the diagnosis of this syndrome [3].
However, microsatellite instability is not specific to HNPCC, occurring in 10 to 15% of apparently sporadic colorectal and other tumours as well [164]. Correction of biosynthetic errors in the newly synthesized DNA is not the only function of the DNA mismatch repair system. In particular, it is also able to recognize lesions caused by exogenous mutagens, and has been shown to participate in transcription-coupled repair [134, 1215].

### Gene mutations

The International Collaborative Group on HNPCC maintains a database for HNPCC-associated mutations and polymorphisms (http://www.nfdht.nl). The great majority is found in MLH1 and MSH2, with a few mutations in MSH6, PMS1 and PMS2. These mutations occur in over 400 HNPCC families from different parts of the world [485].

Most MSH2 and MLH1 mutations are truncating [1488]. However, one-third of MLH1 mutations is of missense type, which constitutes a diagnostic problem concerning their pathogenicity. Commonly used theoretical criteria in support of pathogenicity include the following: the mutation leads to a nonconservative amino acid change, the involved codon is evolutionarily conserved, the change is absent in the normal population, and it segregates with the disease phenotype. A subset of such mutations was directly assessed for pathogenicity using a yeast-based functional assay, and there was a good correlation [1745]. As a rule, the mutations are scattered throughout the genes, but exon 12 in MSH2 and exon 16 in MLH1 constitute particular hot spots [1488].

Mutations in the five DNA mismatch repair genes account for two-thirds of all classical HNPCC families meeting the Amsterdam criteria and showing MSI in tumours [1078]. Occurrence of these mutations is clearly lower (< 30%) in HNPCC kindreds not meeting the Amsterdam criteria [1379, 2103]. Moreover, clinically indistinguishable phenotype (non-polypotic colon cancer plus variable extracolonic cancers) may be associated with germline mutations in genes that are not involved in DNA mismatch repair, such as TGFβ-RII [1103] and E-Cadherin [1581]. As expected, tumours from such families do not characteristically show MSI.

### Table 6.04

Characteristics of HNPCC-associated human DNA mismatch repair genes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Chromosomal location</th>
<th>Length of cDNA (kb)</th>
<th>Number of exons</th>
<th>Genomic size (kb)</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MSH2</td>
<td>2p21</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>(509, 956, 1029, 1079, 1686, 1486)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MLH1</td>
<td>3p31-p23</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>58-100</td>
<td>(193, 660, 955, 1077, 1075, 1453)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMS1</td>
<td>2q31-q33</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>not known</td>
<td>not known</td>
<td>(1350)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMS2</td>
<td>7p22</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>(1347, 1350)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSH6</td>
<td>2p21</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>(13, 1686, 1451, 1349)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

HNPCC mutations generally have a high penetrance. There is no clear-cut correlation between the involved gene, mutation site within the gene, or mutation type vs. clinical features. MSH2 mutations may confer higher risk for extracolonic cancer as compared to MLH1 mutations [2005]. MSH6 mutations may be associated with atypical clinical features, including common occurrence of endometrial cancer [2102] and late age of onset [29]. Finally, capability of the mutant protein to block the normal homologue by a dominant negative fashion may lead to a severe phenotype, in which even normal cells may manifest mismatch repair deficiency [1475, 1348]. Conversely, inability to do so may be associated with a milder phenotype and lack of extracolonic cancers [828]. Kindreds with the Muir-Torre phenotype [971] as well as a subset of those with Turcot syndrome [658] show mutations similar to those observed in classical HNPCC.
Juvenile polyposis

Definition
Juvenile polyposis (JP) is a familial cancer syndrome with autosomal dominant trait, characterized by multiple juvenile polyps of the gastrointestinal tract, involving predominantly the colorectum, but also the stomach and the small intestine. In addition to colorectal cancer, JP patients carry an increased risk for the development of tumours in the stomach, duodenum, biliary tree and pancreas.

Synonyms
Generalized juvenile polyposis; juvenile polyposis coli; juvenile polyposis of infancy; juvenile polyposis of the stomach; familial juvenile polyposis; hamartomatous gastrointestinal polyposis.

Diagnostic criteria
Following the initial report by Stemper in 1975 [1831], the following diagnostic criteria have been established: (1) more than 5 juvenile polyps of the colorectum, or (2) juvenile polyps throughout the gastrointestinal tract, or (3) any number of juvenile polyps with a family history of JP [847]. Other syndromes that display hamartomatous gastrointestinal polyps should be ruled out clinically or by pathological examination.

Epidemiology
Incidence
JP is ten-fold less common than familial adenomatous polyposis [838], with an incidence of from 0.6 to 1 case per 100,000 in Western nations [297, 215]. JP may be the most common gastrointestinal polyposis syndrome in developing counties [1576, 2109], and approximately half of cases arise in patients with no family history [316].

Age and sex distribution
Two-thirds of patients with juvenile polyposis present within the first 2 decades of life, with a mean age at diagnosis of 18.5 years [316]. Some present in infancy, and others not until their seventh decade [749]. Though extensive epidemiological data do not exist, incomplete penetrance and approximately equal distribution between the sexes can be presumed.

Localization
Polyps occur with equal frequency throughout the colon and may range in number from one to more than a hundred. Some patients develop upper gastrointestinal tract polyps, most often in the stomach, but also in the small intestine. Generalized juvenile gastrointestinal polyposis is defined by the presence of polyps in the stomach, small intestine and colon [1643].

Clinical features
Signs and symptoms. Patients with juvenile polyposis usually present with gastrointestinal bleeding, manifesting as haematochezia. Melaena, prolapsed rectal polyps, passage of tissue per rectum, intussusception, abdominal pain, and anaemia are also common.

Imaging. Air contrast barium enema and upper gastrointestinal series may demonstrate filling defects, but are non-diagnostic for juvenile polyps.

Endoscopy. Biopsy or excision of polyps by colonoscopy can be both diagnostic and therapeutic. Small juvenile polyps may resemble hyperplastic polyps, while larger polyps generally have a well-defined stalk with a bright red, rounded head, which may be eroded. In the stomach, polyps are less often pedunculated and are more commonly diffuse.

Macroscopy
Most subjects with juvenile polyposis have between 50-200 polyps throughout the colorectum. The rare and often lethal form occurring in infancy may be associated with a diffuse gastrointestinal polyposis [1643]. In cases presenting in later childhood to adulthood, completely unaffected mucosa separates the lesions. This is unlike the dense mucosal carpeting that is characteristic of familial adenomatous polyposis. The polyps are usually pedunculated, but can be sessile in the stomach. Smaller examples have the spherical head of a typical solitary juvenile polyp. They may grow up to 5 cm in diameter, with a multilobated head. The individual lobes are relatively smooth and separated by deep, well-defined clefts. The multilobated polyp therefore appears like a cluster of smaller juvenile polyps attached to a common stalk. Such multilobated or atypical juvenile polyps account for about 20% of the total number of polyps [847].
Histopathology
Smaller polyps are indistinguishable from their sporadic counterparts. In the multi-lobated or atypical variety the lobes may be either rounded or finger-like. There is a relative increase in the amount of epithelium versus stroma. Glands show more budding and branching but less cystic change than the classical solitary polyp [847].

Cancer in juvenile polyposis
There are two histogenetic explanations for the well documented association between colorectal cancer and juvenile polyposis. Cancers could arise in co-existing adenomas. Alternatively, they may develop through dysplastic change within a juvenile polyp. While both mechanisms may apply, pure adenomas are uncommon in juvenile polyposis. By contrast, foci of low-grade dysplasia may be demonstrated in 50% of atypical or multi-lobated juvenile polyps. The dysplastic areas may increase in size, generating a mixed juvenile polyp/adenoma. The adenomatous component may be tubular, tubulovillous or villous. Carcinomas are more likely to be poorly differentiated and/or mucinous [847].

Extraintestinal manifestations
Congenital anomalies have been reported in 11 to 15% of JP patients [316, 727], with the majority occurring in sporadic cases [217]. These anomalies most commonly involve the heart, central nervous system, soft tissues, gastrointestinal tract and genitourinary system [316, 1202]. Several patients have been reported with ganglioneuromatous proliferation within juvenile polyps [428, 1218, 1513, 2081], and others with pulmonary arteriovenous malformations and hypertrophic osteoarthropathy [348, 1760, 101, 333].
Cowden syndrome

Definition
Cowden syndrome (CS) is an autosomal dominant disorder characterized by multiple hamartomas involving organs derived from all three germ cell layers. The classical hamartoma associated with CS is the trichilemmoma. Affected family members have a high risk of developing breast and non-medullary thyroid carcinomas. Clinical manifestations further include mucocutaneous lesions, thyroid abnormalities, fibrocystic disease of the breast, gastrointestinal hamartomas, early-onset uterine leiomyomas, macrocephaly, mental retardation and dysplastic gangliocytoma of the cerebellum (Lhermitte-Duclos). The syndrome is caused by germline mutations of the PTEN/MMAC1 gene.

MIM No. 158350

Synonyms
Cowden disease; multiple hamartoma syndrome.

Gene structure and product
SMAD4 has 11 exons, encoding 552 amino acids. It is expressed ubiquitously in different human organ systems, as well as during murine embryogenesis. The gene product is an important cellular mediator of TGF-β signals relevant for development and control of cell growth and an obligate partner for SMAD2 and SMAD3 proteins in the signalling pathway from the TGF-β receptor complex to the nucleus (2099).

Gene mutations
While relatively few germline mutations have been described thus far, three studies have confirmed, in different white populations, the frequent occurrence of a four base pair deletion in SMAD4 exon 9 (531, 751, 1622). Haplotype analyses indicate that this is due to a mutation hotspot, rather than an ancient founder mutation (531, 751). The families segregating this particular mutation tend to be large, perhaps indicating high penetrance.

PTEN / MMAC1 gene.
caus ed by germline mutations of the

Prognostic factors
The most severe form of juvenile polyposis presents in infancy, with diarrhoea, anemia, and hypoalbuminemia; these patients rarely survive past 2 years of age. Although polyps in juvenile polyposis patients have classically been described as hamartomas, they do have malignant potential. The risk of colorectal carcinoma is approximately 30-40% and that of upper gastrointestinal carcinoma is 10-15% (749). Typical age of colon carcinoma diagnosis is between 34 and 43 years (range 15-68 years), and upper gastrointestinal carcinoma 58 years (range 21-73 years) (749, 847, 834). Most cases occur in patients who have not been screened radiologically or endoscopically, suggesting that cancers may be preventable through close surveillance.

Diagnostic criteria
Because of the variable and broad expression of CS and the lack of uniform diagnostic criteria prior to 1996, the International Cowden Consortium (1334) compiled operational diagnostic criteria for CS (Table 6.05), based on the published literature and their own clinical experience (467). Trichilemmomas and papillomatous papules are particularly important to recognize, CS usually presents by the late 20s. It has variable expression and an age-related penetrance although the exact penetrance is unknown. By the third decade, 99% of affected individuals have developed the mucocutaneous stigmata although any of the other features could be present already (see Table 6.05). Because the clinical literature on CS consists mostly of reports of the most florid and unusual families or case reports by subspecialists interested in their respective organ systems, the spectrum of component signs is unknown. Despite this, the most commonly reported manifestations are mucocutaneous lesions, thyroid abnormalities, fibrocystic disease and carcinoma of the breast, gastrointestinal hamartomas, multiple, early-onset uterine leiomyoma, macrocephaly (specifically, megen cephaly) and mental retardation (1819, 665, 1152, 1096).

Epidemiology
The single most comprehensive clinical epidemiological study estimated the prevalence to be 1 per million population (1819, 1334). Once the gene was identified (1071), a molecular-based estimate of prevalence in the same population was 1:200 000 (1333). Because of the difficulty in recognizing this syndrome, prevalence figures are likely underestimates.

Intestinal neoplasms
Hamartomatous polyps. In a small but systematic study comprising 9 well documented CS individuals, 7 of whom had a...
Cowden syndrome

133

PTEN mutation, all 9 had hamartomatous polyps [2075]. Several varieties of hamartomatous polyps are seen in this syndrome, including lipomatous and ganglioneuromatous lesions [2075]. Presumably, these polyps can occur anywhere in the gastrointestinal tract. Those in the colon and rectum usually measure from 3 to 10 millimetres but can reach 2 centimetres in diameter. Some of the polyps are no more than tags of mucosa but others have a more definite structure. Most are composed of a mixture of connective tissues normally present in the mucosa, principally smooth muscle in continuity with the muscularis mucosae [242]. Examples containing adipose tissue have been described. The mucosal glands within the lesion are normal or elongated and irregularly formed but the epithelium is normal and includes goblet cells and columnar cells [242]. Lesions in which autonomic nerves are predominant, giving a ganglioneuroma-like appearance, have been described but seem to be exceptional [1017]. The vast majority of CS hamartomatous polyps are asymptomatic. In a study of 9 CS individuals, glycogenic acanthosis of the oesophagus was found in 6 of the 7 with PTEN mutation [2075].

Gastrointestinal malignancies are generally not increased in CS [1819, 468] although rare individual CS families appear to have an increased prevalence of colon cancer (Eng, unpublished observations).

Extraintestinal manifestations

Breast cancer. The two most commonly recognized cancers in CS are carcinoma of the breast and thyroid [1819]. In the general population, lifetime risks for breast and thyroid cancers are approximately 11% (in women), and 1%, respectively. Breast cancer has been rarely observed in men with CS [1167]. In women with CS, lifetime risk estimates for the development of breast cancer range from 25 to 50% [1819, 665, 1096, 467]. The mean age at diagnosis is likely 10 years earlier than breast cancer occurring in the general population [1819, 1096]. Although Rachel Cowden died of breast cancer at the age of 31 [196, 1081] and the earliest recorded age at diagnosis of breast cancer is 14 [1819], the great majority of breast cancers are diagnosed after the age of 30-35 (range 14 – 65) [1096]. The predominant histology is ductal adenocarcinoma. Most CS breast carcinomas occur in the context of DCIS, atypical ductal hyperplasia, adenosis and sclerosis [1691].

Thyroid cancer. The lifetime risk for thyroid cancer can be as high as 10% in males and females with CS. Because of small numbers, it is unclear if the age of onset is truly earlier than that of the general population. Histologically, the thyroid cancer is predominantly follicular carcinoma although papillary histology has also been rarely observed [1819, 665, 1152] (Eng, unpublished observations). Medullary thyroid carcinoma has not been observed in patients with CS.

Benign tumours. The most important benign tumours are trichilemmomas and papillomatous papules of the skin. Apart from those of the skin, benign tumours or disorders of breast and thyroid are the most frequently noted and probably represent true component features of this syndrome (Table 6.05). Fibroadenomas and fibrocystic disease of the breast are common signs in CS, as are follicular adenomas and multinodular goitre of the thyroid. An unusual central nervous system tumour, cerebellar dysplastic gangliocytoma or Lhermitte-Duclos disease, has recently been associated with CS [1445, 468, 932]. Other malignancies and benign tumours have been reported in patients or families with CS. Some authors believe that endometrial carcinoma could be a component tumour of CS as well. It remains to be shown whether other tumours (sarcomas, lymphomas, leukaemia, meningiomas) are true components of CS.

Genetics

Chromosomal location and mode of transmission
CS is an autosomal dominant disorder, with age related penetrance and variable expression [468]. The CS susceptibility gene, PTEN, resides on 10q23.3 [1071, 1334, 1068].

Gene structure

PTEN/MMAC1/TEP1 consists of 9 exons spanning 120-150 kb of genomic distance [1167, 1820, 1068]. It is believed that intron 1 occupies much of this (approximately 100 kb), PTEN is predicted to encode a 403-amino acid phosphatase. Similar to other phosphatase genes, PTEN exon 5 specifically encodes a phosphatase core motif. Exons 1 through 6 encode amino acid sequence that is homologous to tensin and auxilin [1065, 1820, 1068].

Gene product

PTEN is virtually ubiquitously expressed [1820]. Detailed expression studies in
development have not been performed. However, early embryonic death in pten-/- mice would imply a crucial role for PTEN in early development (1526, 1868, 407).

PTEN is a tumour suppressor and is a dual specificity phosphatase (1304). It is a lipid phosphatase whose major substrate is phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-triphosphate (PIP3) which lies in the PI3 kinase pathway (553, 1814, 1142, 364, 1067). When PTEN is ample, PIP3 is converted to 4,5-PIP2, which results in hypophosphorylated Akt/PKB, a known cell survival factor. Hypophosphorylated Akt is apoptotic. Transient transfection studies have shown that ectopic expression of PTEN results in apoptosis in breast cancer lines mediated by Akt (1067) and G1 arrest in glioma lines (553, 554). The G1 arrest is not fully explained by the PTEN-PI3K-Akt pathway. It is also believed that PTEN can dephosphorylate FAK and inhibit integrin and MAP kinase signalling (637, 1892).

Gene mutations
Approximately 70-80% of CS cases, as strictly defined by the Consortium criteria, have a germline PTEN mutation (1167, 1071). If the diagnostic criteria are relaxed, then mutation frequencies drop to 10-50% (1335, 1964, 1124). A formal study which ascertained 64 unrelated CS-like cases revealed a mutation frequency of 2% if the criteria are not met, even if the diagnosis is made short of one criterion (1168). A single research centre study involving 37 unrelated CS families, ascertained according to the strict diagnostic criteria of the Consortium, revealed a mutation frequency of 80% (1167). Exploratory genotype-phenotype analyses revealed that the presence of a germline mutation was associated with a familial risk of developing malignant breast disease (1167). Further, missense mutations and/or mutations 5’ of the phosphatase core motif seem to be associated with a surrogate for disease severity (multi-organ involvement). A small study comprising 13 families with 8 PTEN mutation-positive members could not find any genotype-phenotype associations (1333) but this may be due to the small sample size.

Bannayan-Riley-Ruvalcaba syndrome (BRR)
Previously thought to be clinically distinct, BRR (MIM 153480), characterized by macrocephaly, lipomatosis, haemangiomatosis and speckled penis, is likely allelic to CS (1169). Approximately 60% of BRR families and isolated cases combined carry a germline PTEN mutation (1170). There were 11 cases classified as true CS-BRR overlap families in this cohort, and 10 of these had a PTEN mutation. The overlapping mutation spectrum, the existence of true overlap families and the genotype-phenotype associations which suggest that the presence of germline PTEN mutation is associated with cancer strongly suggest that CS and BRR are allelic and part of a single spectrum at the molecular level. The aggregate term of PTEN hamartoma tumour syndrome (PHTS) has been suggested (1170). The identification of a germline PTEN mutation in a patient previously thought to have juvenile polyposis (1421) excludes that diagnosis, and points to the correct designation as CS or BRR (469, 751, 983, 750, 1171).

Prognosis
There have been no systematic studies to indicate if CS patients who have cancer have a prognosis different from that of their sporadic counterparts.

### Table 6.05
International Cowden Consortium diagnostic criteria for CS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagnostic criteria</th>
<th>Operational diagnosis in an individual</th>
<th>Operational diagnosis in a family where one individual is diagnostic for Cowden</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pathognomonic Criteria</strong></td>
<td>1. Mucocutaneous lesions alone if: a) there are 6 or more facial papules, of which 3 or more must be trichilemmoma, or b) cutaneous facial papules and oral mucosal papillomatosis, or c) oral mucosal papillomatosis and acral keratoses, or d) palmoplantar keratoses, 6 or more</td>
<td>1. At least one pathognomonic criterion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucocutaneous lesions:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichilemmomas, facial</td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Any one major criterion with or without minor criteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acral keratoses</td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Two minor criteria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillomatous papules</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucosal lesions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Major Criteria</strong></td>
<td>2. Two major criteria but one must include macrocephaly or LDD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast CA</td>
<td>3. One major and three minor criteria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thyroid CA, esp. follicular carcinoma</td>
<td>4. Four minor criteria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macrocephaly (Megencephaly) (1 &gt; 97%ile)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lhermitte-Duclos disease (LDD)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Minor Criteria</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other thyroid lesions</td>
<td>1. At least one pathognomonic criterion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e.g. adenoma or multinodular goiter)</td>
<td>2. Any one major criterion with or without minor criteria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mental retardation (IQ &lt; 75)</td>
<td>3. Two minor criteria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastro-intestinal hamartomas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrocystic disease of the breast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipomas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibromas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitourinary tumours (e.g. uterine fibroids) or malformation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hyperplastic polyposis

Definition
Multiple or large hyperplastic (metaplastic) polyps of the large intestine, typically located proximally, and often exhibiting familial clustering.

Synonyms and historical annotation
The term metaplastic polyposis has been used synonymously. Early descriptions emphasized a multiplicity of hyperplastic polyps throughout the colorectum and caused diagnostic confusion with familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) [2114]. The condition was also reported to occur in young male subjects. These descriptions (predating the colonoscopic era) were biased towards cases mimicking FAP or showing unusual aspects such as young age of onset. In the colonoscopic era, the features of large polyp size and/or distribution throughout the colorectum serve to distinguish hyperplastic polyposis from the far more common occurrence of small hyperplastic polyps in the distal colon and rectum. Hyperplastic polyposis should be distinguished from sporadic hyperplastic polyps in view of its association with colorectal neoplasia [1198, 126] and reports of familial clustering [849].

Diagnostic criteria
In the absence of generally accepted guidelines on what would constitute the minimum number of polyps or polyp size to warrant a diagnosis of hyperplastic polyposis, the following criteria are recommended: (1) At least five histologically diagnosed hyperplastic polyps proximal to the sigmoid colon of which two are greater than 10 mm in diameter, or (2) any number of hyperplastic polyps occurring proximal to the sigmoid colon in an individual who has a first degree relative with hyperplastic polyposis, or (3) more than 30 hyperplastic polyps of any size, but distributed throughout the colon.

Clinical features
Unless there is associated malignancy, hyperplastic polyposis is generally asymptomatic. Larger hyperplastic polyps may occasionally present with rectal bleeding. The condition may be diagnosed in adults of all ages. Although considered as rare, the condition is probably under-reported.

Firm management guidelines have not been developed. The rather frequently observed association with adenomatous polyps and colon carcinomas suggests that some surveillance of patients is required, with generous biopsy sampling and polypectomy as appropriate, particularly of larger polyps, to determine if neoplasia is present. Subtotal colectomy is occasionally necessary in patients with multiple adenomatous polyps if there are numerous and rapidly growing hyperplastic polyps that make it nearly impossible to selectively eliminate neoplastic lesions.

Imaging
Small polyps may be indistinguishable from diminutive adenomas. High resolution videendoscopy, combined with dye spraying, will demonstrate the diagnostic star-shaped crypt opening [1191]. Larger hyperplastic polyps may either present as pale flat lesions on the crest of a mucosal fold or may become protuberant. The head may darken and become lobulated, simulating an adenoma. The colonoscopic phenotype in some patients simulates FAP with scores to hundreds of 1mm to 5mm in diameter polyps, while others exhibit a smaller number of centimeter sized darker sessile lesions that grossly may be confused with multiple villous adenomas. With either phenotype, one or several adenomas may be found in addition to the hyperplastic polyps. High resolution videendoscopy suggests that a mixed hyperplastic and cerebriform pattern may be indicative of serrated adenoma [1191].

Histopathology
Most hyperplastic polyps are indistinguishable from their common counterparts, apart from their large size. As in the sporadic hyperplastic polyp, the proliferative zone is increased but remains confined to the lower crypt. There is abnormal retention of cells in the upper maturation zone associated with the characteristic appearance of serration. A small proportion contains foci of intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia) that may

Fig. 6.73 Hyperplastic polyp in a patient with hyperplastic polyposis.

Fig. 6.74 Colectomy specimen, hyperplastic polyposis.

Fig. 6.75 Immunohistochemistry for the hMLH1 gene product in a mixed hyperplastic polyp / adenoma in a case of hyperplastic polyposis. Normal expression (right) is lost in the glands with intraepithelial neoplasia (left).
Tumours of the colon and rectum either resemble a tubular, tubulovillous, or villous adenoma, or retain a serrated architecture supporting a diagnosis of serrated adenoma (1987, 1092, 337). Hyperplastic polyps and serrated adenomas show a similar mucinous phenotype exemplified by upregulation of the goblet cell mucin MUC2, reduction of the intestinal mucin MUC4 and neo-expression of the gastric mucin MUC5AC. This suggests that hyperplastic polyps and serrated adenomas represent a histogenetic continuum (139).

Unusual growth patterns, including inversion and pseudoinvasion, with associated disorganization of the muscularis mucosae, are more characteristic of large polyps (1729, 1773) and will therefore be over-represented in hyperplastic polyposis. It has been suggested that hyperplastic polyposis be distinguished from 'serrated adenomatous polyposis' (1944). However, the histological distinction between a large hyperplastic polyp and a serrated adenoma is not straightforward and there is probably no sharp division between hyperplastic polyposis and 'serrated adenomatous polyposis'.

Genetics

Despite being regarded as non-neoplastic, hyperplastic polyps may show clonal genetic changes, including chromosomal rearrangements at 1p, KRAS mutation and low levels of DNA microsatellite instability (775). Mutations of TP53 and increased immunorepression of p53 are limited to areas of high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia in serrated adenomas (720). In hyperplastic polyposis, microsatellite instability is seen in areas of intraepithelial neoplasia. High levels of microsatellite instability (MSI-H) are associated with loss of expression of the DNA mismatch repair protein hMLH1 in these lesions (844). This observation fits with the suggestion that DNA microsatellite instability may be caused by the silencing of DNA mismatch repair genes by methylation of the promoter region (361). A mutation affecting a gene that controls methylation might account for familial and non-familial cases of hyperplastic polyposis, placing this condition within the spectrum of colorectal lesions showing mismatch repair deficiency (1950). An epigenetic mechanism involving disordered methylation would explain polyp multiplicity and the tendency for hyperplastic polyps to regress spontaneously (986).

Prognosis

Sporadic hyperplastic polyps are generally believed not to be associated with an increased cancer risk. Evidence for hyperplastic polyposis being a precancerous lesion includes the observation of mixed hyperplastic/adenomatous polyps in this condition and the synchronicity of hyperplastic polyposis and colorectal cancer (1198, 126). The genetic changes noted above offer further evidence for a direct relationship between hyperplastic polyposis and colorectal carcinoma, and support the concept of a hyperplastic poly-p-adenoma-carcinoma sequence (775).
Endocrine tumours of the colon and rectum

Definition
Endocrine tumours of the large intestine are defined as in the small intestine.

Epidemiology
Incidence and time trends
Endocrine tumours of the colon have an incidence of 0.07-0.11 up to 0.21 cases per 100,000 population per year [1251]. In a recent series, carcinoids from caecum to transverse colon (midgut) represented about 8% and descending colon and rectosigmoid (hindgut) carcinoids about 20% of 5973 gastrointestinal carcinoids [1251]. Rectal carcinoids had a reported incidence of 0.14-0.76 cases per 100,000 population per year. In the 40-year time period (from 1950 to 1991) the percentage of caecal carcinoids, among carcinoids of all sites, nearly doubled, as did the percentage of rectosigmoid lesions [1251].

Age and sex distribution
The reported average age at diagnosis is 58 years, for rectal, and 66 years, for colonic carcinoids, and the M/F ratio is 1.06, for rectal, and 0.66, for colonic carcinoids [1251].

Aetiology
Some colorectal carcinoids have been reported in the large bowel of patients with ulcerative colitis [584, 622] or Crohn disease [722, 622]. In association with these conditions, the tumours tend to be multiple [1208]. However, there appears to be no evidence to substantiate a direct association between inflammatory bowel disease and carcinoid tumours, because almost all cases were found incidentally after surgery for inflammatory bowel disease [622].

Localization
Endocrine tumours are more common in the rectum (54% of the cases), followed by the caecum (20%), sigmoid colon (7.5%), rectosigmoid colon (5.5%) and ascending colon (5%) [1251, 1784].

Clinical features
Patients with colonic carcinoid tumours most commonly present in the seventh decade with symptoms of abdominal pain and weight loss, though some present late with liver metastases [1616]. Less than 5% of patients present with the carcinoid syndrome [1616, 128]. Carcinoids of the colon are associated with metachronous or synchronous non-carcinoid neoplasms in 13% of cases [1251]. Half of rectal endocrine tumours are asymptomatic and are discovered at routine rectal examination or endoscopy, while the other half give rise to symptoms, typically rectal bleeding, pain or constipation [857, 1836]. Rectal carcinoids are practically never associated with the carcinoid syndrome [857, 1836, 212]. Small cell carcinomas are aggressive neoplasms and can present with symptoms due to local disease or to widespread metastases.

Macroscopy
The majority of colonic carcinoids are detected in the right colon [1616, 128] and are larger than carcinoids of the small intestine, appendix, and rectum. The average size was 4.9 cm in cases reviewed by Berardi [128]. Rectal carcinoids appear as submucosal nodules, sometimes polyoid, often with apparently intact overlying epithelium [968]. Larger lesions tend to be somewhat fixed to the rectal wall. In the great majority of cases the tumour is found 4 to 13 cm above the dentate line and on the anterior or lateral rectal walls [222]. The majority of rectal endocrine tumours are solitary and measure less than 1 cm in diameter [222]. Reviewing 356 cases reported in the literature, Caldarola et al. [222] found that only 13% of rectal carcinoids measured more than 2 cm in diameter.

Histopathology
Carcinoid – well differentiated endocrine neoplasm
Colonic serotonin-producing EC-cell tumours show histological, cytological, cytochemical, and ultrastructural features that are identical to those of jejuno-ileal EC-cell tumours, including the absence of S100 protein positive sustentacular cells [1784]. L-cell, glucagon-like peptide and PP/PYY-producing tumours are characterized histologically by a predominance of a type B [1775] ribbon pattern, often admixed with type C (tubuloacini or broad, irregular trabecular with rosettes) and only occasionally with areas of type A solid nest structures. These patterns are different from

Fig. 6.77 Endoscopically resected carcinoid tumour of rectum.

Fig. 6.78 A, B Carcinoid tumour of rectum. Trabecular pattern, typical of L-cell tumour.
those of EC-cell tumours, in which type A structures prevail. The argentaffin reaction is usually negative [146], while consistently positive results are obtained with Grimelius stain [488]. Immunohistochemically, they stain for panendocrine markers (neuron-specific enolase, synaptophysin, chromogranins) and for a variety of peptide hormones [488]. Among 62 rectal carcinoids derived from surgical pathology files, about 80% displayed more or less abundant glucagon-like peptide (GLP-1, GLP-2, glicentin) and/or PP/PYY immunoreactivities typical of intestinal L-cells, whereas only 30% showed serotonin immunoreactivity and 20% somatostatin immunoreactivity, usually in only few cells [1780, 507]. Although there is a prevalence of L-cells in these tumours, minority populations of substance P, insulin, enkephalin, beta-endorphin, neurotensin, and motilin immunoreactive cells have also been identified [1780, 488, 212]. The vast majority (82%) of colorectal carcinoids tested in one series of 84 cases showed immunoreactivity for prostatic acid phosphatase, a finding that is unusual in other gut carcinoids and possibly is related to the common origin of the rectum and prostate from cloacal hindgut [488]. Ultrastructurally, rectal L-cells show round to slightly angular secretory granules similar to those of L-cells of the normal human intestine [506]. Small (≤ 2 cm) benign L-cell rectal carcinoids show an immunohistochemical Ki-67 index ≤ 1%, while large (> 2 cm) L-cell carcinomas show a Ki-67 index ≥ 5% [La Rosa S, Capella C, Soicia E, unpublished observations, 1999].

**Small cell carcinoma (poorly differentiated neuroendocrine neoplasm)**

These are morphologically identical to small cell carcinomas of the lung, and correspond to grade 3 tumours according to Rindi et al. [1589]. They are usually found in the right colon, and are frequently associated with an overlying adenoma or adjacent adenocarcinoma [2085], but are not associated with carcinoid tumours. Small cell carcinomas typically express neuroendocrine markers (e.g. chromogranin, synaptophysin) by immunohistochemistry. Patients usually have liver metastases at the time of original surgery, and the prognosis is poor [207].

**Large cell neuroendocrine carcinoma** is a malignant neoplasm composed of large cells having organoid, nesting, trabecular, rosette-like and palisading patterns that suggest endocrine differentiation, which can be confirmed by immunohistochemistry and electron microscopy. In contrast to small cell carcinoma, cytoplasm is more abundant, nuclei are more vesicular and nucleoli are prominent [1954]. These tumours have not been well described in the gastrointestinal tract because of their apparent low frequency.

**Genetics**

Loss of heterozygosity at MEN-1 locus has been reported in two sporadic colonic and two sporadic rectosigmoidal carcinoids [829]. However, this finding has not been confirmed by more recent studies [394, 1938]. Colorectal carcinoids do not represent an integral part of MEN-1 [1444]. A case of rectal carcinoid tumour associated with Peutz-Jeghers syndrome has been reported [2032].

**Prognosis**

Colonic EC-cell carcinoids are frequently malignant, local spread of the tumours was found in 36-44% of patients and distant metastases in 38% [1251, 1616]. The reported 5-year survival rate was 25-42% and the 10-year survival rate was 10% [1251, 1616]. Modlin found malig-
Primary lymphoma of the colorectum is defined as an extranodal lymphoma arising in either the colon or rectum with the bulk of disease localized to this site (796). Contiguous lymph node involvement and distal spread may be seen, but the primary clinical presentation is the colon and/or rectum.

**Epidemiology**
Primary lymphomas arising in the large intestine are less frequent than either gastric or small bowel lymphomas (792). Primary colorectal lymphomas account for about 0.2% of all neoplasms at this site. The lymphoma subtypes that present in the colorectum are similar to those that involve the small intestine, with the exception of immunoproliferative small intestinal disease (IPSID). Mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue (MALT) lymphomas of both small and large cell type account for the majority of lymphomas of the colorectum (1733).

**Aetiology**
The factors involved in the aetiology of colorectal lymphomas are similar to those in the small intestine. Inflammatory bowel disease, particularly ulcerative colitis, is a recognized predisposing factor (1733). Diverticular disease does not appear to be a risk factor for the development of lymphoma. Immunodeficiency disorders giving rise to lymphoma have a predilection for the gastrointestinal tract. The frequency of colorectal lymphomas has significantly increased, partly due to the AIDS epidemic.

**Localization**
Most colorectal lymphomas involve the distal large bowel, rectum and anus. There is a preference for rectal lymphoma in patients infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) (787, 1057). Multifocal involvement is uncommon with the exception of multiple lymphomatous polyposis (1733).

**Clinical features**
The presenting features are very similar to epithelial neoplasms at this site. Rectal bleeding is the most common symptom, followed by diarrhoea, abdominal pain, passage of mucus per rectum, constipation, abdominal mass, weight loss, irregular bowel habit, anal pain and worsening of ulcerative colitis symptoms. Occasional cases are found incidentally, while an acute presentation with rupture of the colon is distinctly uncommon (1733, 611). Similar to gastric lymphomas, colorectal lymphomas can be diagnosed using endoscopy and biopsy. Computerized tomography and barium enema have a role in diagnosis and determining the...
extent of disease. Multiple lymphomatous polyposis has a characteristic radiological picture with numerous polyps of variable size throughout the colon. Transrectal ultrasonography may also be a useful adjunct for diagnosis.

**Macroscopy**
Most low-grade lymphomas present as well defined protuberant growths that deeply invade the bowel wall. Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL) and Burkitt lymphoma tend to form larger masses with stricture and ulcer formation involving long segments of the colorectum. Low-grade and aggressive MALT lymphomas typically remain localized for prolonged periods, but may spread to involve loco-regional lymph nodes. Mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) may present as an isolated mass or as multiple polyps producing the clinical picture of multiple lymphomatous polyposis (2084). In most cases, the colon is more significantly involved than the small bowel. Importantly, other histological subtypes of lymphoma can produce this clinicopathological entity (see below). The polyps range in size from 0.5 cm to 2 cm with much larger polyps found in the ileocaecal region (791, 1292). MCL frequently spreads to involve the spleen, extra-abdominal lymph nodes, bone marrow and peripheral blood.

**Histopathology**

**MALT lymphoma**
The majority of intestinal lymphomas involving the large bowel are B-cell lymphomas of MALT type, including both low-grade and aggressive histologies (796). The histological and immunophenotypic features are discussed in detail in the section describing lymphomas of the stomach. Colorectal low-grade MALT lymphomas resemble those of the small intestine in that lymphoepithelial lesions are less prominent than in the stomach. Precise criteria for defining a MALT lymphoma of large cell type are lacking, as are the criteria for distinguishing transformation within a low-grade MALT lymphoma. When both histologies are evident, the neoplasm is best described as composite. When small foci of large transformed cells or early sheeting-out of large cells are detected within a background of low-grade intestinal MALT lymphoma, their presence should be noted (383). Currently, the prognostic impact of these findings and their effect on treatment are undetermined. DLBCLs arising in the large bowel that lack a background of low-grade MALT lymphoma are best classified as extranodal diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, not otherwise specified, until such time as confirmatory tests can be established to clearly determine the histogenesis of these neoplasms from the mucosal immune system.

**Burkitt lymphoma**
The details of the histology, immunophenotype, cytogenetics and molecular genetics are described in detail in the small intestinal lymphoma section (Chapter 4).

**Burkitt-like lymphoma**
The histological and cytogenetic features have been previously described in the small intestinal lymphoma section. AIDS patients have a preponderance of cases with this histology. Many are of small non-cleaved cell type with the typical molecular and cytogenetic changes associated with classical Burkitt lymphoma, and compressed by the surrounding lymphoma cells, imparting the appearance of replacing the normal mantle zones. Intestinal glands may be destroyed by the lymphoma, but typical lymphoepithelial lesions are not seen. The low power appearance is monotonous with frequent epithelioid histiocytes, mitotic figures and fine sclerosis surrounding small blood vessels. The lymphoma cells are small to medium sized with irregular nuclear outlines, indistinct nucleoli and scant amounts of cytoplasm. Large transformed cells are typically not present. The lymphoma cells are mature B-cells and express both CD19 and CD20. Characteristically the cells co-express CD5 and CD43. Surface immunoglobulin is found including both IgM and IgD. Light chain restriction is present in most cases, with some studies demonstrating a predominance of lambda. CD10 and CD11c are virtually always negative. Bcl-1 (cyclin D1) is found in virtually all cases and can be demonstrated within the nuclei of the neoplastic lymphocytes in paraffin sections.

**Mantle cell lymphoma**
The morphology of MCL involving the large bowel is identical to MCL at nodal sites (110). The architecture is most frequently diffuse, but a nodular pattern and a less common true mantle-zone pattern are also seen. Reactive germinal centers may be found and are usually compressed by the surrounding lymphoma cells, imparting the appearance of replacing the normal mantle zones. Intestinal glands may be destroyed by the lymphoma, but typical lymphoepithelial lesions are not seen. The low power appearance is monotonous with frequent epithelioid histiocytes, mitotic figures and fine sclerosis surrounding small blood vessels. The lymphoma cells are small to medium sized with irregular nuclear outlines, indistinct nucleoli and scant amounts of cytoplasm. Large transformed cells are typically not present. The lymphoma cells are mature B-cells and express both CD19 and CD20. Characteristically the cells co-express CD5 and CD43. Surface immunoglobulin is found including both IgM and IgD. Light chain restriction is present in most cases, with some studies demonstrating a predominance of lambda. CD10 and CD11c are virtually always negative. Bcl-1 (cyclin D1) is found in virtually all cases and can be demonstrated within the nuclei of the neoplastic lymphocytes in paraffin sections.
are best considered to be part of the same biological entity [236]. However, patients with AIDS have also been recognized to have another lymphoma, with features intermediate between small non-cleaved cell lymphoma with plasmablastic differentiation and immunoblastic lymphoma, plasmacytoid type. This latter lymphoma subtype is strongly associated with EBV infection and TP53 mutations [236].

**Other B-cell lymphomas**

Any subtype of B-cell lymphoma can arise in a colorectal site, including those thought to arise from peripheral lymph node equivalents. De novo DLBCLs are equal in frequency to low-grade MALT lymphomas in the colorectum (1733), and are particularly common in the setting of HIV infection. Rectal involvement in AIDS patients typically demonstrates DLBCL with either centroblastic or immunoblastic cytomorphology. These lymphoma subtypes can be distinguished using phenotypic markers including Bcl-6, CD138 (syndecan-1) and EBV-related protein, latent membrane protein (LMP-1). Small non-cleaved and centroblastic lymphomas express Bcl-6, but fail to express CD138 or LMP-1 in the majority of cases. Immunoblastic lymphomas in the HIV setting do not express Bcl-6, but are positive for both CD138 and LMP-1, in keeping with a non-germinal center histogenesis [237].

**Genetics**

**MALT lymphoma**

Cytogenetic and molecular features of intestinal low-grade MALT lymphomas are incompletely understood. The presence of either t(1;14)(p22;q32) or t(11;18)(q21;q21) and the corresponding molecular abnormalities, rearrangement of bcl-10 or AP12-MLT, have not been described at this site, thus the relationship of these lesions to gastric MALT lymphomas is unclear (2116, 412).

Furthermore, trisomy 3 is common in gastric MALT lymphomas, but the frequency of this cytogenetic abnormality in primary intestinal lymphoma is unknown. Some of these DLBCLs may have a low-grade MALT component evident, providing compelling evidence that their histogenesis is related to the mucosal immune system.

**Mantle cell lymphoma**

MCL is characterized by a recurrent cytogenetic abnormality, the t(11;14) (q13;q32). This translocation deregulates expression of the bcl-1 oncogene on chromosome 11. Rearrangement can be detected using Southern blot analysis, PCR or fluorescent in situ hybridization (FISH).

**Prognosis**

The relevant prognostic factors in colorectal lymphomas are similar to those for the small intestine, and have been described in detail in that section. MCL is an aggressive lymphoma, which typically presents in advanced stage; there is often involvement of mesenteric and peripheral lymph nodes, spleen, bone marrow and peripheral blood [670].
Mesenchymal tumours of the colon and rectum

Definition
A variety of benign and malignant mesenchymal tumours that arise in the large intestine as a primary site.

Classification
The morphological definitions of these lesions follow the WHO histological classification of soft tissue tumours (2086). Stromal tumours are described in detail in the chapter on gastric mesenchymal tumours.

Epidemiology
Sarcomas accounted for 0.1% of malignant large intestinal tumours in SEER data (1928). Males were affected slightly less than females. Adults between the 6th and 8th decades were primarily affected.

Aetiology
Aetiological factors are poorly understood for most colorectal mesenchymal tumours. Kaposi sarcoma usually occurs in association with AIDS, but it has also been described in connection with inflammatory bowel disease, in one case following immunosuppressive therapy (1930, 1584). Human herpesvirus 8 is usually demonstrable by PCR in Kaposi sarcoma cells. An angiosarcoma has been reported in the colon, related to a persistent foreign body (149).

Pathological features
Lipomas are composed of mature adipose tissue and are surrounded by a fibrotic capsule. They usually arise in the submucosal layer of the caecum or the sigmoid colon. When ulcerated, the lipocytes may become irregular and hyperchromatic. Lipomas should be distinguished from lipohyperplasia of the ileocaecal valve (1726). Neurofibromas and schwannomas occur in the colorectum. Most patients with the former have neurofibromatosis, and in these cases plexiform neurofibromas are common. Ganglioneuromas occur rarely in the mucosa. Vascular tumours are classified into benign (such as haemangiomas, lymphangiomas and angiomatosis) and malignant (such as haemangioendotheliomas and angiosarcomas). Kaposi sarcoma is mostly asymptomatic; a few present with GI-bleeding (319). Intestinal lesions may be observed without cutaneous disease (114). The tumours are often multiple mucosal or submucosal nodules. Histologically typical are sheets of spindle cells interspersed by clusters of extravasated erythrocytes. Cytoplasmic hyaline PAS-positive globules are usually seen. The spindle cells are generally positive for CD31 and CD34 and are negative for actin, desmin and c-kit.

Leiomyomas usually are detected in the rectum and colon as small polyps arising from the muscularis mucosae, and consist of well-differentiated smooth muscle cells with a similar immunohistochemical profile as observed in oesophageal leiomyomas (1227). Leiomyomatosis has been described in the colon with a circumferential semi-constrictive growth in a 35 cm long segment (529). It is not known whether colorectal leiomyomas and leiomyomatosis have the same colla-
gen type IV deletions as the oesophageal leiomyomas. **Gastrointestinal stromal tumours** (GISTs) of the colorectum are similar to those in the stomach and small intestine and are discussed in the section on gastric mesenchymal neoplasms. Most reports antedate the separation of GISTs and leiomyosarcoma. GISTs occur mainly between the 6th and 8th decades, and most are malignant (89). Many tumours grow beyond the rectal wall making radical surgery difficult and recurrences common. Histologically, the examples reviewed by us have all been of the spindle cell variety, all have been c-kit positive, and most of them CD34-positive. Actin-positivity occurs, but the tumours are desmin-negative. C-kit mutations have been shown in rectal GISTs (1018). The survival from large bowel stromal/smooth muscle sarcomas appears to be slightly higher than that of the small bowel and lower than that of the stomach and oesophagus (461).
CHAPTER 7

Tumours of the Anal Canal

Although incidence rates are still low, there has been a significant increase in squamous cell carcinoma over the last 50 years. HIV infected homosexual men appear particularly at risk, HPV DNA is detectable in most anal squamous cell carcinomas.

Despite its short length, the anal canal produces a variety of tumour types reflecting its complex anatomic and histological structure. Squamous, glandular, transitional, and melanocytic components occur at this site, either alone, or in combination.
**WHO histological classification of tumours of the anal canal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Epithelial tumours</th>
<th>Undifferentiated carcinoma</th>
<th>8020/3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia)</td>
<td>Carcinoid tumour</td>
<td>8240/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous or transitional epithelium</td>
<td>Paget disease</td>
<td>8542/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glandular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma</td>
<td>Non-epithelial tumours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8070/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8140/3</td>
<td>Secondary tumours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glandular adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8148/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8041/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoid tumour</td>
<td>8240/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant melanoma</td>
<td>8720/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TNM classification of tumours of the anal canal**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM classification</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T – Primary Tumour</td>
<td>M – Distant Metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Stage 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td>T1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td>N2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N – Regional Lymph Nodes</td>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NX</td>
<td>T3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0</td>
<td>N4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1</td>
<td>N5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /3 for malignant tumours, /2 for in situ carcinomas and grade III intraepithelial neoplasia, and /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour. Intraepithelial neoplasia does not have a generic code in ICD-O. ICD-O codes are available only for lesions categorized as squamous intraepithelial neoplasia, grade III (8077/2), squamous cell carcinoma in situ (8070/2), transitional cell carcinoma in situ (8120/2), glandular intraepithelial neoplasia, grade III (8148/2), and adenocarcinoma in situ (8140/2).

2 Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (ICD-O) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org).
Tumours of the anal canal

Definition
Tumours that arise from or are predominantly located in the anal canal. The most frequent neoplasms of this region are human papilloma virus (HPV)-associated squamous cell carcinomas and adenocarcinomas.

Topographic definition of anal canal and anal margin
The anal canal is defined as the terminal part of the large intestine, beginning at the upper surface of the anorectal ring and passing through the pelvic floor to end at the anus [68]. The most important macroscopic landmark in the mucosa is the dentate (pectinate) line composed of the anal valves and the bases of the anal columns. Histologically, the mucosa can be divided into three zones. The upper part is covered with colorectal type mucosa. The middle part is the anal transitional zone (ATZ), which is covered by a specialized epithelium with varying appearances; it extends from the dentate line and on average 0.5-1.0 cm upwards [490, 1929]. The lower part extends from the dentate line and downwards to the anal verge and has formerly been called the pecten. It is covered by squamous epithelium, which may be partly keratinized, particularly in case of mucosal prolapse.

The perianal skin (the anal margin) is defined by the appearance of skin appendages. There exists no generally accepted definition of its outer limit [62, 66, 845]. The term anus refers to the distal external aperture of the alimentary tract. Anal margin tumours are classified according to the WHO histological typing of skin tumours [682].

Squamous cell carcinoma

Definition
Squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) of the anal canal is a malignant epithelial neoplasm that is frequently associated with chronic HPV infection.

ICD-O code 8070/3

Epidemiology
SCC of the anal canal and anal margin typically occurs among patients in their 6th or 7th decade of life [540]. However, anal SCCs may occur in young adults, particularly in patients with cellular immune incompetence [1212]. Unselected, population-based studies show an approximate 2:1 female predominance among patients with anal SCC [540, 600, 1213].

There are few published, histologically verified incidence rates of anal cancer [540, 600, 1213]. Data from most population-based cancer registries worldwide show age standardized incidence rates of anal SCC of between 0.5 and 1.0 per 100,000 in women and between 0.3 and 0.8 per 100,000 in men [1471]. Still a relatively rare disease, anal SCC has shown a remarkable increase in incidence during the past half century [540, 600, 1213]. From being similar in the two sexes until approximately 1960 at 0.2 per 100,000, annual age-adjusted incidence rates in Denmark rose 2.5-fold in men and 5-fold in women during the period 1943-1994. For both men and women, urban populations are at higher risk than rural populations [540, 600, 1213], and there are considerable racial differences in incidence. In the United States, blacks tend to have higher incidence rates than whites [1213], while Asians and Pacific Islanders appear to be at very low risk [70].

Homosexual men appear to constitute a group at particular risk [368, 538, 140, 96, 369, 540, 1213, 1690, 730]. In the United States, the incidence of anal SCC in homosexual men has been estimated to be 11 to 34 times higher than in the general male population and approximately as high as the incidence of cervical cancer before the introduction of cervical cytology screening [369, 1447]. HIV infected homosexual men appear to be at particularly risk [1212, 1449, 598]. Other sexual factors strongly associated with anal SCC include number of sexual partner, receptive anal intercourse, and co-existence of sexually transmitted diseases [368, 538, 730, 733].

Aetiology
Sexually transmittable human papillomavirus (HPVs) are detected by PCR in the majority of anal SCC [355, 367, 538, 704, 732, 1448]. One large study showed that SCCs involving the anal canal are more often high-risk HPV positive (92%) than lesions confined to the perianal skin (64%) [536], suggesting that HPV-unrelated pathways may apply particularly to cancers of the perianal skin. A strong association with tobacco smoking has been established in women, but the role of smoking in men is less clear [367, 539, 730, 733]. States of cellular immunosuppression are associated...
Tumours of the anal canal with increased risk of anal squamous cell carcinoma. This has been observed for renal transplant recipients (150, 1494) and for patients with HIV infection and AIDS (1212).

Haemorrhoids and fissures, fistulae and abscesses in the anal region were long considered predisposing factors (192, 198, 1618). However, three case-control studies (368, 537, 733) and two cohort studies (541, 1074) failed to support the association. Crohn’s disease of long duration, which has been implicated in the aetiology of anal SCC based on case reports (992, 1765), was not associated with risk in the only controlled study addressing the issue (537).

Oestrogen and androgen receptors have been found in the anal mucosa and its supportive tissue (1396), suggesting a physiological role of sex hormones in their maintenance. Women who reach menarche late and women with short fertile periods may be at elevated risk of anal SCC (539).

Clinical features

Symptoms and signs
Anal intraepithelial neoplasia is often an unexpected finding in minor surgical specimens. Clinical manifestations of anal cancer are often late and non-specific and are mainly related to tumour size and extent of infiltration. They include anal pruritus, discomfort in sitting position, sensation of a pelvic mass, pain, change in bowel habit, incontinence due to sphincter infiltration, discharge, bleeding, fissure, or fistula. The initial non-specificity of clinical features explains why diagnosis can be delayed (855, 1621, 1719, 1835).

The clinical diagnosis of an anal tumour should always be confirmed by histological examination. A forceps or needle biopsy is usually sufficient to establish the diagnosis. The biopsy should be accompanied by an exact description of location and appearance of the biopsy site. An excisional biopsy is inadvisable, because wound healing delay would postpone optimal chemo-radiotherapy treatment. Enlarged lymph nodes may be excised or biopsied with needle aspiration under radiological control.

Imaging
Computerised tomography (CT) scan, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and needle aspiration are used to detect inguinal and pararectal node involvement. Endoanal ultrasonography (EUS) enables assessment of spread in terms of proximal and circumferential extension and infiltration of deep layers. Furthermore, EUS enables the follow-up of irradiated carcinomas (703). CT scan and MRI allow detection of involved lymph nodes and distant metastases (1835).

Exfoliative cytology
In patients with increased risk such as individuals with HIV or women with genital tract SCC, the use of anal smears taken with a cytology brush from the area below the dentate line is recommended (1689).

Macroscopy
The tumour may present as a small ulceration or fissure with slightly exophytic and indurated margins, and irregular thickening of the anoderm and anal margin with chronic dermatitis. The lesion may have a different colour from the surrounding tissue.

If ulceration and infiltration develop, the lesion becomes fixed to the underlying structures and may bleed. In advanced stages, the sphincteric muscles are deeply infiltrated although there may be little mucosal ulceration.

Tumour spread and staging
Anal SCC should be staged according to the TNM system (66). Treatment for anal SCC has now changed from surgery alone to sphincter preserving procedures including radiation and chemotherapy, sometimes in combination with local excision. Large surgical specimens are therefore rare. The examination should include resection lines in all directions and a careful search for lymph nodes. Clinical results of the combined treatment regimes are comparable or even better than those for surgery alone, but detection of residual disease can be more difficult by imaging techniques due to local fibrosis. In such cases a transanal full thickness tru-cut needle biopsy may be helpful (785). Identification of residual...
A lymphocytic infiltrate may be pronounced or absent. None of these features have been shown to have any prognostic significance, but poor keratinization, prominent basaloid features and small tumour cell size are related to infection with ‘high risk’ HPV [536]. The keratin profile of anal SCC is complex and variable [2112, 2113]. The usual immunexpression pattern is shown in Table 7.01. The second edition of the WHO classification of SCC in the anal canal included the large-cell keratinizing subtype, the large-cell non-keratinizing subtype, and the basaloid subtype [845]. The value of this classification of anal SCC has been questioned in recent years. Many tumours show more than one subtype. Thus in a study of 100 cases of anal carcinomas, 99 showed some features of squamous differentiation (keratinisation, stratification and prickle cells), 65 showed basaloid features (small cell change, palisading, retraction artefact and central eosinophilic necrosis) and 26 showed focal evidence of ductal proliferation and occasionally positive staining for PAS after diastase digestion [2111]. Furthermore, the diagnostic reproducibility of these subtypes is low [492]. This is probably the reason that the proportion of basaloid carcinoma in larger series has varied from 10 to almost 70 %, and that no significant correlation between histological subtype and prognosis has been established. In addition, the histological diagnosis is nowadays nearly always performed on small biopsies, that may not be representative for the whole tumour [492]. Therefore, it is recommended that the generic term ‘squamous carcinoma’ be used for these tumours, accompanied by a comment describing those histopathological features that may possibly affect the prognosis or reflect different aetiologies, i.e. size of predominant neoplastic cell, basaloid features, degree of keratinisation, adjacent squamous intraepithelial neoplasia, or presence of mucinous microcysts.

Apart from the verrucous carcinoma mentioned below, only two rare histological subtypes seem to have a different biological course, both having a less favourable prognosis [1734]. One is characterized by areas with well formed acinar or cystic spaces containing mucin that reacts with Alcian dyes or PAS after diastase digestion. This is termed squamous cell carcinoma with mucinous microcysts. The other is characterized by a rather uniform pattern of small tumour cells with nuclear moulding, high mitotic rate, extensive apoptosis and diffuse infiltration in the surrounding stroma. This has been called small cell (anaplastic) carcinoma, but should not be confused with small cell carcinoma (poorly differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma).
Tumours of the anal canal

conservative treatment. In contrast to an ordinary condyloma, it is characterized by a combination of exophytic and endophytic growth. Histologically, it shows acanthosis and papillomatosis with orderly arrangement of the epithelial layers and an intact but often irregular base with blunt downward projections and keratin-filled cysts. The endophytic growth is accompanied by destruction of the underlying tissues. Cytologically, the epithelial cells appear benign. Large nuclei with prominent nucleoli may be present, but dysplasia is usually minimal and mitoses are restricted to the basal layers.

33 published anorectal cases, 42 per cent have shown malignant transformation (133). The presence of severe cytological changes, unequivocal invasion or metastases should lead to the diagnosis of SCC and to the appropriate therapy.

Grading

Poor prognosis has been related to poor differentiation (165), especially if this was defined only by the degree of dissociation of tumour cells (599). However, such differences may be related to tumour stage in multivariate analysis (1734). Grading on biopsies is not recommended, as these may not be representative for the tumour as a whole.

Precancerous lesions and benign tumours

Chronic HPV infection

Warts in the perianal skin and lower anal canal (condyloma acuminatum) show the same histology as their genital counterparts. Flat koilocytic lesions also occur. They should always be totally embedded and examined histologically for possible presence of intraepithelial neoplasia.

Intraepithelial neoplasia

Precancerous anal intraepithelial neoplasia (AIN) in the anal transition zone (ATZ) and the squamous zone, has also been termed dysplasia, carcinoma in-situ and anal squamous intraepithelial lesion (ASIL) (494, 1449). The corresponding lesions in the perianal skin are commonly referred to as Bowen disease. This terminology is complicated by the fact that the precancerous changes are not always restricted to one area. Leukoplaikia is a clinical term and should not be used as a histological diagnosis.

Anal intraepithelial neoplasia (squamous cell dysplasia in the anal canal). Most cases of AIN are incidental findings in minor surgical specimens for benign conditions. When macroscopically detected, AIN may present as an eczematoid or papillomatous area, or as papules or plaques. The latter may be irregular, raised, scaly, white, pigmented or erythematous and occasionally fissured. Induration or ulceration may indicate invasion. Histologically, AIN is characterized by varying degrees of loss of stratification and nuclear polarity, nuclear pleomorphism and hyperchromatism, and increased mitotic activity with presence of mitoses high in the epithelium. The surface may or may not be keratinized, and koilocytic changes may be present.

AIN has been graded into I, II or III, or into mild, moderate and severe dysplasia (494). Reproducibility studies have shown considerable observer variation (254). A two grade system (low- and high-grade) may be more appropriate.

Squamous dysplasia at the anal margin - Bowen disease.

Clinically, this presents as a white or red area in the perianal skin that may be in continuity with dysplastic lesions in the anal canal. HPV DNA is sometimes identified, including types 16 and 18, among others. Histologically it shows full thickness dysplasia of the squamous and sometimes the pilosebaceous epithelium, with disorderly maturation, mitoses at all levels and dyskeratosis. Occasionally, atypical keratinocytes may resemble Paget cells, but are negative for low molecular weight CKs and for mucin. In pigmented Bowen disease the neoplastic cells are invariably negative

Fig. 7.09 Squamous cell carcinoma of anus. A Combination of basaloid features and keratinization. B Large cells, poorly differentiated.

Fig. 7.10 Mucinous carcinoma of anus. Tumour extends to anal sphincter.
Bowen disease has a strong tendency to recurrence after local treatment but only a few percent will progress to SCC. It is often associated with genital neoplasia but not with internal malignancies [1161, 1668].

**Bowenoid papulosis.** This condition presents as multiple 2-10 mm reddish brown papules or plaques, most commonly in sexually active young adults. Aetiologically it is related to HPV infection, usually HPV 16. Bowenoid papulosis is similar histologically to Bowen disease, and the distinction is made on a combination of clinical and pathological observations. Bowenoid papulosis tends to resolve spontaneously, but can recur [635]. It does not progress to carcinoma.

**Genetic susceptibility**

Human leukocyte antigens (HLAs) are involved in the presentation of viral antigens to the immune system. Since the aetiology of most anal SCCs involves HPV infection [536], susceptibility to cancer development might be HLA type dependent. However, no study has addressed the association between specific HLA class I or II alleles and the risk, and attempts to identify other genetic susceptibility markers for anal SCC have so far been unsuccessful [286, 287].

**Genetics**

HPV DNA is detectable in most anal SCCs; in a large population-based series of anal SCCs in Denmark and Sweden, 84% contained HPV DNA, with higher proportions of HPV-DNA positive cancers among women and homosexual men than among non-homosexual men [536].

Loss of functional tumour suppressor protein p53 appears to be centrally involved in the development of anal and anogenital SCCs [355, 356, 704, 1040]. Inactivation of p53 may occur at the gene level through point mutations leading to the production of inactive p53 or, less frequently, by means of deletions in the relevant area of chromosome 17p [704]. More typically, p53 inactivation occurs at the protein level through formation of a complex between the viral protein E6 (expressed by ‘high-risk’ HPV types) and a cellular protein, the E6-associated protein, which when bound to p53 leads to rapid proteolytic degradation of p53 [2092]. The level of p53 expression does not correlate with HPV status [704]. The E7 protein of ‘high risk’ HPV types binds to the retinoblastoma protein, pRb [440], disrupting signals that normally restrict proliferation to the basal epithelial layer. The resulting increased proliferation increases the risk of malignant transformation on exposure to DNA damaging stimuli. The combination of increased cell proliferation (pRb inactivation) and impaired ability to induce cell cycle arrest or apoptosis following DNA damage (p53 inactivation) are two central mechanisms through which ‘high risk’ types of HPV increase the risk of anogenital cancer.

Additional gene alterations appear to be involved in malignant progression and invasion. In one study, the c-myc gene was found to be amplified in 30% of anal SCCs [355], while other cellular oncoproteins, including ras and cyclin D, do not seem to be centrally involved [708, 1737]. Several chromosomal aberrations have been observed in anal SCCs [704, 1294]. Using comparative genomic hybridization, one study identified consistent gains in chromosomes 3q, 17, and 19 as well as losses in chromosomes 4p, 11q, 13q, and 18q [704].

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

The most important prognostic factors in recent larger series of anal canal SCC are tumour stage and nodal status [530, 1483, 1734]. SCC of the anal margin has a slightly better prognosis, which depends only on inguinal node involvement [1484]. DNA ploidy status has only been shown to be of independent prognostic significance in one of three larger series [599, 1702, 1734]. Expression of p53, cathepsin D, c-erb B2 and retinoblastoma gene protein are not predictive factors [169, 731, 784, 1901].

**Adenocarcinoma**

**Definition**

Anal canal adenocarcinoma is an adenocarcinoma arising in the anal canal epithelium, including the mucosal surface, the anal glands and the lining of fistulous tracts.

**ICD-O code**

8140/3

**Clinical features**

The clinical features of anal adenocarcinoma of colorectal type do not differ from those of anal SCC. Perianal adenocarcinomas may present as submucous tumours, sometimes in combination with fistulas. Occasionally, there may be...
associated Paget disease of the anus (see below). Tumour spread and staging largely correspond to anal SCC.

**Histopathology**

**Adenocarcinoma arising in anal mucosa**
Most adenocarcinomas found in the anal canal represent downward spread from an adenocarcinoma in the rectum or arise in colorectal type mucosa above the dentate line. Macroscopically and histologically, they are indistinguishable from ordinary colorectal type adenocarcinoma, and do not seem to represent a special entity except for their low location. Adenocarcinoma in the anal transitional zone (ATZ) may develop after restorative proctocolectomy for ulcerative colitis [1711].

**Extramucosal (perianal) adenocarcinoma**
Approximately two hundred cases of extramucosal adenocarcinoma have been reported, the largest series unfortunately with insufficient histological data [9]. A minimum criterion for the diagnosis is an overlying non-neoplastic mucosa, which may be ulcerated. Recent reports indicate that about two thirds of these tumours manifest in men with a mean age about 60 years. Reliable data for the prognosis for such patients have not been identified. Difficulties in establishing the correct diagnosis may delay proper treatment.

Extramucosal adenocarcinoma seem to fall into two groups, based on their association with either fistulae or remnants of anal glands. At present, no laboratory methods can distinguish between these two.

The epithelium of persistent anal fistulae is most often of the same type as found in the anal glands and ATZ [1117], and the epithelium in these two locations show the same profile with regard to mucin composition [491] and keratin expression [2113].

**Adenocarcinoma within anorectal fistula.** These tumours develop in pre-existing anal sinuses or in fistulae [74]. Some are associated with Crohn disease [992]. Others may contain epithelioid granulomas, often related to foci of inflammation or extravasated mucin but without other signs of inflammatory bowel disease [863]. Rarely, the tumours may be related to fistulae lined by normal rectal mucosa including muscularis mucosae, most likely representing adenocarcinomas arising in congenital duplications [863]. Histologically, carcinomas arising in fistulae usually are of the mucinous type, but tubular adenocarcinomas and squamous neoplasia can also be found [992, 2173].

**Adenocarcinoma of anal glands.** Only a few cases have been reported in which convincing evidence for origin in an anal gland has been demonstrated by continuity between anal gland epithelium and tumour [118, 650, 1472, 2087, 2131]. With a single exception [650], these patients have had no history of previous or concomitant fistula. The tumours were all characterized by a combination of ductular and mucinous areas. Pagetoid spread was present in at least one case [2131].
Grading
Anal adenocarcinomas are graded as colorectal adenocarcinomas.

Precursor lesions
Anal adenocarcinomas are thought to arise from glandular intraepithelial neoplasia, which can be graded as in the colorectum.

Prognosis and predictive factors
The prognosis for anal adenocarcinoma seems to be related only to the stage at diagnosis and is poorer than that for SCC (118, 930, 1305).

Basal cell carcinoma of the anal margin
Basal cell carcinoma, the most common skin cancer, is primarily found on sun-exposed areas, and only a few more than a hundred cases have been reported in the anal area (1353). The aetiology is unknown and there is no evidence of HPV infection (1332). The tumour commonly presents as an indurated area with raised edges and central ulceration, located in the perianal skin but occasionally involving the squamous zone below the dentate line. Histologically, it may show the same variability in morphology as basal cell carcinoma elsewhere, most reported cases having had a solid or adenoid pattern. Basal cell carcinoma is sufficiently treated by local excision and metastases are extremely rare. It is therefore important to distinguish it from squamous carcinoma, and this may be particularly difficult on small biopsies. Both tumours can be found in the squamous zone, and both can show a combination of basaloid, squamous and adenoid features and an inflammatory infiltrate in the stroma (50). Numerous and even atypical mitoses may be present in basal cell carcinomas (1538). However, basaloid areas in squamous carcinoma usually show less conspicuous peripheral palisading, more cellular pleomorphism, and often large, eosinophilic necrotic areas. Immunohistochemistry may be helpful in establishing the diagnosis. Basal cell carcinoma is positive for Ber-EP4 and negative for CKs 13, 19 and 22, and for CEA, EMA, AE 1 and UEA 1, while basaloid variants of squamous cell carcinoma usually show the opposite pattern (50, 1061).

Paget Disease
Extramammary Paget disease usually affects sites with a high density of apocrine glands, such as the anogenital region, where it presents as a slowly spreading, erythematous eczematoid plaque that may extend up to the dentate line (1667). Histologically, the basal part or whole thickness of the squamous epithelium is infiltrated by large cells with abundant pale cytoplasm and large nuclei. Occasional cells have the appearance of signet-rings. Paget cells invariably react positively for mucin stains and nearly always for CK 7, but Merkel cells and Toker cells may also be positive for the latter (120, 1112).

Paget disease of the anus appears to represent two entities. About half of the cases are associated with a synchronous or metachronous malignancy, most often a colorectal adenocarcinoma. Such cases can be regarded as a pagetoid extension of the tumour. They usually react positively for CK 20 and negatively for gross cystic disease fluid protein-15, a marker for apocrine cells. This is in contrast to the other half, which are not associated with internal malignancies but have a high local recurrence rate and may become invasive (1162). Only this latter entity can be regarded as a true epidermoid apocrine neoplasm (85, 120, 595, 1374).

Other lesions
Squamous cell papilloma of the anal canal
Rarely, papillomatous processes covered by normal, more or less keratinized squamous epithelium can be found in the anus.Such lesions should be tested for the presence of HPV. Negative cases are commonly regarded as ‘burned-out’ condylomas.

Keratoacanthoma
There are a few reports on keratoacanthoma arising in the perianal skin (454).

Neuroendocrine tumours
Neuroendocrine tumours may arise in the anus (493, 744). They are, however, conventionally classified as rectal. An immunohistochemical study of 17 rectal neuroendocrine tumours showed that most were of L-cell type (294). For details, see in chapter 5 the section on endocrine tumours of the colon and rectum.
Malignant melanoma

Anal melanoma is rare. It is a disease of adults with a wide age range; most patients are white [339, 182]. Presentation is usually with mass and rectal bleeding, but tenesmus, pain and change in bowel habit also occur [339].

**Macroscopy.** Lesions may be sessile or polypoid. Pigmentation of the lesion is often appreciated. Satellite nodules may occur.

**Histopathology.** The features resemble those of cutaneous melanomas. The majority shows a junctional component adjacent to the invasive tumour, and this finding is evidence that the lesion is primary rather than metastatic. The tumour cells express S-100 and HMB-45.

**Prognosis.** Anal melanomas spread by lymphatics to regional nodes, and haematogenously to the liver and thence to other organs. Metastases are frequent at time of presentation, and the prognosis is poor; the 5-year survival is less than 10% [339, 157]. The chances of long-term survival are increased if the lesion is small.

**Mesenchymal and neurogenic tumours**

These are all rare and the exact point of origin may be difficult to establish. Recent reports on tumours in the anorectal and perianal area include haemangioma, lymphangioma [372], haemangioencteroma [478], leiomyoma, malignant fibrous histiocytoma and leiomyosarcoma [1110], rhabdomyoma in a newborn [1014], and rhabdomyosarcoma in childhood [1560] and adulthood [902], fibrosarcoma, neurilemmoma and neurofibroma [571], granular cell tumour (myoblastoma) [862], spindle cell lipoma and aggressive angiomyxoma [503] and extraspinal ependymoma in a newborn [2074]. HIV infected persons may, in addition to the increased risk of squamous neoplasia, develop Kaposi sarcoma in the perianal area [113].

**Malignant lymphoma**

Primary lymphomas of the anorectal region are rare in the general population, but much more common in patients with AIDS, particularly homosexual men. All are of B-cell type, the most common types being large cell immunoblastic or pleomorphic [687, 786]. Langerhans cell histiocytosis has been described in children [617, 874] and an adult [329].

---

**Fig. 7.21** Secondary Paget disease of the anus. **A** The underlying adenocarcinoma is present beneath the squamous epithelium. High molecular weight keratin immunostain is largely restricted to normal squamous epithelium. **B** Low molecular weight keratins 8 and 13 immunostaining of tumour cells.

**Fig. 7.22** Malignant melanoma of anus with typical polypoid appearance.

**Fig. 7.23** Malignant melanoma of anus. **A** Polypoid growth is frequent. **B** Scattered tumour cells contain melanin. **C** Epitheloid melanoma cells with prominent nucleoli.

---

154 Tumours of the anal canal
Secondary tumours

Metastases to the anal canal and perianal skin are rare. Most primaries are found in the rectum or colon, but occasionally also in the respiratory tract, breast and pancreas [157, 182, 379, 888, 1767, 489]. There are few reports of metastatic squamous cell carcinoma [574]. Malignant lymphoma, leukaemia and myeloma may infiltrate the anal canal, and eosinophilic granuloma has also been described [489].

Clinically, anal metastases cause similar symptoms to primary tumours at this site, including pain, bleeding and incontinence.

Neoplasia-like lesions

Fibroepithelial polyp

Also called fibrous polyp or anal tag, this is one of the most frequent anal lesions. It may be found in the squamous zone or the perianal skin in up to half of all individuals [2101]. Grossly, the polyp is spherical or elongated with a greater diameter ranging from a few mm up to 4 cm. The surface is white or grey and may show superficial ulceration. Historically, it consists of a fibrous stroma covered by squamous epithelium, which usually is slightly hyperplastic and may be keratinized. The stroma may be more or less dense and often contains fibroblastic cells with two or more nuclei and a considerable number of mast cells [630]. Neuronal hyperplasia is a common feature [495].

Fibroepithelial polyps may be associated with local inflammation such as fissure or fistula [1084]. Granulomas can be found in about one third of skin tags in cases of Crohn’s disease [1905]. Others may represent the end stage of a thrombosed haemorrhoid, but remnants of haemorrhoidal vessels or signs of previous bleeding are rarely found. Most are probably of idiopathic nature as the incidence is rather similar in patients with or without anal diseases [2101].

Inflammatory cloacogenic polyp

This polyp was first described in 1981 [1083]. It arises in the ATZ and forms a rounded or irregular mass measuring from 1 to 5 cm in diameter. Histologically, it consists of hyperplastic rectal mucosa, partly covered with ATZ type or squamous epithelium. The surface is typically eroded and the stroma shows oedema, vascular ectasia, inflammatory cells and granulation tissue. Vertically oriented smooth muscle fibres are found between the elongated and tortuous crypts. The inflammatory cloacogenic polyp is commonly associated with mucosal prolapse, sometimes in company with haemorrhoids [296, 1052].

Malacoplakia

Cutaneous malacoplakia may arise in immunocompromised patients and present as perianal nodules [1102].

---

**Table 7.01**

<p>| Anal tumours, immunoreactivity profile (exceptions occur, especially among CK and mucin) |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CK 8+18</th>
<th>CK 7/20</th>
<th>CK 5+14</th>
<th>Mucin</th>
<th>CEA</th>
<th>Vim</th>
<th>Special</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colorectal adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–/+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell variants</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basal cell carcinoma</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroendocrine tumour</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant melanoma</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowen (also pigmented)</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paget cells local Paget</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paget cells, from CRC</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+/+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prostatic carcinoma</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>–/+</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant lymphoma</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–/–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chrom = Chromogranin A
CK = Cytokeratin
CRC = Colorectal carcinoma
GCDFP = Gross cystic disease fluid protein
PSA = Prostate specific antigen
PSAP = Prostate specific acid phosphatase
Synap = Synaptophysin
Vim = Vimentin

---

**CK = Cytokeratin**

CRC = Colorectal carcinoma

---

**Table 7.01**

**Anal tumours, immunoreactivity profile (exceptions occur, especially among CK and mucin)**

1. **Chrom = Chromogranin A**
2. **PSA = Prostate specific antigen**
3. **PSAP = Prostate specific acid phosphatase**
4. **Synap = Synaptophysin**
5. **Vim = Vimentin**

---

**Inflammatory cloacogenic polyp**

This polyp was first described in 1981 [1083]. It arises in the ATZ and forms a rounded or irregular mass measuring from 1 to 5 cm in diameter. Histologically, it consists of hyperplastic rectal mucosa, partly covered with ATZ type or squamous epithelium. The surface is typically eroded and the stroma shows oedema, vascular ectasia, inflammatory cells and granulation tissue. Vertically oriented smooth muscle fibres are found between the elongated and tortuous crypts. The inflammatory cloacogenic polyp is commonly associated with mucosal prolapse, sometimes in company with haemorrhoids [296, 1052].

---

**Malacoplakia**

Cutaneous malacoplakia may arise in immunocompromised patients and present as perianal nodules [1102].
CHAPTER 8

Tumours of the Liver and Intrahepatic Bile Ducts

The most frequent and important hepatic neoplasm is the primary hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). In many parts of the world, in particular Africa and Asia, it poses a significant disease burden. In these high incidence regions, chronic infection with hepatitis B virus (HBV) is the principal underlying cause, with the exception of Japan which has a high prevalence of hepatitis C infection. HBV vaccination has become a powerful tool in reducing cirrhosis and HCC, but implementation is still suboptimal in several high risk regions. In Western countries, chronic alcohol abuse is a major aetiological factor.

Hepatic cholangiocarcinoma has a different geographical distribution, with peak incidences in Northern Thailand. Here, it is caused by chronic infection with the liver fluke, *Opisthorchis viverrini*, which is ingested through infected raw fish.
WHO histological classification of tumours of the liver and intrahepatic bile ducts

Epithelial tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Benign</th>
<th>Others</th>
<th>Miscellaneous Tumours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hepatocellular adenoma (liver cell adenoma)</td>
<td>Solitary fibrous tumour</td>
<td>8815/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal nodular hyperplasia</td>
<td>Teratoma</td>
<td>9080/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrahepatic bile duct adenoma</td>
<td>Yolk sac tumour (endodermal sinus tumour)</td>
<td>9071/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrahepatic bile duct cystadenoma</td>
<td>Carcinosarcoma</td>
<td>8980/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biliary papillomatosis</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma</td>
<td>9140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant</td>
<td>Rhabdoid tumour</td>
<td>8983/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatocellular carcinoma (liver cell carcinoma)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma</td>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bile duct cystadenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Haemopoietic and lymphoid tumours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined hepatocellular and cholangiocarcinoma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatoblastoma</td>
<td>Epithelial abnormalities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
<td>Disease of bile duct epithelium and peribiliary glands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-epithelial tumours</td>
<td>Dysplasia of bile duct epithelium and peribiliary glands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Benign

Angiomyolipoma 8860/0
Lymphangioma and lymphangiomatosis 9170/0
Haemangioma 9120/0
Infantile haemangioendothelioma 9130/0

Malignant

Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma 9133/1
Angiosarcoma 9120/3
Embryonal sarcoma (undifferentiated sarcoma) 8991/3
Rhabdomyosarcoma 8900/3

Miscellaneous lesions

Mesenchymal hamartoma
Nodular transformation
(nodular regenerative hyperplasia)
Inflammatory pseudotumour

1 Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (542) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour, /2 for in situ carcinomas and grade III intraepithelial neoplasia and /3 for malignant tumours.

TNM classification of tumours of the liver and intrahepatic bile ducts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM classification(^1,2,3)</th>
<th>N – Regional Lymph Nodes</th>
<th>M – Distant Metastasis</th>
<th>Stage Grouping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T Primary Tumour</td>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>MX Distant metastasis cannot be assessed</td>
<td>Stage I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
<td>N0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis</td>
<td>Stage II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumour</td>
<td>N1 Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>M1 Distant metastasis</td>
<td>Stage IIIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Solitary tumour 2 cm or less in greatest dimension without vascular invasion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stage IIIB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Solitary tumour 2 cm or less in greatest dimension with vascular invasion; or multiple tumours limited to one lobe, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension without vascular invasion; or solitary tumour more than 2 cm in greatest dimension without vascular invasion.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stage IVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 Solitary tumour more than 2 cm in greatest dimension with vascular invasion; or multiple tumours limited to one lobe, none more than 2 cm in greatest dimension with vascular invasion; or multiple tumours limited to one lobe, any more than 2 cm in greatest dimension with or without vascular invasion.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Stage IVB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 Multiple tumours in more than one lobe; or tumour(s) involve(s) a major branch of the portal or hepatic vein(s); or tumour(s) with direct invasion of adjacent organs other than gallbladder; or tumour(s) with perforation of visceral peritoneum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) (1, 66). This classification applies only to primary hepatocellular and cholangio-(intrahepatic bile duct) carcinomas of the liver.
\(^2\) For classification, the plane projecting between the bed of the gallbladder and the inferior vena cava divides the liver in two lobes.
Hepatocellular carcinoma

Definition
A malignant tumour derived from hepatocytes. Most common aetiological factors are viral infections (HBV, HCV), dietary aflatoxin B₁ ingestion and chronic alcohol abuse.

Epidemiology
Primary liver cancer (PLC) is a major public health problem worldwide. In 1990, the global number of new cases was estimated at 316,300 for males and 121,100 for females, accounting for 7.4% (males) and 3.2% (females) of all malignancies, excluding skin cancer [1469]. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most common histological type of PLC. Population-based cancer registries show that HCC as a percentage of histologically specified PLCs varies considerably [1471] but in over half of the registries, the fraction is above 70%. Regions with percentages less than 40% are exceptional, e.g., Khon Kaen (Thailand), where intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma is predominant, due to endemic infection with liver flukes (Opisthorchis viverrini) [1470]. Owing to the limited availability of histological data, the following epidemiological survey is based on PLC but it can be assumed that it largely reflects HCC incidence and mortality.

Geographical distribution
The estimated PLC incidence in 1990 for 23 areas of the world is shown in Figure 8.01 [1469]. High-risk areas with an age-standardized incidence rate (ASIR, standardized to world population) of more than 20.1 per 100,000 for males are Sub-Saharan and South Africa, East Asia, and Melanesia. Low-risk areas with an ASR < 3.2 are North and South America, South-Central Asia, Northern Europe, Australia and New Zealand. Thus, developing countries carry the greatest disease burden, with more than 80% of accounted global cases. The geographical distribution of PLC is similar for males and females, although males have a considerably higher risk of developing PLC. Geographical variations in PLC risk are present even in relatively homogeneous populations and environments [1471, 176]. Geographical variations in HCC incidence and mortality can be ascribed to different levels of exposure to HCC risk factors: chronic infections with hepatitis B virus (HBV) and aflatoxin exposure in developing countries, and smoking and alcohol abuse in developed countries [1545, 1482, 1417]. In Japan, local differences in the age-standardized mortality rate (ASMR, standardized to world population) reflect the sero-prevalence of anti-hepatitis C virus (anti-HCV) antibodies among blood donors [1973, 1893, 1471, 67].

Time trends
In most countries, the incidence rates stayed largely constant or have decreased over the past two decades. However, they have increased in Japan and Italy, especially for males [982, 1522]. A changing prevalence of risk factors among populations as well as changes in diagnostic techniques and in classification of the disease and appreciably affected the disease incidence.
Age and sex distribution
Regional age-specific incidence rates differ significantly (Fig. 8.03). Qidong and Hong Kong (China) are high-risk populations for HBV-related HCC. Characteristics of their curves are a steep increase in the ages 20-34 years; in Qidong the curve levels off already at the age of 40. Osaka (Japan) is a high-risk area, but Varese (Italy) is a low to intermediate risk area; approximately 70% of HCC in these populations is related to chronic HCV infection (1417). Their rates increase at older ages and show relatively high rates over age 55-59. The curve for whites in the USA (SEER data) is representative of both low-risk populations. Males are always more frequently affected than females but high male to female ratios of > 3 in the age-specific rates occur particularly in populations with a high incidence of HCC (1534, 402, 1906, 391, 452).

Aetiology
Chronic infection with HBV, HCV or both is the most common cause of HCC worldwide (889). Among Western populations, alcohol-induced liver injury is a leading cause of liver cirrhosis and constitutes the most important HCC risk (426). In Southern China and sub-Saharan Africa, dietary ingestion of high levels of aflatoxin may present a special environmental hazard, particularly in individuals chronically infected with HBV. Other exogenous factors have also been incriminated, including iron overload (1155), long-term use of oral contraceptives (1158, 2034), and high-dose anabolic steroids. The development of liver cirrhosis, particularly in association with inherited genetic diseases such as alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency or haemochromatosis, place the individual at a greatly increased risk of HCC development.

HCC risk is increased if aetiological risk factors exist in combination, e.g., HCV infection and alcohol use (341) or HBV infection and exposure to aflatoxin (1864).

Liver cirrhosis
The major clinical HCC risk factor is liver cirrhosis, largely independent of its aetiology (Fig. 8.04). Approximately 70–90% of HCCs develop in patients with macronodular cirrhosis which is characterised by the presence of large nodules of varying size (up to several centimeters in diameter), containing portal fields and efferent veins, separated by broad, irregularly shaped connective tissue septae and scars. Macronodular and mixed macro-micro-nodular cirrhosis are typically caused by or associated with viral hepatitis, metabolic disorders, and toxic liver injury. Micronodular cirrhosis is characterised by uniform nodules of approximately 3 mm that lack the typical liver architecture and do not contain a central vein. They are typically observed as a consequence of alcoholic liver disease, haemochromatosis, and biliary cirrhosis.

Hepatitis B virus (HBV)
HBV is a small DNA virus belonging to the group of hepatotropic DNA viruses known as hepadnaviruses. HBV consists of an outer envelope, composed mainly of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), and an internal core (nucleocapsid), which contains hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg), a DNA polymerase/reverse transcriptase, and the viral genome. The genome consists of a partly double-stranded circular DNA molecule of about 3200 base pairs with known sequence and genetic organisation. In recent years, HBV variants with mutations in viral genes and in some regulatory genetic elements have been detected in patients with HBV infection; these mutations can have biological consequences. Epidemiological studies have convincingly shown that HCC development is closely associated with chronic HBV infection. The incidence of HCC in chronically HBV-infected individuals is approximately 100 times higher than in the uninfected population, and the lifetime HCC risk of males infected at birth approaches 50%. In the absence of a common molecular mechanism for HBV-induced hepatocarcinogenesis, definitive proof for a direct oncogenic role of HBV is still lacking. Nevertheless, at least three lines of evidence support a direct oncogenic role for HBV in the development of HCC: (1) integration of HBV DNA into the chromosomal DNA of HCCs, (2) the role of the HBV X gene in the pathogenesis of HBV-associated HCCs, in particular its binding to and inactivation of p53, and (3) HCC development in animal models of chronic hepadnavirus infection. In addition, the declining HCC incidence following HBV vaccination clearly supports the aetiological contribution (275). Chronic hepatitis D virus (HDV) infection does not increase the risk of HCC development over that of HBV infection alone, but the latency period between HDV infection and HCC development is 30-40 years.
years, compared with 30-60 years for HBV infection alone.

**Hepatitis C virus (HCV)**

HCV has a single-stranded RNA genome of positive polarity, around 10 kb in length, that codes for a single polyprotein consisting of 3010-3033 amino acids. Post-translational processing in the 5’-3’ direction yields the structural protein C (RNA-binding nucleocapsid protein) and the E1 and E2 envelope proteins, and the non-structural proteins NS1-NS5, including RNA-dependent RNA polymerase [321].

As soon as the HCV genome was cloned, it became evident that viruses isolated from various geographic regions have marked genetic heterogeneity. Sequence comparison shows at least 6 different HCV genotypes. Although mutations have been identified in all regions of the HCV genome, the genes for the envelope proteins E1 and E2 appear to be particularly variable. A mutation rate of 1 or 2 nucleotides per 1000 bases per infection-year appears to be characteristic of chronic HCV infection. This mutation rate is about 10 times higher than that of HBV. Some HCV genotypes may be more frequently associated with HCC development than others [321].

Anti-HCV antibodies are found in 15–80% of HCC patients, depending on the patient population studied. HCV appears to be a major cause of HCC in Japan, Italy, and Spain, but it seems to play a less important role in South Africa and Taiwan [321]. HCV-associated HCCs typically develop after 20-30 years of infection and are generally preceded by liver cirrhosis. Thus far, there is no evidence to suggest that HCV integrates into the cellular genome or has another direct role in the molecular pathogenesis of HCC. Rather, HCC develops via HCV-induced chronic liver injury, progressing to fibrosis and cirrhosis.

**Alcohol**

Among Western populations, alcohol-induced liver injury is the leading cause of chronic liver disease and liver cirrhosis and constitutes the most important HCC risk factor [426]. Regular daily consumption of > 50g ethanol in females or > 80g in males is generally considered sufficient to induce liver cirrhosis, although individual susceptibility can vary considerably. Patients who abuse alcohol and have coexisting liver disease from other causes (such as chronic HCV infection) have the highest risk for HCC development [341, 1432, 1508, 2106].

**Aflatoxin B1 (AFB1)**

AFB1 is a potent liver carcinogen in several animal species as well as in humans [2128]. It is produced by the moulds *Aspergillus parasiticus* and *Aspergillus flavus* which under hot and humid conditions in tropical countries typically contaminate grain, particularly ground nuts (peanuts). Dietary ingestion of high levels of aflatoxins presents a significant environmental hazard, particularly in the context of coexisting chronic HBV infection [1864, 1265] which leads to a more than 50-fold increase in the risk of developing HCC (Fig. 8.05). AFB1 is metabolized by cytochrome P450 enzymes to its reactive form, AFB1-5,9-oxide, which covalently binds to cellular macromolecules. Reaction with DNA at the N7 position of guanine preferentially causes a G:C > T:A muta-
tion in codon 249 of the TP53 tumour suppressor gene, leading to an amino acid substitution of arginine to serine (188). In Southern China and Subsaharan Africa, the two world regions with the highest levels of food contamination with AFB1, this mutation is present in > 40% of HCC (1265) and can be detected in serum DNA of patients with preneoplastic lesions and HCC (924). In regions where AFB1 levels in food are very low or undetectable, codon 249 transversion mutations are either very rare or absent.

Clinical features

Symptoms and signs

Most HCC patients have a past or current history of chronic liver disease from different causes (1681). The major clinical risk factor for HCC development is liver cirrhosis; 70–90% of HCCs develop in a macronodular cirrhosis (452). The presenting symptoms in patients with HCC include abdominal pain, general malaise, anorexia or weight loss, and nausea or vomiting. The symptoms are caused by the underlying chronic liver disease or cirrhosis and its clinical complications, or by the HCC itself. The most common clinical signs in HCC patients are hepatomegaly, ascites, fever, jaundice, and splenomegaly.

The laboratory findings are in part determined by the underlying liver disease, which results in elevations of various liver enzymes, such as aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alanine aminotransferase (ALT), alkaline phosphatase (AP), gamma-glutamyl-transpeptidase (GGT), and bilirubin. These laboratory parameters are not HCC-specific, however. A significantly raised level of alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) of > 500 ng/ml, or continuously rising values even if less than 100 ng/ml, strongly suggest HCC. However, not all cases of HCC are associated with AFP elevation, and raised AFP may also be found in liver disease without HCC. Furthermore, in the early stages of HCC development, AFP levels do not closely correlate with clinical HCC stage. AFP levels, therefore, have to be interpreted individually in the context of other clinical symptoms and signs as well as imaging studies. Another HCC-specific marker is des-gamma-carboxyprothrombin (DCP), which is roughly equivalent to AFP. Occasionally, HCC patients develop a paraneoplastic syndrome, with erythrocytosis, hypoglycaemia or hypercalcaemia.

Imaging

Imaging studies are important in patient management for the identification and localization of HCC. Useful techniques include ultrasonography of the liver and the abdomen, colour Doppler ultrasonography, computed tomography (CT), lipiodol CT, magnetic resonance imaging, angiography, and possibly positron emission tomography. The standard imaging techniques are ultrasonography and CT. In most cases, these allow HCC detection and staging. In patients
Liver biopsy
The definitive diagnosis of HCC depends on the histological examination of the lesion, especially in AFP-negative patients. Ultrasound- or CT-guided percutaneous biopsy with a 22-gauge needle usually provides sufficient tissue for diagnosis with minimum risk of bleeding or seeding of tumour cells along the needle tract. However, in patients with significantly elevated AFP levels who are potentially eligible for HCC resection or liver transplantation, liver biopsy is not recommended to eliminate the residual risk of tumour cells spreading before surgery.

Macroscopy
Macroscopic features of HCCs vary depending on the size of the tumour and the presence or absence of liver cirrhosis. In general, most HCCs associated with liver cirrhosis tend to present as an expansile tumour with a fibrous capsule and intratumoural septa, while those without cirrhosis tend to be massive and non-encapsulated. Varying degrees of infiltrative growth, tumour thrombi in the portal veins, and intrahepatic metastases, which are common in advanced tumours, modify the gross appearance. Occasionally, numerous minute tumour nodules are distributed throughout the liver and may be difficult to be distinguished from regenerative nodules in liver cirrhosis. Hepatocellular carcinomas are occasionally pedunculated. Patients are usually females and the tumours are thought to arise in accessory lobes of the liver. Following surgical resection, the prognosis is excellent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antigen</th>
<th>Result</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hepatocyte (Dako)</td>
<td>Positive (most useful in diagnosis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyclonal carcinoembryonic antigen</td>
<td>Positive (canalicular pattern)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpha fetoprotein</td>
<td>Positive or negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrinogen</td>
<td>Positive or negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytokeratins 8 and 18</td>
<td>Usually positive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytokeratins 7 and 19</td>
<td>Usually negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytokeratin 20</td>
<td>Usually negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epithelial membrane antigen</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BER EP4</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Hepatocellular carcinoma 163
Tumour spread
Invasion into the blood vessels, in particular into the portal vein, is a characteristic of HCC. Tumour thrombi in the portal veins are present in more than 70% of autopsies of advanced HCCs. Intrahepatic metastases is caused mostly by tumour spread through the portal vein branches. Tumour invasion into the major bile ducts is infrequent clinically, but found in about 6% of autopsy cases. Extrahepatic metastasis is mostly haematogenous, the lungs being the most common target. Regional lymphatic metastasis is frequent though distant lymph nodes are rarely involved.

Histopathology
HCCs consist of tumour cells that resemble hepatocytes. The stroma is composed of sinusoid-like blood spaces lined by a single layer of endothelial cells. Unlike the sinusoidal endothelial cells in normal liver tissue, those of HCC are immunohistochemically positive for CD34 and factor-VIII-related antigen. Ultrastructural observation shows a basement-membrane-like structure between the endothelial cells and tumour cell trabeculae, and basement-membrane-like materials are immunohistochemically positive with antibodies for laminin and type IV collagen. Thus, the sinusoid-like blood spaces resemble capillary vessels. This phenotypic change of sinusoids is called ‘capillarization’ (472, 919, 917). In the sinusoidal blood spaces, varying numbers of macrophages, which show immunohistochemical positivity with anti-lysozyme and CD68, are also present and resemble Kupffer cells in well differentiated tumours (1894). HCCs vary architecturally and cytologically. The different architectural patterns and cytological variants frequently occur in combination. Immunohistochemical features of HCC are summarized in Table 8.01.

Architectural patterns
Trabecular (plate-like). This pattern is the most common in well and moderately differentiated HCCs. Tumour cells grow in cords of variable thickness that are separated by sinusoid-like blood spaces. Well-differentiated tumours have a thin trabecular pattern and trabeculae become thicker with de-differentiation. Sinusoid-like blood spaces often show varying degrees of dilatation, and peliosis hepatis-like change are occasionally observed in advanced HCCs.

Pseudoglandular and acinar. HCC frequently has a glandular pattern, usually admixed with the trabecular pattern. The glandular structure is formed mostly by a single layer of tumour cells, and some glandular or acinar structures are formed by dilatation of the bile canalculus-like structure between cancer cells. Pseudo-glands frequently contain proteinaceous fluids, which often stain with PAS but do not stain with mucicarmine or Alcian blue. Bile may be present. Cystic dilatation of the pseudoglands sometimes occurs, such dilated glands are occasionally formed by degeneration of thick trabeculae. Generally, the glandular structure is smaller in well differentiated tumours than in moderately differentiated tumours.

Compact. Sinusoid-like blood spaces are inconspicuous and slit-like, giving the tumour a solid appearance.

Scirrhous. This uncommon type is characterised by marked fibrosis along the sinusoid-like blood spaces with varying degrees of atrophy of tumour trabeculae. It is observed even in small tumours. The scirrhous type should not be confused with cholangiocarcinoma or fibrolamellar carcinoma. Similar fibrotic changes occur following chemotherapy, radiation, and transcatheter arterial embolization. Such post-therapeutic fibrosis should be distinguished from the scirrhous variant. The term ‘sclerosing hepatic carcinoma’...
(1424), which has been used to designate a variety of tumours arising in non-cirrhotic livers and associated with hypercalcemia, does not constitute a distinct histopathological entity (806), some of these tumours appear to be hepatocellular, but others are intrahepatic (peripheral) cholangiocarcinomas.

**Cytological variants**

**Pleomorphic cell.** Tumour cells show marked variation in cellular and nuclear size, shape, and staining. Bizarre multinucleated or mononuclear giant cells are often present, and osteoclast-like giant cells may be seen rarely. Generally, pleomorphic tumour cells lack cohesiveness and do not show a distinct trabecular pattern. Pleomorphic cells are common in poorly differentiated tumours.

**Clear cell.** The tumour consists predominantly of cells with clear cytoplasm due to the presence of abundant glycogen. This type is sometimes difficult to distinguish from metastatic renal cell carcinoma of clear cell type.

**Sarcomatous change.** HCC occasionally appears sarcomatous, characterised by the proliferation of spindle cells or bizarre giant cells. When the tumour consists solely of sarcomatous cells, it is difficult to distinguish from sarcomas such as fibrosarcoma and myogenic sarcoma. When sarcomatous features are predominant, the tumour is called sarcomatoid HCC or sarcomatous HCC. In many cases, however, the sarcomatous change is present in a part of the tumour, and transitional features between trabecular HCC and sarcomatous components are frequent. Sarcomatous change is more frequent in cases with repeated chemo-therapy or transchemo arterial embolization (953), but it is also seen in small tumours. Most sarcomatous cells are positive for vimentin and desmin but negative for albumin and alpha-fetoprotein. Some are also positive for cytokeratin.

**Fatty change.** Diffuse fatty change is most frequent in small, early-stage tumours less than 2 cm in diameter. Its frequency declines as tumour size increases, and fatty changes are rather infrequent in advanced tumours. Metabolic disorders related to hepatocarcinogenesis and insufficient blood supply in the early neoplastic stage have been suggested as a possible mechanism for the development of fatty change in small tumours, but a definite mechanism has not yet been determined.

**Bile production.** Bile is occasionally observed, usually as plugs in dilated canaliculi or pseudoglands. When bile production is prominent, the tumour is yellowish in color and turns green after formalin fixation.

**Malory hyaline bodies** are intracytoplasmic, irregular in shape, eosinophilic and PAS-negative. They consist of aggregations of intermediate filaments and show immunohistochemical positivity with anti-ubiquitin antibodies.

**Globular hyaline bodies** are small, round, homogeneous, and strongly acidophilic intracytoplasmic bodies. They are PAS-positive and stain orange to red with Masson trichrome stain. Immunohistochemically, they are often positive for alpha-1-antitrypsin.

**Pale bodies** are intracytoplasmic, round to ovoid, amorphous and lightly eosinophilic. They represent an accumulation of amorphous materials in cystically dilated endoplasmic reticulum, and show distinct immunohistochemical positivity with anti-fibrogen (1846). They are commonly seen in the fibrolamellar variant of HCC but are also found in the common types of HCC, especially in scirrhous HCC.

**Ground glass inclusions** are rarely observed in tumours of HBsAg-positive patients. They stain with modified orcein, Victoria blue, or aldehyde fuchsin, and show immunohistochemical positivity with anti-HBsAg antibody. They are not seen in tumour casts in the portal vein or in extrahepatic metastases, and most are thought to be HBsAg-positive hepatocytes entrapped in a tumour.

**Fibrolamellar HCC**

This variant usually arises in non-cirrhotic livers of adolescents or young adults (353). It is rare in Asian and African countries but not so rare in Western countries. The tumour grows in sheets or small trabeculae that are separated by hyalinized collagen bundles with a characteristic lamellar pattern. They are large and polygonal and have a deeply eosinophilic and coarsely granular cytoplasm and distinct nuclei. The eosinophilic granularity is due to the presence of a large number of mitochondria. Pale bodies are frequently present, and stainable copper, usually in association with bile, can occasionally be shown.

**Undifferentiated carcinoma**

Undifferentiated carcinoma is rare, accounting for less than 2% of epithelial liver tumours. There is male preponderance but data on geographical distribution are not available. Localization, clinical features, symptoms and signs, and diagnostic procedures display no difference as compared to hepatocellular carcinoma. Undifferentiated carcinomas are postulated to have a worse prognosis (compared to HCC), although greater case numbers to support this are not available (351, 806).

**Grading**

According to histological grade, HCC is classified into well differentiated, moderately differentiated, poorly differentiated, and undifferentiated types.

---

Fig. 8.14 Nodule-in-nodule type of hepatocellular carcinoma. The border between early and advanced components is shown in C.
Well differentiated HCC. This is most commonly seen in small, early-stage tumours less than 2 cm in diameter and is rare in advanced tumours. The lesions are composed of cells with minimal atypia and increased nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio in a thin trabecular pattern, with frequent pseudoglandular or acinar structures and frequent fatty change. In most tumours larger than 3 cm in diameter, well-differentiated carcinoma is observed only in the periphery if at all. Moderately differentiated HCC. The moderately differentiated type is the commonest in tumours larger than 3 cm in diameter and is characterized by tumour cells arranged in trabeculae of three or more cells in thickness. Tumour cells have abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm and round nuclei with distinct nucleoli. A pseudoglandular pattern is also frequent, and pseudoglands frequently contain bile or proteinaceous fluid. Poorly differentiated HCC. This proliferates in a solid pattern without distinct sinusoid-like blood spaces, and only slitlike blood vessels are observed in large tumour nests. Neoplastic cells show an increased nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio and frequent pleomorphism, including bizarre giant cells. Poorly differentiated HCC is extremely rare in small early-stage tumours. Malignant progression of HCC. HCC is known to vary histologically even within a single nodule. From the viewpoint of histological grade, most cancer nodules less than 1 cm in diameter have a uniform distribution of well differentiated cancerous tissues, whereas approximately 40% of cancer nodules 1.0-3.0 cm in diameter consist of more than 2 types of tissue of different histological grades (900). Less differentiated tissues are always located inside, surrounded by well differentiated tumour on the outside. The area of well differentiated neoplasm diminishes as the tumour size increases, and they are completely replaced by less-well-differentiated cancerous tissues when the tumour size reaches a diameter of around 3 cm. When less-well-differentiated areas within a well differentiated tumour nodule are growing expansively, the nodule often has a ‘nodule-in-nodule’ appearance (1275).

Multicentric development of HCC. HCCs frequently occur as multiple intrahepatic nodules. Genetic analysis of HBV integration pattern, chromosomal allele loss, and mutational inactivation of tumour suppressor genes has indicated multicentric independent development of these nodules (1647, 1392). These studies have shown that nodules apparently growing from portal vein tumour thrombi or satellite nodules surrounding a large main tumour represent intrahepatic metastases, whereas other nodules can be considered multicentric HCCs if they satisfy any of the following three criteria: (1) multiple, small early-stage HCCs or concurrent small early-stage HCCs and classical HCCs; (2) presence of peripheral areas of well differentiated HCC in both lesions or in the smaller ones; and (3) multiple HCCs of obviously different histology. Multicentric HCCs are associated with a high rate of tumour recurrence, even after curative resection, making treatment difficult and the prognosis poor. The presence of hyperplastic foci, small-cell dysplasia, an increase in the proliferative activity of non-tumourous liver tissue, or the progression of background liver disease are risk factors for multicentric HCC development (1902, 1859).
Precursor and benign lesions

Early stage HCC and precancerous lesions

Because of remarkable advances in imaging techniques and their widespread availability, increased numbers of small HCCs are detected clinically. Liver transplantation has become common treatment for liver cirrhosis and HCC in highly selected cases. Studies of resected and explant livers have revealed new information about the morphological characteristics of small early-stage HCC and equivocal nodular lesions. The most striking information is that HCC associated with cirrhosis probably evolves from precancerous lesions, and well differentiated HCC further progresses to a less differentiated form (952, 1646, 1882, 1645, 81).

Histological features of small early-stage HCC

Although some small HCCs show features of classical HCCs, most less than 1.5 cm in diameter are vaguely nodular with indistinct margins macroscopically and have a uniform distribution of well differentiated cancerous tissues. They are characterized by increased cell density with increased nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio, increased staining intensity (eosinophilic or basophilic), irregular thin trabecular pattern with a frequent acinar or pseudoglandular pattern, and fatty change (959, 1324). Diffuse fatty change of tumour cells is present in approximately 40% of tumours less than 2 cm in diameter. Many portal tracts are present within the tumour nodule, and tumour cell invasion into some portal tracts can be seen. At the tumour boundary, neoplastic cells proliferate as though they are replacing normal hepatocytes ('replacing growth'), and there is no capsule formation. These small tumours may correspond to 'carcinoma in-situ' or 'microinvasive carcinoma' of the liver. They tend to preserve the underlying liver structures, including portal tracts, receive portal blood supply, and do not show tumour blushing in angiographic examinations. In contrast, classical HCCs, even if small and well differentiated, show tumour blushing without portal flow (1883). Invasion into the stromal tissue can be sometimes identified, but vascular invasion and intrahepatic metastases are exceptional (1942). Moreover, these lesions are locally curable, have a favourable long-term outcome, and can be defined clinically as 'early HCC'.

Adenomatous hyperplasia (dysplastic nodules)

This lesion is characterized by marked enlargement of individual cirrhotic nodules that show thick liver cell plates. Small nodular lesions, most of which are below 1.5 cm in size, have been noticed in the livers of patients with HCCs that have been resected surgically and in explant cirrhotic livers. The nodules show variable atypia but lack features of definite malignancy. Macroscopically, most lesions are vaguely nodular and are not much different from small, well differentiated HCC with indistinct margins; it is almost impossible to distinguish them from cancer on the one hand or from large regenerative nodules on the other hand. Microscopically, they are characterized by a moderate increase in cell density with a slightly irregular trabecular pattern. There are many portal tracts within the nodules but no invasion into the portal tracts. These nodules sometimes contain distinct, well differentiated cancer foci. Many of them gave rise to distinct HCC in clinical follow-up studies (1882, 1645) and are, therefore, considered precancerous lesions. Some of

Fig. 8.18 Adenoma. A Extensive central haemorrhage. B Benign appearing hepatocytes arranged in plates, one or two cells thick.

Fig. 8.19 A–C Atypical adenomatous hyperplasia with mild atypia and extensive fatty change.
Tumours of the liver and intrahepatic bile ducts

these nodules contain areas with a marked increase in cell density, a more irregular trabecular pattern, and frequent fatty change, characteristic of well differentiated HCC but insufficient in extent to warrant such a diagnosis. These foci have been designated adenomatous hyperplasia [1080, 806] or dysplastic nodule [64]. Additional terms used for these lesions include macroregenerative nodule, hyperplastic nodule and borderline lesions.

Morphological criteria for the differential diagnosis of adenomatous hyperplasia (dysplastic nodule, low grade), atypical adenomatous hyperplasia (dysplastic nodule, high grade) and early-stage HCC are still under discussion, mainly due to the lack of objective phenotypic or genotypic markers [1080, 64, 805].

Focal liver cell dysplasia (LCD)
Large cell dysplasia. The term liver cell dysplasia (LCD) was first coined by Anthony et al. [73] to describe a change characterized by cellular enlargement, nuclear pleomorphism and multinucleation of liver cells occurring in groups or occupying whole cirrhotic nodules. The change was found in only 1% of patients with normal livers, in 7% of patients with cirrhosis and in 65% of patients with cirrhosis and HCC. There was a strong relationship between LCD and HBsAg seropositivity [73]. They concluded that the presence of LCD identified a group of patients at high risk for development of HCC, and that such patients should be followed by serial alpha-fetoprotein determinations.

Small cell dysplasia. Watanabe et al. [2068] have expanded the original definition of LCD to include a 'small cell' variant. The nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio is increased in small cell dysplasia, the ratio being between that of liver cancer and normal hepatocytes. This is in contrast to large cell dysplasia that has normal nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio. Also, multinucleation and large nucleoli are characteristic of large cell dysplasia but not small cell dysplasia. The small dysplastic cells have more of a tendency to form small round foci than large dysplastic cells. On the basis of their morphological and morphometric studies Watanabe et al. [2068] proposed the hypothesis that small cell dysplasia, rather than large cell dysplasia, is the precancerous lesion in man.

Hepatocellular adenoma
A benign tumour composed of cells closely resembling normal hepatocytes, which are arranged in plates separated by sinusoids. On gross examination, adenomas are soft, rounded, yellow or pink masses, often with areas of necrosis, haemorrhage, and fibrosis. A fibrous capsule is uncommon. Lesions are solitary in two-thirds of cases [511]. When more than 10 lesions are encountered, a diagnosis of ‘adenomatosis’ has been recommended [511].

Adenoma is histologically composed of benign-appearing hepatocytes arranged in plates one or two cells in thickness [64, 803, 351, 71]. Portal tracts are absent; the lesion is supplied by arteries and veins. In most cases, the tumour cells are uniform in size and shape, but occasionally, mild to moderate cytological variation may be seen. Mitotic activity is almost never found. Lipofuscin, fat and clear cell change (due to water or glycogen accumulation) are often present in the cytoplasm. Haemorrhage, infarction, fibrosis, and peliosis hepatis may be seen.

The differential diagnosis may be difficult with small biopsies. Features suggesting hepatocellular carcinoma include mitoses, high nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio, and plates more than 2 cells in thickness. Loss of a normal reticulin pattern is common in HCC whereas it is preserved in hepatocellular adenoma. HCC typically also shows diffuse capillarization using

![Fig. 8.20 Focal nodular hyperplasia. A Solitary lobulated nodule with typical central stellate scar. B Masson trichrome stain shows extensive blue connective tissue component.](image1)

![Fig. 8.21 Nodular regenerative hyperplasia. A Multiple pale nodules of varying size. B Reticulin stain showing mild distortion of liver architecture.](image2)
Focal nodular hyperplasia (FNH)
A lesion composed of hyperplastic hepatic parenchyma, subdivided into nodules by fibrous septa which may form stellate scars. The majority of FNH lesions are asymptomatic. Infarction may lead to abdominal pain but rupture is rare. When more than one FNH lesion is present the patient often has other features suggesting a systemic abnormality of angiogenesis, including hepatic haemangiomata, intra-cranial lesions (vascular malformations, meningeoma, astrocytoma), and dysplasia of large muscular arteries (2054, 2055).
Most FNH lesions are solitary, firm, and lobulated nodules (Fig. 8.20). Lesions on the surface of the liver may protrude above the capsule. On cut section, they are circumscribed but not encapsulated, and paler than the surrounding liver. They typically consist of a central stellate scar surrounded by parenchymal nodules. Although most lesions are paler than the surrounding liver, a less common telangiectatic type has prominent blood-filled vascular spaces (64, 2055).
Histologically, FNH has a regular hierarchical structure defined by the arterial supply, which is usually a single artery with several orders of branching. Each terminal branch is located in the center of a 1 mm nodule. The large arteries often have degenerative changes in the media and eccentric intimal fibrosis. The arteries are found in a fibrous stroma without portal veins and usually without ducts. Proliferating ductules are usually present and may be prominent, commonly with visible features of chronic cholestasis (cholate stasis, copper accumulation) and neutrophil infiltration. Nascent FNH is a small region of hyperplasia or dilated sinusoids, recognised in the context of more definite FNH lesions. The rare telangiectatic type of FNH has a similar arterial supply but with markedly dilated sinusoids comprising at least a quarter of the lesion.
The histological differential diagnosis of FNH includes cirrhosis, in which septa contain portal areas, and hepatocellular adenoma. If the ductular component is not sampled, an unequivocal diagnosis may not be possible.

Nodular regenerative hyperplasia (NRH)
This condition is characterized by small regenerative nodules dispersed throughout the liver, associated with acinar atrophy with occlusive portal vascular lesions.
The liver has a normal weight and shape with a fine granularity of the capsular surface. The cut surface demonstrates a diffuse nodularity with most nodules measuring 1-2 mm. Occasionally, there are clusters of nodules up to several cm in diameter (64, 2056, 2053). The nodules are paler than the atrophic hepatic parenchyma which surrounds them. Microscopically, the normal architecture is mildly distorted by widespread atrophy admixed with numerous monocininar regenerative nodules. The nodules are composed of normal-appearing hepatocytes in plates 1-2 cells wide centered on portal tracts. The atrophic regions have small hepatocytes in thin trabeculae with dilated sinusoids. No significant parenchymal fibrosis is present but numerous small portal veins are obliterated.

Histological diagnosis of NRH depends on the recognition of a nodular architecture in the absence of parenchymal fibrosis. Nodularity may be suspected when there are two adjacent populations of hepatocytes that are normal and atrophic, respectively. This pattern is best appreciated on a reticulin stain. Macro-nodular, incomplete septal, or regressed cirrhosis commonly have regions with this configuration, especially in livers with healed portal vein thrombosis (1742). These forms of cirrhosis are difficult to exclude in a small biopsy.

Genetic susceptibility
Several rare inherited disorders of metabolism are associated with an increased risk of developing HCC.

Carbohydrate metabolism disorders
In glycogen storage disease (GSD), especially type 1 (323), HCC can develop within preexisting adenomatous lesions (137). Distinction between benign and malignant tumours is difficult, since GSD-associated HCCs are well differentiated, and atypical lesions (‘nodule within nodule’ pattern and Mallory bodies) are found commonly in GSD-related adenomas (137, 1527). Cirrhosis is never present.
Protein metabolism disorders
In alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency (A1ATD) (1501), only male A1ATD homozygotes are at high risk for HCC, even in the absence of cirrhosis (473). Further-more, cholangiocarcinomas and combined hepato-cellular and cholangiocarcinomas in non-cirrhotic livers of adult patients with heterozygous A1ATD of PiZ type are well documented (2207). HCC occurs in 18%-35% of patients with hereditary tyrosinaemia (2082, 1996). The non-tumourous liver is cirrhotic and often dysplastic (808). HCC has further been reported in 14% of adult-onset cases of hypercitrullinemia in the absence of cirrhosis (1324A).

Disorders of porphyrin metabolism. The prevalence of HCC in porphyria cutanea tarda (PCT) ranges from 7% to 47% (1755, 1073). Almost all HCCs occur in male patients older than 50 years with preexisting cirrhosis and a long-standing history of symptomatic PCT. The involvement of additional risk factors is likely (396). Rarely, PCT evolves as a paraneoplastic syndrome associated with HCC (1389). Other hepatic porphyrias are occasionally associated with HCC (1073, 53).

Chronic cholestatic syndromes. HCC may complicate paucity of intrahepatic bile ducts (1028, 99, 898), biliary atresia (2082), congenital hepatic fibrosis (2082), and Byler syndrome (1550).

Metal-storage diseases. The relative risk for the development of primary liver cancer in inherited haemochromatosis has been calculated as being greater than 200 (181, 1351, 487). HCC develops usually in patients with cirrhosis (403, 951), even after iron depletion (403). Iron-free foci (defined as clear-cut, sublobular, hepatocytic nodules free of iron or having significantly less iron than the surrounding parenchyma) may represent an early step of HCC in genetic haemochromatosis (403). In Wilson’s disease, HCC is present only exceptionally (293).

Hepatic vascular anomalies. Cases of HCC have been occasionally reported in hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia (831) and ataxia-telangiectasia (2083).

Extrahepatic inherited conditions.
Several cases of HCC have been reported in familial adenomatous polyposis of the colon (1000). Occasional cases have also been described in neurofibromatosis, Soto syndrome, and situs inversus (2082). Cases of hepatocellular adenomas and HCC in young patients with Fanconi anaemia have been also described (1033).

Genetics
Clonal expansion and subclonal progression during multistage carcinogenesis. Most HCCs are associated with HBV or HCV infection. Clonal expansion of hepatocytes is initiated during regeneration in damaged livers; a clonal integration pattern of HBV was identified in cirrhotic nodules (2170). Advanced HCCs often emerge as ‘nodule-in-nodule’ HCCs; the early and advanced HCC components of a ‘nodule-in-nodule’ type HCC showed identical integration patterns of HBV (1968, 1647). Ordinary HCCs with increased cell proliferation and neovascularization are subsequently formed.

TP53 mutations
Point and frameshift mutations of the TP53 tumour suppressor gene are frequent in areas with low exposure to aflatoxin B1 (1393). TP53 mutations were most frequent and were clustered in domains IV and V in poorly differentiated HCCs, but were less frequent and equally distributed in domains II to V in well or moderately differentiated HCCs in one study (1393). Analysis of ‘nodule-in-nodule’ type HCC shows that TP53 mutation is associated with the progression of HCC from an early to a more advanced stage (1392, 1391). In areas with high exposure to AFB1, mutation of the third nucleotide in codon 249 of TP53 is frequent (758, 188), suggesting that some TP53 mutations can be fingerprints of past exposure to a given carcinogen (see ‘Aetiology’, above).

HBV X
The HBV X open reading frame is frequently integrated and expressed. HBV X [MLS1] can bind to the C terminus of p53, inhibits its sequence-specific DNA binding and transcriptional activation and suppresses p53-induced apoptosis.
HBV X may affect a wide range of p53 functions and thereby contribute to the molecular pathogenesis of HCCs. HBV X further inhibits nucleotide excision repair [858].

**Oncogenes**

Mutational activation of known oncogenes is rare. Point mutations of the c-KRAS gene and coamplification of the cyclin D1 gene were detected in only 3% (1967) and 11% (1355) of HCCs, respectively. Recent findings, obtained by comparative genomic hybridization of amplified sequences mapped to 11q12, 12p11, and 14q12, may lead to the characterization of new genes involved in hepatocarcinogenesis [1163].

**Wnt pathway and beta-catenin**

In the wingless/Wnt pathway, mutations of the β-catenin gene were detected in 26-41% of HCCs [386, 760]. Nuclear accumulation of β-catenin was observed by immunohistochemistry in all HCCs with β-catenin mutations [760]. No mutation was detected in mutation cluster region of the APC gene in any of 22 HCCs analysed [760]. Deletions on chromosomes 1p, 4q, and 16p were significantly associated with the absence of β-catenin mutation, which suggests that a β-catenin-activating mutation is involved in cases without chromosomal instability [1041].

**Genetic instability and allelic loss**

Frequent allelic losses have been found at loci on 1p, 4q, 5q, 8p, 11p, 13q, 16q, and 17p by restriction fragment length polymorphism analysis [2046, 200, 1970, 2203, 546, 1759, 459, 460]. Loss of heterozygosity (LOH) on chromosome 16 was detected in 52% of informative cases [1970]. The common deleted region lay between HP (16q22.1) and CTRB (16q22.3-q23.3) loci [1970]. These losses occurred more frequently in HCCs with poor differentiation, of large size, and with metastasis, and were not detected in early-stage HCCs [1970]. LOH on chromosome 16 may be involved in enhancement of tumour aggressiveness. Recent development of microsatellite markers allows an extensive allelotypic analysis [2171, 163, 1307, 1515, 659, 108]. Detailed deletion mapping revealed that allelic loss at a 1-cM-interval flanked by D4S2921 and D4S2930 loci on 4q35 was frequent in HCCs with poor differentiation and of large size [108]. Inactivation of unidentified tumour suppressor genes within this region may contribute to progression of HCCs. Microsatellite instability is another pathway for genetic instability other than chromosomal instability. Only 11% of HCCs had replication errors in one study, and the incidence of replication errors correlated significantly with poor differentiation and portal vein involvement of HCCs [961].

**Cell cycle regulators**

The gene product of p16INK4 binds to cyclin-dependent kinase (CDK) 4 and prevents CDK4 from forming an active complex with cyclin D. p16 protein loss may contribute to both early- and late-stage hepatocarcinogenesis, because it was observed in 22% of early-stage HCCs and occurred approximately twice as often in advanced HCCs as in early-stage HCCs [763]. Neither p16 homozgyous deletion/mutation nor loss of p16 mRNA expression was observed in HCCs lacking p16 protein [763], suggesting post-transcriptional inactivation. DNA methylation around the promoter region of the p16 gene has been observed in HCC [1187]. Expression of p21WAF1/CIP1 mRNA, a universal CDK inhibitor, was reduced in 38% of HCCs [762]. p21 mRNA expression of HCCs with TP53 mutations was significantly lower than that of HCCs with wild-type TP533 [762]. p21 expression is regulated predominantly by dependence on TP53 in HCCs. mRNA expression of p27Kip1, another universal CDK inhibitor, was reduced in 52% of HCCs [764].

**Fig. 8.24** Correlation between TP53 mutation at codon 249, dietary exposure to aflatoxin B1, and regional incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC).

**Fig. 8.25** DNA sequencing autoradiographs of β-catenin mutations in HCC [760].

**Fig. 8.26** Nuclear accumulation of β-catenin protein in neoplastic hepatocytes in a HCC associated with HCV infection [760].
Growth factors

Transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) was expressed at a high level in 82% of HCCs and was associated with HBV infection (756). TGF-β expression could be part of a chain of events by which HBV contributes to the development of HCCs. TGF-β1, TGF-β2, and TGF-β3 showed marked mRNA overexpression in HCCs (818, 12). TGF-β was expressed in both tumour and stroma cells; this suggests that TGF-β may play a role in hepatocarcinogenesis through both autocrine and paracrine pathways (12). The mannose-6-phosphate / insulin-like growth factor-II receptor (M6P/IGF2R) regulates cell proliferation through interactions with TGF-β and IGF II. A study from the U.S.A. reported LOH at the M6P/IGF2R locus and mutations of the remaining allele were identified in 61% and 55% of HCCs, respectively (2149), while no M6P/IGF2R mutations were detected in HCCs from Japanese patients (2031).

Angiogenic growth factors. mRNA expression of basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) was high in HCCs (1746). Strong immunoreactivity for bFGF was localised in the progressed HCC component but not in the early-stage component of a nodule-in-nodule HCC (712). Acquisition by cancer cells of the capacity to produce bFGF could be an important event in the stepwise progression of HCC. Greater mRNA expression of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) was found in 60% of HCCs and was significantly correlated with the intensity of tumour staining in angio-grams. This suggests that VEGF contributes significantly to angiogenesis during hepatocarcinogenesis (1239, 1869).

DNA methylation

DNA methyltransferase (DNMT1) mRNA expression was significantly higher in chronic hepatitis and cirrhotic nodules than in normal livers, and was even higher in HCCs (1863). Indeed, DNA hypermethylation at D16S32, TAT, and D16S7 loci on chromosome 16 is frequently present even in chronic hepatitis and cirrhotic nodules (885). The incidence and degree of aberrant DNA methylation increased in HCCs compared with chronic hepatitis and cirrhotic nodules (885). Aberrant DNA methylation may participate even in the early developmental stages of HCCs by predisposing some loci to allelic loss or silencing specific genes (885).

DNA methylation around the promoter region of the E-cadherin tumour suppressor gene, which is located on 16q22.1, was detected in 46% of chronic hepatitis and cirrhotic nodules and in 67% of HCCs (884). DNA hypermethylation around the promoter region correlated significantly with reduced E-cadherin expression in HCCs (884). The HIC-1 (hypermethylated-in-cancer) tumour suppressor gene was identified at the D17S5 locus. DNA hypermethylation at the D17S5 locus was detected in 44% of chronic hepatitis and cirrhotic nodules and in 90% of HCCs (883). LOH at this locus, which was preceded by DNA hypermethylation, was detected in 54% of HCCs (883). The HIC-1 mRNA expression level of chronic hepatitis and cirrhotic nodules was significantly lower than that of normal livers, and that of HCCs was even lower (883). Thus, silencing of tumour suppressor genes by aberrant DNA methylation is a significant event during hepatocarcinogenesis.

Prognosis and predictive factors

The prognosis of patients with HCC is generally very poor, particularly in cases with AFP levels greater than 100 ng/ml at the time of diagnosis, partial or complete portal vein thrombosis, and presence of a TP53 mutation (45, 1861). Spontaneous regression has been reported rarely. Most studies report a five-year survival rate of less than 5% in symptomatic HCC patients. HCCs are largely resistant to radio- and chemotherapy. Long-term survival is likely only in patients with small, asymptomatic HCC that can be treated by surgical resection, including liver transplantation, or non-surgical methods, including percutaneous ethanol or acetic acid injection and percutaneous radiofrequency thermal ablation.
Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma

**Definition**
An intrahepatic malignant tumour composed of cells resembling those of bile ducts. Intrahepatic (or peripheral) cholangiocarcinoma (ICC) arises from any portion of the intrahepatic bile duct epithelium, i.e. from intrahepatic large bile ducts (the segmental and area ducts and their finer branches) or intrahepatic small bile ducts. Cholangiocarcinoma arising from the right and left hepatic ducts at or near their junction is called hilar cholangiocarcinoma and is considered an extrahepatic lesion.

**Epidemiology**

**Incidence and geographical distribution**
ICC is a relatively rare tumour in most populations but second among primary malignant liver tumours; about 15% of liver cancers are estimated to be ICC [61, 2162, 1467]. The frequency of ICC among all liver cancers ranges from 5% in males and 12% in females in Osaka, Japan, to 90% in males and 94% in females in Khon Kaen, Thailand [1467, 1471] (Fig. 8.29). The highest incidence of ICC is found in areas of Laos and North and Northeast Thailand suffering from endemic infection with the liver fluke, *Opisthorchis viverrini*. In 1997, the age standardized incidence of ICC in Khon Kaen (Thailand) was 88 per 100,000 in males and 37/10^5 in females [1467, 1471]. About 90% of the histologically confirmed cases of liver cancer in Khon Kaen are ICC, and almost all the ICC cases were found to be related to chronic *O. viverrini* infection [2006, 2007]. By contrast, infection of *O. viverrini* is continuing in Northeast Thailand, and early reports from Hong Kong have shown that 65% of patients with ICC were infected by *C. sinensis* [747]. However, the incidence of *C. sinensis* infection in the general population was also similarly high at that time [308]. ICC from this cause appears to less frequent in recent years.

**Time trends**
In both endemic and non-endemic areas, there have been no significant changes in the incidence of ICC in recent years [61]. It is less than 10 years since *O. viverrini* drug therapy was initiated; since it probably takes 30 years for ICC to complicate opisthorchiasis, the trends of ICC are probably not likely to change in the next decade (2007, 2009).

**Age and sex distribution**
Patients with ICC are elderly, with no clear sex differences. ICC occurs at rather older ages than hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) in most clinical series [1419].

**Aetiology**
Although many aetiological factors have been characterized, the cause of ICC remains speculative in many cases.

**Parasites**
*Clonorchis sinensis* parasitizes the bile ducts of millions of individuals in the Far East, particularly China and Korea (1467). Early reports from Hong Kong have shown that 65% of patients with ICC were infected by *C. sinensis* [747]. However, the incidence of *C. sinensis* infection in the general population was also similarly high at that time [308]. ICC from this cause appears to less frequent in recent years.
the evidence for the role of opisthorchiasis in the induction of ICC is compelling (2009, 2008). Carcinogenesis is probably related to the length and severity of infection, the host’s immune response, and other variables such as ingestion of dietary carcinogens, for example nitrosamines. In northeast Thailand, several carcinogenic N-nitroso compounds and their precursors exist at low levels in the daily diet (1230). In addition, endogenous nitrosamine formation by liver fluke infection has been reported (1673). Both exogeneous and in situ nitrosamine formation may lead to DNA alkylation and deamination (1346). It seems that the presence of parasites induces DNA damage and mutations as a consequence of the formation of carcinogens/free radicals and of cellular proliferation of the intrahepatic bile duct epithelium.

**Hepatolithiasis**

Hepatolithiasis (recurrent pyogenic cholangitis), which is not uncommon in the Far East, is also associated with ICC (1857, 1321). It is frequently observed in chronic cholangitis (746) but not in opisthorchiasis. Most of these cases are associated with calcium bilirubinate stones; a few cases with cholesterol stones have also been reported. Patients with intrahepatic stones and ICC have a significantly longer duration of symptoms and a higher frequency of previous biliary surgery.

**Inflammatory bowel disease and primary sclerosing cholangitis**

Patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC) and ulcerative colitis (UC) have a predisposition to develop colorectal neoplasia and also bile duct carcinoma, including ICC (672, 1993, 194, 2078).

**Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) infection**

Rare examples of ICC have a lymphoepitheliomatous, undifferentiated pattern. Clonal EBV has been found in such cases (757, 2025).

**Non-biliary cirrhosis**

There are several reports of ICC arising in non-biliary cirrhosis, particularly hepatitis virus-related liver cirrhosis (2159, 1940). HCV is frequent in such cases and ICC is usually of a smaller, mass-forming type. Such ICC and combined hepatocellular-cholangiocarcinomas share apomucin profiles (1669), suggesting that these two tumours have a similar or common histogenetic association with cirrhosis might be the result of exclusive proliferation of the cholangiocellular component of the combined type. Genotypes of hepatitis B and C viruses have been shown in cholangiocarcinoma cells (2049, 1787).

**Deposition of Thorotrast**

Thorotrast is a radioactive α-particle emitter that was widely used as a radiopaque intra-arterial contrast medium between 1930 and 1955. ICC has been recorded in many patients with prior exposure to Thorotrast. The data suggest that the chronic alpha-irradiation may be the causative factor, with latent periods ranging from 25 to 48 years.

**Biliary malformations and other lesions**

ICC may arise rarely in solitary unilocular or multiple liver cysts, congenital segmental or multiple dilatation of the bile ducts (Caroli disease), congenital hepatic fibrosis, and von Meyenburg complexes (736, 2165).

**Clinical features**

The site of the tumour, its growth pattern and the presence or absence of stricture or obstruction of the biliary tree are responsible for the variable clinical features of ICC.

**Symptoms and signs**

General malaise, mild abdominal pain and weight loss are frequent clinical symptoms. When the carcinoma infiltrates the hilar region, jaundice and cholangitis become manifest. ICCs, particularly those arising from the small bile ducts, may go unnoticed until they have attained a large size. The liver is enlarged to a lesser extent, ascites is less common, and signs of portal hypertension are absent or minimal. Patients with unrelieved obstruction of the intrahepatic large bile ducts may die from complications, e.g. liver failure or sepsis.

**Imaging**

Advanced cases of ICC show mixed growth and spreading patterns with intrahepatic metastases. Computerized tomography (CT) images of ICC usually show a lobulated or fused hypodense space-occupying lesion with peripheral enhancement, probably due to central hypocellular dense fibrosis. Secondary dilated ducts around the tumour are detectable by CT and ultrasonography. A focal area of carcinoma involving the bile duct wall is identifiable by spiral CT. Endoscopic retrograde, transhepatic or magnetic resonance cholangiography is a useful adjunct for the identification of the level of biliary obstruction and secondary bile duct dilatation. ICCs at relatively early and surgically resectable stages are classifiable into three representative types of growth patterns (1080), and these patterns, which are evaluable by imaging studies, can be useful for the preoperative staging of...
tumour extent and for designing the surgical procedure. The mass forming type is an expansile nodule and is the most common. The tumour borders between the cancerous and noncancerous portions are relatively clear. The contrast enhanced CT scan shows a low-density tumour with peripheral ring-like increased density. The periductal-infiltrating type, which is usually associated with biliary stricture, is relatively common. The tumour exhibits diffuse infiltration along the portal pedicle. This type resembles hilar or extrahepatic bile duct carcinoma. The contrast enhanced CT demonstrates a small cancerous enlargement of the portal pedicle, or a mass central to the dilated peripheral ducts. The anatomical location of the involved ducts can be evaluated by caliber changes or the rigidity of the bile duct on high-quality cholangiographic images. The intraductal growth type (intraductal papillary cholangiocarcinoma) is less common. These tumours are confined within the dilated part of an intrahepatic large bile duct, with no or mild extension beyond the bile duct walls. Some tumours of this type of ICC might have arisen from biliary papillomatosis after malignant transformation. Marked localized dilatation of the affected duct is detectable by ultrasound or CT. Cholangiography shows filling defects in the biliary tract, due to polypoid tumours and mucin.

**Macroscopy**

ICC can arise from any portion of the intrahepatic bile duct epithelium (61, 1418). Lesions are gray to gray-white, firm and solid, although some tumours show intraductal growth, sometimes with polyp formation. Typical tumours consist of variably sized nodules, usually coalescent. Portal tract infiltration is also seen. Central necrosis or scarring are common, and mucin may be visible on the cut surfaces. ICC cases involving the hepatic hilum are hardly distinguishable from hilar cholangiocarcinoma, and such cases show cholestasis, biliary fibrosis, and cholangitis with abscess formation. ICC is not often noted in a non-cirrhotic liver.

ICC in endemic areas of liver fluke infection is similar to that described in non-endemic regions; liver flukes are rarely seen nowadays due to mass treatment. In hepatolithiasis-associated ICC, the tumour tends to proliferate and spread along the stone-containing ducts. The liver lobe or segments containing stones involved by ICC are atrophic in some cases. Vascular invasion is a frequent histological finding relatively early, suggesting the development of early metastasis. The incidence of metastases in regional lymph nodes is higher than in HCC. Blood-borne spread occurs later, to the lungs in particular; other sites include bone, adrenals, kidneys, spleen, and pancreas.

**Tumour spread**

ICC shows direct spread into the surrounding hepatic parenchyma, portal pedicle and bile duct. Intrahepatic metastases develop in nearly all cases at a relatively advanced stage. Vascular invasion is a frequent histological finding relatively early, suggesting the development of early metastasis. The incidence of metastases in regional lymph nodes is higher than in HCC. Blood-borne spread occurs later, to the lungs in particular; other sites include bone, adrenals, kidneys, spleen, and pancreas.

---

**Fig. 8.32** Macroscopic features of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. A Cut surface shows massive tumour and multiple intrahepatic metastatic nodules. Surrounding liver is non-cirrhotic. B White, scar-like mass in a normal liver (mass forming types) together with dilated peripheral bile ducts. C Intraductal growth type of intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma.

**Fig. 8.33** Intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. A Well differentiated tubular adenocarcinoma. B Moderately differentiated tubular adenocarcinoma.
On rare occasions, the tumour shows extensive intraluminal spread of bile ducts throughout the liver. The tumour cells can also infiltrate into the peribiliary glands of the intrahepatic large bile ducts and their conduits. It may be difficult to distinguish this lesion from reactive proliferated peribiliary glands histologically.

**Histopathology**

Most ICCs are adenocarcinomas showing tubular and/or papillary structures with a variable fibrous stroma [326]. There is no dominant histological type of ICC in cases associated with liver flukes or hepatolithiasis when compared to those in non-endemic areas.

**Adenocarcinoma**

This common type of ICC growing in the hepatic parenchyma and portal pedicle reveals significant heterogeneity of histological features and degree of differentiation. At an early stage, a tubular pattern with a relatively uniform histological picture is frequent. Cord-like or micropapillary patterns are also seen. The cells are small or large, cuboidal or columnar, and can be pleomorphic. The nucleus is small and the nucleolus is usually less prominent than that of HCC. The majority of cells have a pale, eosinophilic or vacuolated cytoplasm; sometimes, they have a clear and abundant cytoplasm or resemble goblet cells.

ICC arising from the large intrahepatic bile ducts shows intraductal micropapillary carcinoma and in situ like spread along the biliary lumen. Once there is invasion through the periductal tissue, the lesion may be well, moderately, or poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma, with considerable desmoplasia and stenosis or obliteration of the bile duct lumen.

Infrequently, a papillary tumour growing in the duct lumen is supported by fine fibrovascular cores. Cholangiocarcinoma arising from the intrahepatic peribiliary glands [1914] mainly involves these glands, sparing the lining epithelial cells at an early stage. An abundant fibrous stroma is an important characteristic of ICC. Activated perisinusoidal cells (myofibroblasts) are incorporated into the tumour, producing extracellular matrix proteins that lead to fibrosis [1913]. Usually, the central parts of the tumour are more sclerotic and hypocellular, while the peripheral parts show more actively proliferating carcinoma cells. On rare occasions, the tumour cells are lost in a massive hyaline stroma, which may be focally calcified.

The secretion of mucus in one form or another can be demonstrated in the majority of tumours by mucicarmine, diastase-PAS and Alcian blue staining. Mucus core (MUC) proteins 1, 2, and 3 are detectable in the carcinoma cells [1264, 1670]. ICC cells can immunostain with cytokeratins 7 and 19, CEA, epithelial membrane antigen, and blood group antigens. Bile may be present occasionally in ICC as a result of destruction of the bile ducts or entrapment of non-neoplas-
tic hepatocytes or bile ductules containing bile. It is always seen at the periphery of the tumour. Bile production by tumour cells is never found.

Carcinoma cell nests with small tubular or cord-like patterns extend by compressing the hepatocytes or infiltrating along the sinusoids. Occasionally, carcinoma cells abut directly on to hepatocytes. As a result, the portal tracts are incorporated within the tumour and appear as tracts of elastic fibre-rich connective tissue. Fibrous encapsulation is not seen.

ICC frequently infiltrates portal tracts, and invades portal vessels (lymphatics, portal venules); there is also perineural invasion, particularly in the large portal tracts. Infiltrating, well-differentiated tubular carcinoma must be differentiated from the non-neoplastic pre-existing small bile ducts. The carcinoma cells infiltrate around nerve fibres and have variably-sized cancerous lumens.

**Adenosquamous and squamous carcinoma.** The former is an adenocarcinoma containing significant amounts of unequivocal squamous carcinomatous elements, i.e. keratin and/or intercellular bridges. The latter is entirely composed of squamous cell carcinoma. They are occasionally seen at advanced stages of ICC.

**Cholangiolocellular carcinoma.** The carcinoma cells are arranged as small, regular, narrow tubular structures resembling ductules or canals of Hering (1828). The cells are larger than the usual ICC.

**Mucinous carcinoma.** A predominant component of extracellular mucus (mucus lakes), usually visible to the naked eye, is present in the stroma. Carcinoma cells distended with mucus are seen floating in the mucus lakes. The histology is similar to that seen in other organs. These tumours show rapid progression clinically (1671).

**Signet-ring cell carcinoma.** A malignant tumour in which there is a predominance of discrete cells distended with mucus. ICC composed only of signet ring cells is extremely rare.

**Sarcomatous ICC.** A cholangiocarcinoma with spindle cell areas resembling spindle cell sarcoma or fibrosarcoma or with features of malignant fibrous histiocytoma. This variant may have a more aggressive behaviour. Carcinomatous foci, including squamous cell carcinoma, are scattered focally.

**Lymphoepithelioma-like carcinoma.** Two cases of undifferentiated lymphoepitheliomatous lesions with adenocarcinoma have been reported (757, 2025). In these cases, EBV-coded nuclear RNAs were demonstrable.

**Clear cell variant.** This lesion is characterized by distinct overgrowth of clear cells in an acinar or tubular pattern. The tumour cells are PAS reactive and diastase resistant, indicating the presence of mucin.

**Mucoepidermoid carcinoma.** This variant resembles the tumour arising in salivary glands.

**Differential diagnosis**

**Hepatocellular carcinoma.** Some ICCs grow in a cord-like pattern reminiscent of the trabeculae of HCC. The cords are always separated by a connective tissue stroma rather than by sinusoids; canaliculi and bile are also absent. Almost all
ICCs are diffusely positive for cytokeratin 7 and 19, whereas only a few cases of HCC are positive. The hepatocyte antigen (Dako) is expressed by HCC but not by ICC.

**Metastatic carcinoma.** ICC cannot be distinguished histologically from metastatic adenocarcinoma of biliary tract or pancreatic origin. Occasionally, dysplastic changes in neighbouring bile ducts suggest intrahepatic origin. In addition, diffuse expression of cytokeratin 20 favours metastatic adenocarcinoma, particularly from colon [1141]. While cytokeratin 7 is common in ICC, it is not so common in metastatic carcinoma.

**Sclerosing cholangitis.** Periductal spread of ICC may be difficult to distinguish from sclerosing cholangitis, particularly when only biopsy material is available. The most important criteria for the diagnosis of malignancy are severe cytological atypia, random and diffuse infiltration of the duct wall by the neoplastic cells, and perineural invasion.

**Grading**
ICC can be graded into well, moderately, and poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma according to their morphology. In the case of the common type of adenocarcinoma, well-differentiated lesions form relatively uniform tubular or papillary structures, moderately differentiated tumours show moderately distorted tubular patterns with cribriform formations and/or a cord-like pattern, while the poorly differentiated show severely distorted tubular structures with marked cellular pleomorphism.

**Precursor and benign lesions**

**Biliary intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia)** This is characterized by abnormal epithelial cells with multilayering of nuclei and micropapillary projections into the duct lumen [2078, 1322]. The abnormal cells have an increased nuclear/cytoplasmic ratio, a partial loss of nuclear polarity, and nuclear hyperchromasia. They are divisible into low-grade and high-grade lesions. Some peribiliary glands may also be dysplastic. Cell kinetic studies have disclosed proliferative activity of intraepithelial neoplasia between that of hyperplasia and ICC, and telomerase activity is demonstrable in both intraepithelial and invasive carcinoma [1915, 1440]. Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) is focally detectable in biliary intraepithelial neoplasia and more so in carcinoma [1322]. These findings support the concept of a hyperplasia-dysplasia-carcinoma sequence in the biliary tree [1989].

In liver fluke infestations, the bile ducts first show desquamation of the epithelial lining with subsequent hyperplasia, periductal fibrosis, inflammation and goblet cell metaplasia [2008, 913]. The neoplastic transformation from hyperplasia in bile ducts to ICC through dysplastic changes is demonstrable in opisthorchiasis. In hepatolithiasis, the findings are those of cholangitis, with proliferation of the biliary epithelial lining and peribiliary glandular cells, and multiple foci of biliary intraepithelial neoplasia [1323]. Hyperplasia and intraepithelial neoplasia of the duct epithelium in livers with Thorotrast-deposition and congenital biliary anomalies may be also related to the development of ICC [1626, 2165]. It has been reported in patients with PSC that biliary intraepithelial neoplasia could evolve from papillary hyperplasia [2078, 1107]. However, recent experience at orthotopic liver transplantation of PSC has detected hardly any in situ or invasive neoplastic foci.

**Biliary papillomatosis**
Dilated intrahepatic and extrahepatic bile ducts are filled with papillary or villous excrescences, which microscopically are papillary or villous adenomas with delicate fibrovascular stalks covered with a columnar or glandular epithelium [806, 351]. They are soft and white, red or tan. In some cases, there are variable degrees of cellular atypia and multilayering of nuclei. Occasionally, foci of in situ or invasive carcinoma are encountered [1340].

**Von Meyenburg complex (biliary microhamartoma)**
The lesions are small, up to several mm in diameter. They are usually multiple and...
are adjacent to a portal area. Within a fibrous or hyalinized stroma, they present as irregular or round ductal structures that appear somewhat dilated and have a flattened or cuboidal epithelium. The lumina contain proteinaceous or bile-stained secretion. These lesions carry little or no malignant potential [736, 673].

**Bile duct adenoma (BDA)**

BDA is usually single and subcapsular, and is white and well circumscribed but non-encapsulated. BDA is usually less than 1 cm in size, and is composed of a proliferation of small, normal appearing ducts with cuboidal cells that have regular nuclei and lack dysplasia [44]. These ducts have no or little lumen and can elaborate mucin. Their fibrous stroma shows varying degrees of chronic inflammation and collagenization. Enclosed in the lesion are normally spaced portal tracts. They are considered to be a focal reaction to injury. BDA and peribiliary glands share common antigens, suggesting a common line of differentiation [136]. Occasionally, BDA contains periductular endocrine cell clusters [1384].

In addition, there are several atypical BDA with a neoplastic nature. Biliary adenofibroma is characterized by a complex tubulocystic biliary epithelium without mucin production, together with abundant fibroblastic stromal components [1972]. Its expansive growth, and foci of epithelial tufting, cellular atypia and mitoses favor a neoplastic process.

**Intrahepatic peribiliary cysts**

In chronic advanced liver disease and biliary anomalies, and also in normal livers, multiple cysts may be seen around the intrahepatic large bile ducts [1319, 1320]. They are visible by ultrasound or CT. These cysts are derived from peribiliary glands and should be differentiated from ICC clinically and histologically.

**Diffuse and multifocal hyperplasia of peribiliary glands**

Diffuse, severe, macroscopically recognizable dilatation and hyperplasia of the peribiliary glands of intrahepatic and extrahepatic bile ducts is a rare condition [1319, 437]. Some ducts may be cystically dilated. Lack of familiarity with this lesion could lead to an erroneous diagnosis of a well-differentiated cholangiocarcinoma. It occurs in apparently normal livers and also in acquired liver diseases.

**Molecular genetics and genetic susceptibility**

Mutations of the RAS and TP53 genes are the most common genetic abnormalities identified in ICC. The incidence of KRAS mutations ranges from 100% and 60% among British [1054] and Japanese patients respectively [1878, 1402], to 4% among Thai patients [1510]. Taiwanese and Korean patients show an intermediate frequency [1037, 887]. The most frequently mutated position in the KRAS
gene is codon 12 involving GGT (glycine) to GAT (aspartic acid). Less frequent mutations have been identified in codon 13, involving GGT (glycine) to GAT (aspartic acid) and codon 61, involving CAA (glutamine) to CAC (histidine) \cite{1402, 1969, 1511}.

TP53 mutations occur between exons 5 to 8, the most common change being G to A transitions \cite{887, 1511, 907, 1848}. The mutations are random with no specific hot spot, being mostly missense mutations and less frequently nonsense mutations \cite{887}. p53 protein is immunohistochemically detectable in carcinoma cells in more than 70% of ICC cases.

KRAS and TP53 mutations correlate with the gross morphology of ICC \cite{1969, 1401}; a higher prevalence of KRAS gene alterations is found in the periductal and spicular forming infiltrating subtype compared to the slower growing, non-invasive mass-forming type. TP53 mutations are prominent in the mass-forming type of ICC.

The variable incidence of KRAS mutations in different populations of ICC may reflect different aetiologies. O. viverrini infection and increased consumption of nitrates and nitrites are contributing factors in Thailand where the incidence of KRAS abnormalities is low \cite{2025, 1446}. Overexpression of c-erbB-2 occurs in one fourth to about two thirds of carcinoma of the biliary tract, and may be used as a phenotypic marker for neoplastic transformation \cite{1912}. Membranous expression of E-cadherin, alpha-catenin, and beta-catenin is reduced in a majority of ICC and this down-regulation correlates with ICC at high-grade \cite{91}.

Overexpression of MET, the receptor for hepatocytes growth factor, occurs in ICC and correlates with tumour differentiation, being poorly expressed in poorly differentiated tumours \cite{1912}. It also correlates with the markedly increased proliferation indices seen in precancerous glands and cholangiocarcinoma. Biliary epithelial cells are continuously exposed to genotoxic insults such as chronic inflammation and hydrophobic bile acids, predisposing to oncogenic mutations. Progression to malignancy may be due, in part, to failure in activating apoptosis and deleting cells with genetic damages \cite{263}. The anti-apoptotic protein bcl-2, is overexpressed in ICC \cite{281} and telomerase activity is detectable in carcinoma cells of almost all ICC cases.

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

Early detection of ICC is difficult, and the overall prognosis after resection is poor compared with that of HCC. Lymph node spread, vascular invasion, positive margins and bilobar distribution are associated with a high recurrence rate and a poor prognosis. One study found the 5-year survival rate was 39% in patients with mass-forming tumours and 69% for intraductal tumours while no patients with mass-forming plus periductal-infiltrating tumours survived > 5 years \cite{2161}.

Histologically, squamous cell or sarcomatous elements and mucinous variants confer a poor prognosis \cite{1312, 1313}. Patients with well differentiated ICC seem to survive longer than those with moderately or poorly differentiated ones. A few cases of well differentiated ICC with bland features resembling bile duct adenoma show a good prognosis \cite{522}. MUC 2 protein expression is relatively frequent in well differentiated ICC, suggesting a somewhat more favourable prognosis \cite{1915}.

Lymph node metastasis is a significant prognostic factor \cite{2160}. The 5-year survival rate in patients with lymph node metastases is significantly lower than that in patients without lymph node metastasis (51%). In liver fluke-associated ICC, survival after right hepatectomy is better than after left hepatectomy, and is not associated with tumour size \cite{1990}. In addition, multiple tumour masses have a poor prognosis. Concomitant hepatolithiasis prevents precise diagnosis preoperatively, and precipitates biliary sepsis. Long-term post-surgical survival of patients with stone-containing ICC compared to ICC alone is controversial \cite{291, 1849}. ICC found in non-biliary cirrhosis is usually detectable as a small nodule during follow-up of hepatitis virus-related cirrhosis, and is treatable with hepatectomy \cite{2159}.
**Combined hepatocellular and cholangiocarcinoma**

**Definition**
A rare tumour containing unequivocal elements of both hepatocellular and cholangiocarcinoma that are intimately admixed.
This tumour should be distinguished from separate hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocarcinoma arising in the same liver (605). Such tumours may be widely separated or close to each other (‘collision tumour’).

**Epidemiology**
This tumour type comprises less than 1% of all liver carcinomas. There are similar geographical distribution differences as for hepatocellular carcinoma and a similar age and sex distribution.

**Tumour spread and staging**
Some studies have found a higher frequency of lymph node metastasis compared with HCC.

**Macroscopy**
Gross inspection does not show significantly different morphology compared to hepatocellular carcinoma. In tumours with a major cholangiocarcinomatous component with fibrous stroma, the cut surface is firm.

**Histopathology**
Combined hepatocellular and cholangiocarcinoma is the term preferred for a tumour containing both hepatocellular and distinct or separate cholangiocarcinoma. The presence of both bile and mucus should be sought in the combined tumour. This category should not be used for tumours in which either form of growth is insufficiently differentiated for positive identification.
Hepatocytes preferentially express cytokeratins 8 and 18 and, like duct epithelial cells, cytokeratins 7 and 19. However, the different patterns of expression are not as clear-cut in these tumours. For practical purposes, demonstration of bile canaliculi by polyclonal CEA (mixed biliary glycoproteins) combined with Hep Par immunoeexpression is sufficient for the diagnosis of a hepatocellular carcinomatous component, and that of neutral epithelial mucin by the PAS-diastase reaction for the diagnosis of a cholangiocarcinomatous component (1046, 1456, 667).

**Prognostic factors**
Some authors have reported patients with combined hepatocellular and cholangiocarcinoma having a worse prognosis as compared with patients with HCC.

---

**Fig. 8.42** Combined hepatocellular carcinoma and cholangiocarcinoma arising in non-cirrhotic liver tissue in a patient with heterozygous Piz type alpha-1 antitrypsin deficiency. A Pale, homogeneous cut surface. B Microscopic, showing glandular areas.

**Fig. 8.43** Combined hepatocellular and cholangiocellular carcinoma. A Microtrabecular HCC and cholangiocellular carcinoma with desmoplastic response. B Border zone between HCC and cholangiocarcinoma.
Bile duct cystadenoma and cystadenocarcinoma

Definition
A cystic tumour either benign (cystadenoma) or malignant (cystadenocarcinoma), lined by epithelium with papillary infoldings that may be mucus-secreting or, less frequently, serous. Lesions arise from ducts proximal to the hilum of the liver. They differ from tumours that arise in cystic congenital malformation and in parasitic infections and hepatolithiasis.

Epidemiology
Bile duct cystadenoma and cystadenocarcinoma are rare (809). Cystadenoma is seen almost exclusively in females, with cystadenocarcinoma appearing equally in males and females. The average age of patients is 50-60 years.

Clinical features
Patients often present with abdominal pain and mass. A few patients have jaundice. Elevated serum levels of tumour marker CA 19-9 may occur. Imaging techniques show multilocular cystic tumour(s), occasionally with tiny papillary folds in the cystic wall.

Macroscopy
The cysts are usually multilocular and typically range from 5 to 15 cm diameter (809). In cystadenocarcinoma, a large papillary mass may occur as well as solid areas of grey-white tumour in a thickened wall.

Tumour spread and staging
Cystadenocarcinomas show intrahepatic spread and metastasis to regional lymph nodes in the hepatoduodenal ligament. Distant metastases occur most frequent in the lungs, the pleura and the peritoneum. Staging is performed according to the TNM Classification of liver tumours (66).

Histopathology
Cystadenomas are usually multilocular and are well defined by a fibrous capsule, which may contain smooth muscle fibres. The contents of the locules are either thin, opalescent or glairy fluid, or mucinous semisolid material. Two histological variants are recognized. The mucinous type is more common and is lined by columnar, cuboidal, or flattened mucus-secreting epithelial cells resting on a basement membrane, papillary or papillary projections may be present. About 5% of the tumours reveal neuroendocrine differentiation, as identified by expression of chromogranin and synaptophysin. Subadjacent to the basement membrane is a cellular, compacted mesenchymal stroma, which in turn is surrounded by looser fibrous tissue. This mesenchymal component is seen only in females and has been likened to ovarian stroma. The stromal cells express vimentin, and there are many cells that express smooth muscle actin. A xan-
thogranulomatous reaction, with foam cells, cholesterol clefts and pigmented lipofuscin-containing macrophages, may be present in the cyst wall. The *serous* type consists of multiple, small locules lined by a single layer of cuboidal cells with clear cytoplasm containing glyco-
gen. The cells rest on a basement membrane but are not surrounded by the mesenchymal stroma typical of the mucinous variety. Squamous metaplasia may also occur. *Cystadenocarcinomas* are usually multilocular and contain mucoid fluid. Malignant change may not involve all of the epithelium lining the cyst; it is usually multifocal. The tumours are so well defined that complete removal can usually be achieved with good prognosis. Differentiation from intrahepatic bile duct cystadenoma depends on the demonstration of cytological (particularly nuclear) atypia, mitosis, and invasion of the underlying stroma.

Some bile duct cystadenocarcinomas may be misdiagnosed as bile duct cystadenomas because insufficient sampling results in tumour morphology showing no cytological features of malignancy or invasion of the underlying stroma (351, 809, 1268, 2096).

**Prognostic factors**

The prognosis of patients with biliary duct cystadenocarcinomas is good if a curative resection is possible. The course of patients with unresectable tumours seems to be better than of patients with cholangiocarcinoma (71).
Hepatoblastoma

Definition
A malignant embryonal tumour with divergent patterns of differentiation, ranging from cells resembling fetal epithelial hepatocytes, to embryonal cells, and differentiated tissues including osteoid-like material, fibrous connective tissue and striated muscle fibers.

Epidemiology
Hepatoblastoma is the most frequent liver tumour in children. Four percent of hepatoblastomas are present at birth, 68% in the first two years of life and 90% by five years of age. Only 3% are seen in patients over 15 years of age. A recent increase in the incidence of tumours in infants with birth weights below 1500 grams has been reported [776, 777, 1899]. There is a male predominance of 1.5:1 to 2:1, but no racial predilection.

Localization
Hepatoblastomas occur as a single mass in 80% of cases, involving the right lobe in 57%, the left lobe in 15% and both lobes in 27% of patients [1838]. Multiple masses, seen in the other 20% of cases, may occur in either or both lobes.

Clinical features
Hepatoblastomas are often noted by a parent or physician as an enlarging abdomen in the infant that may be accompanied by weight loss or anorexia. Less frequently nausea, vomiting, and abdominal pain are present. Jaundice is seen in 5% of cases. Rarely, tumour cells may produce human chorionic gonadotrophin, leading to precocious puberty with pubic hair, genital enlargement and deepening voice, noted most prominent-ly in young boys. Hepatoblastoma is accompanied by anemia in 70% of cases and by thrombocytosis in 50%, with platelet counts exceeding 800 x 10^9/L in nearly 30% of cases [1717]. Alpha fetoprotein (AFP) is elevated in about 90% of patients at the time of diagnosis. The levels of AFP parallel the course of the disease, falling to normal levels after complete removal of the tumour and rising with recurrence of the lesion. AFP levels may be normal or only slightly elevated with small cell undifferentiated hepatoblastoma. Caution must be taken in evaluating the levels of AFP in younger infants since the ‘adult’ level of AFP (< 25ng/mL) is not reached until approximately six months of age. Other laboratory abnormalities can include elevated levels of serum cholesterol, bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase, and aspartate aminotransferase [10].

Imaging
Computed tomography (CT) shows single or multiple masses within the liver, which in 50% of cases display calcification [1233]. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) along with CT can help differentiate hepatoblastoma from infantile haemangioendothelioma, mesenchymal hamar-toma, and hepatocellular carcinoma by demonstrating cystic or vascular features peculiar to each lesion [1999]. MRI may also be used to characterize epithelial and mesenchymal components of hepatoblastoma [1533].

Macroscopy
Hepatoblastomas vary in size from 5 to 22 cm in diameter and from 150 to 1,400 g in weight. Single and multiple lesions may be well circumscribed, the edge of the lesion being separated from the normal liver by an irregular pseudocapsule. Pure fetal hepatoblastomas have the tan-brown colour of normal liver, while mixed hepatoblastomas display a variety of colours from brown to green to white. The lesions are often nodular and bulge from the cut surface. Areas of necrosis and haemorrhage are usually present and may appear as soft or gelatinous, brown to red tissue [1837].

Tumour spread
At clinical manifestation, 40-60% of hepatoblastomas are either very large or involve both lobes to the extent that they are considered unresectable [1839]. Preoperative chemotherapy, however, reduces the size of the lesion in nearly 85% of these patients to a size that renders it resectable. Tumour spread includes local extension into the hepatic
veins and inferior vena cava. The lung is the most frequent site of metastases; approximately 10-20% of patients have pulmonary metastases when first diagnosed. Hepatoblastomas also spread to bone, brain, ovaries, and the eye (179, 1600, 619, 463).

Histopathology
Hepatoblastomas display a distinct variety of histological patterns that may be present in varying proportions. Some tumours are composed entirely of uniform fetal epithelial cells or small undifferentiated cells, while others contain a variety of tissue types including hepatic fetal epithelial and embryonal cells, fibrous connective tissue, osteoid-like material, skeletal muscle fibers, nests of squamous epithelial cells, and cells with melanin pigment.

Pure fetal epithelial differentiation
Accounting for nearly one third of cases, the fetal epithelial pattern is composed of thin trabeculae of small cuboidal cells resembling the hepatocytes of the developing fetal liver. These cells contain a small round nucleus with fine nuclear chromatin and an indistinct nucleolus. The cytoplasm varies from finely granular to clear, reflecting variable amounts of glycogen and lipid which can impart a ‘light and dark’ pattern to the lesion when viewed at lower magnifications. Canalliculi may be seen between hepatocytes of the 2-3 cell layer trabeculae, but only rarely is bile stasis present. In biopsies taken before preoperative chemotherapy, foci of extramedullary haematopoiesis (EMH) composed of clusters of erythroid and myeloid precursors may be present in the sinusoids (2023). Sinusoids are lined by endothelial and Kupffer cells which show a more diffuse staining with UEA-1 and anti-CD34 than the focal staining of the sinusoidal endothelial cells of normal liver (1630). The fetal phenotype has been significantly associated with both diploid DNA nuclear content and low proliferative activity assessed by flow cytometry and PCNA labeling index (1640).

Combined fetal and embryonal epithelial
Approximately 20% of cases display a pattern combining fetal epithelial cells and sheets or clusters of small, ovoid to angulated cells with scant amounts of dark granular cytoplasm surrounding a nucleus with increased nuclear chromatin. The cells display little cohesiveness but may cluster into pseudorosette, glandular or acinar structures. These small, round, blue cells resemble the blastemal cells seen in nephroblastomas, neuroblastomas and other ‘embryonal’ tumours in children. While often intermixed with the fetal epithelial cells, the foci of embryonal cells, which are devoid of glycogen and lipid, can be identified by their absence of staining with PAS or oil red-O stains. Mitotic activity is more pronounced in the embryonal areas, and associated with a low TGF-alpha expression. EMH, in the absence of preoperative chemotherapy, may also be noted (925).

Macrotubular
In about 3% of cases of fetal or fetal and embryonal epithelial hepatoblastomas, areas containing broad trabeculae (6-12 or more cells in thickness) are present. These macrotubulara are composed of fetal and embryonal epithelial cells and a third, larger cell type characterized by more abundant cytoplasm and larger nuclei. Although the trabeculae resemble those seen in the pseudoglandular type of hepatocellular carcinoma, the cells display only mild hyperchromasia and anisocytosis, and mitotic activity is low. The term ‘macrotubular’ is applied to only those cases in which macrotubulara are a prominent feature of the lesion. If only an isolated focus is present, the
Tumours of the liver and intrahepatic bile ducts

Classification is based on the epithelial or mixed epithelial/mesenchymal components present.

**Small cell undifferentiated**

Hepatoblastomas composed entirely of noncohesive sheets of small cells resembling the small blue cells of neuroblastoma, Ewing sarcoma, lymphoma, and rhabdomyosarcoma are called small cell undifferentiated hepatoblastomas and amount to about 3% of the tumours. This type is believed to represent the least differentiated form of hepatoblastoma.

While often difficult to identify as hepatic in origin, the presence of small amounts of glycogen, lipid and bile pigment, along with cytoplasmic cytokeratin, helps separate this lesion from metastatic small cell tumours. The cells are arranged as solid masses with areas of cellular pyknosis and necrosis and high mitotic activity. Sinusoids are present but decreased in amount compared to the fetal epithelial pattern, and there is pronounced intracellular expression of extracellular matrix proteins and large numbers of fibers immunoreactive for collagen type III.

**Mixed epithelial and mesenchymal**

The largest number of hepatoblastomas (44%) display a pattern combining fetal and embryonal epithelial elements with primitive mesenchyme and mesenchymally derived tissues. Of these mixed tumours, 80% have only immature and

---

**Fig. 8.50** Pure fetal epithelial hepatoblastoma. Variable concentrations of glycogen and lipid within tumour cells create dark and light areas.

**Fig. 8.51** Pure fetal hepatoblastoma. A Cuboidal cells form trabeculae. B Immunoreactivity for alpha-fetoprotein is present in most tumour cells. A cluster of hematopoietic cells is present at lower center.

**Fig. 8.52** Fetal and embryonal epithelial hepatoblastoma. Fetal epithelial cells with a high cytoplasmic lipid concentration are separated by a band of fibrous connective tissue from a vascular mass of embryonal cells.

**Fig. 8.53** Fetal and embryonal hepatoblastoma. Embryonal epithelial cells occur singly and in gland-like structures.
mature fibrous tissue, osteoid-like tissue and cartilaginous tissue, in addition to the epithelial cells. The other 20% contain additional elements.

The mesenchymal elements of the ‘simple’ mixed tumour are interspersed with the fetal and embryonal epithelial elements. The primitive mesenchymal tissue consists of a light myxomatous stroma containing large numbers of spindle-shaped cells with elongate nuclei. The cells may display a parallel orientation with collagen fibers and cells resembling young fibroblasts. More mature fibrous septa with well differentiated fibroblasts and collagen may also be seen.

Islands of osteoid-like tissue composed of a smooth eosinophilic matrix containing lacunae filled with one or more cells are the hallmark of the mixed lesion. Rarely, they are the only ‘mesenchymal’ component noted in a predominantly fetal epithelial hepatoblastoma. In fact, the ‘osteoid’ material is positive for alpha 1-antitrypsin, alpha 1-antichymotrypsin, alpha fetoprotein, carcinoembryonic antigen, chromogranin A, epithelial membrane antigen, vimentin and S-100 protein, suggesting an origin from epithelial cells {10, 2058, 1629}. The cells within the lacunae, while ‘osteoblast-like’ with angulated borders, abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm and one or more round or oval nuclei, may in some areas blend with adjacent areas of embryonal epithelial cells, further supporting their epithelial origin. Cartilaginous material may also be present.

**Mixed with teratoid features**

In addition to the features noted in the ‘simple’ mixed epithelial/mesenchymal hepatoblastoma, about 20% of lesions will display additional features, including striated muscle, bone, mucinous epithelium, stratified squamous epithelium, and melanin pigment {1839}. These tissues may occur separately or be admixed with others. It is important to differentiate these teratoid features from a true teratoma, which does not contain fetal and embryonal epithelial hepatoblastoma areas. There is, however, a single case report of a discrete cystic teratoma contiguous to a hepatoblastoma [331].

**Staging**

These is no official TNM classification for hepatoblastoma but a TNM-type system has been proposed [332]. The Children’s Cancer Study Group (CCSG) classification is widely used. While 40-60% of patients are considered inoperable at the time they are first seen and 10-20% have pulmonary metastases, preoperative chemotherapy and transplantation for the more extensive lesions have resulted in resectability for nearly 90% of cases.

**Precursor lesions and benign tumours**

Precursor lesions of hepatoblastoma have not been identified, but hepatoblastoma must be differentiated from other liver tumours and pseudotumours that occur in the same age period. Infantile haemangioendothelioma, the most commonly occurring benign tumour of the liver, is seen almost exclusively in the first year of life and presents as an asymptomatic mass or, less frequently, as congestive heart failure due to rapid shunting of blood through the liver [1708]. MRI and arteriography are helpful in establishing the diagnosis. Mesenchymal hamartoma, another benign lesion, occurs during the first 2-3
Tumours of the liver and intrahepatic bile ducts

years of life and presents as a rapidly enlarging mass due to accumulation of fluid within cysts formed in the mesenchymal portion of the lesion (1841). CT and MRI are useful in defining the cystic nature of the lesion. Focal nodular hyperplasia and nodular regenerative hyperplasia may be seen in the first few years of life but are more common in older children (1839). Hepatocellular adenoma is rarely seen in the first 5-10 years of life, but may be difficult to differentiate from a pure fetal epithelial hepatoblastoma.

Genetic susceptibility
Congenital anomalies are noted in approximately 5% of patients (Table 8.04) and include renal malformations such as horseshoe kidney, renal dysplasia and duplicated ureters, gastrointestinal malformations such as Meckel diverticulum, inguinal hernia and diaphragmatic hernia, and other disparate malformations such as absent adrenal gland and heterotopic lung tissue. Other syndromes with an increased incidence of hepatoblastoma include Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, trisomy 18, trisomy 21, Acardia syndrome, Goldenhar syndrome, Frader Will syndrome, and type 1a glycogen storage disease (1885).

Hepatoblastoma and familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP) are associated due to germline mutation of the adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) gene. FAP kindreds include patients with hepatoblastoma who have an APC gene mutation at the 5' end of the gene (267, 578). Alterations in APC have also been noted in cases of hepatoblastoma in non-familial adenomatous polyposis patients (1390).

Molecular genetics
Cytogenetic abnormalities include trisomy for all or parts of chromosome 2, trisomy for chromosome 20 and loss of heterozygosity (LOH) for the telomeric portion of 11p (11p15.5). The material lost on 11p is always of maternal origin (43). LOH has also been observed on the short and long arms of chromosome 1 with a random distribution of parental origin for chromosome arm 1p and a paternal origin for chromosome arm 1q (970). TP53 overexpression has been described in several cases, but TP53 mutations in exons 5 to 9 are infrequent (1406). Increased copy numbers of c-met and K-sam proto-oncogenes and cyclin D1 genes have been described in a case of hepatoblastoma in an adult patient (977).

The presence of oval cell antigen has been demonstrated in hepatoblastomas, which supports the stem cell origin of these tumours (1631).
Prognosis and predictive factors
Prognosis is directly affected by the ability to resect the lesion entirely, i.e. to attain Stage I or II following the initial surgery (332, 446, 648, 2024). Chemotherapy and transplantation have allowed resectability in 90% of cases, increasing the overall survival to 65-70%.

Survival in Stage I is nearly 100% and Stage II survival approaches 80%. AFP levels are useful in predicting outcome by observing their response to surgery and chemotherapy (1997). AFP levels of 100 to 1,000,000 ng/mL at initial diagnosis are associated with a better prognosis than if they are < 100 or > 1,000,000ng/mL. Other factors positively influencing prognosis include tumour confined to one lobe, fetal epithelial growth pattern, and multifocal dissemination (rather than unifocal growth pattern in the liver with distant metastases and vascular invasion) (2022).
Lymphoma of the liver

A. Wotherspoon

Definition
Primary lymphoma of the liver is defined as an extranodal lymphoma arising in the liver with the bulk of the disease localized to this site. Contiguous lymph node involvement and distant spread may be seen but the primary clinical presentation is in the liver, with therapy directed to this site.

Epidemiology
Primary lymphoma of the liver is rare (796). It is mainly a disease of white middle aged males (1043, 1217) although an occasional case has been reported in childhood (1557). Most are B-cell lymphomas. Primary hepatosplenic T-cell lymphomas have a different distribution. Patients are almost always male (M:F approximately 5:1) but are usually younger with a mean age of 20 years (range 8-68 years) (334).

In contrast to primary lymphoma, secondary liver infiltration is a frequent occurrence, being present in 80-100% of cases of chronic leukaemia, 50-60% of cases of non-Hodgkin lymphoma and approximately 30% of cases of multiple myeloma (2042, 261).

Aetiology
A proportion of cases are associated with hepatitis B virus infection with and without mixed cryoglobulinaemia (390, 56, 1257, 90, 371, 1625, 311). Other lymphomas have been reported arising within a background of hepatitis B virus infection (1441, 1183), HIV infection (1680, 1516) and primary biliary cirrhosis (1535).

Clinical features
The most frequent presenting symptoms are right upper abdominal/epigastric pain or discomfort, weight loss and fever (1043, 1217). Most cases are solitary or multiple masses within the liver which may be misdiagnosed as a primary liver tumour or metastatic cancer (1043, 1217). Some cases have been reported with diffuse infiltration of the liver associated with hepatomegaly but without a discrete mass, simulating hepatic inflammation (668).

Hepatosplenic T-cell lymphomas present with hepatosplenomegaly, usually without peripheral lymphadenopathy and without lymphocytosis. There is almost always thrombocytopenia and most patients are anaemic. Liver function tests are usually abnormal with moderate elevation of levels of transaminases and alkaline phosphatase. Serum lactate dehydrogenase level may be very high (334).

Histopathology
B-cell lymphoma
The majority of primary hepatic lymphomas are of diffuse large B-cell type with sheets of large cells with large nuclei and prominent nucleoli. Phenotypically these characteristically express the pan B-cell markers CD20 and CD79a.

Occasional cases of Burkitt lymphoma have been described (759) in which the morphology is typical of Burkitt lymphoma encountered elsewhere in the digestive tract. Immunophenotypically the cells express CD20, CD79a and CD10. They are generally negative with antibodies to bcl-2 protein.

Low-grade B-cell lymphomas of MALT type have also been described. These are characterized by a dense lymphoid infiltrate within the portal tracts. The atypical lymphoid cells have centrocyte-like cell morphology and surround reactive germinal centres. Lymphoepithelial lesions are formed by the centrocyte-like cells and the bile duct epithelium, and these may be highlighted by staining with anti-cytokeratin antibodies. Nodules of normal liver may be entrapped within the tumour. The cells express pan-B-cell markers CD20 and CD79a and are negative for CD5, CD10 and CD23. There is no expression of cyclinD1 (797, 1143, 923).

Secondary involvement of the liver by chronic lymphocytic leukaemia and B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma tends to show a distribution involving the portal triads although nodular infiltration may also be seen with non-Hodgkin lymphoma and multiple myeloma (2042).

Hepatosplenic T-cell lymphoma
This is characterized by infiltration of the sinusoids by a monomorphic population of medium sized cells with a moderate amount of eosinophilic cytoplasm. The nuclei are round or slightly indented with moderately dispersed chromatin and contain small, usually basophilic, nucleoli. There may be mild sinusoidal dilation and there are occasional pseudo-peliotic lesions. Perisinusoidal fibrosis may be present. Portal infiltration is variable. A similar sinusoidal pattern of infiltration is seen in the spleen and bone marrow both of which are usually involved by the lymphoma at diagnosis (486, 334).

The cells are usually immunoreactive for CD2, CD3, CD7 and the cytotoxic granule related protein TIA-1. There is usually no expression of CD5. The majority of cases are CD4+/CD8+ although some are CD4-/CD8- (486, 334). A CD4+ variant has been described very infrequently (771). There is variable expression of CD16 and CD56. All cases are negative for βF1 and positive with antibodies for the T-cell receptor γ.

Genetics
Hepatosplenic T-cell lymphoma exhibits rearrangement of the T-cell receptor γ gene. EBV sequences have not been detected (334). Cytogenetic studies have shown isochromosome 7q in a number of cases and in some this has been present as the sole cytogenetic abnormality (524, 48).

Prognosis
The prognosis of primary hepatic lymphoma is generally poor. Chemotherapy or radiotherapy alone has been reported to be ineffective but combination modalities, including surgery in resectable cases, can give relatively good results. (1043, 1217). Hepatosplenic T-cell lymphomas are very aggressive, with a mean survival of 1 year (334) although the CD4+ subtype may be associated with a slightly longer survival (771).
Mesenchymal tumours of the liver

**Definition**
Benign and malignant tumours arising in the liver, with vascular, fibrous, adipose and other mesenchymal tissue differentiation.

**ICD-O codes**
ICD-O codes, terminology, and definitions largely follow the WHO ‘Histological Typing of Soft Tissue Tumours’ (2086).

**Imaging**
Imaging studies establish the presence of a space-occupying lesion or lesions in the liver, and may provide a diagnosis or differential diagnosis (1565). Biopsy of a mass is, however, needed for a definitive diagnosis (906).

**Mesenchymal hamartoma**
Mesenchymal hamartoma is a ‘tumour malformation’ that develops in utero. It accounts for 8% of all liver tumours and pseudotumours from birth to 21 years of age, but during the first two years of life it represents 12% of all hepatic tumours and pseudotumours, and for 22% of the benign neoplasms (1839). It usually manifests in the first two years of life and there is a slight male predominance. Lesions involve the right lobe in 75% of cases, the left lobe in 22% and both lobes in 3%.

Presentation is typically with abdominal swelling, but rapid accumulation of fluid in the tumour can cause sudden enlargement of the abdomen (1841). Macroscopically, it is usually a single mass that can attain a large size (up to 30 cm or more). Mesenchymal hamartoma has an excellent prognosis after resection. The fate of untreated lesions is not known but there is no convincing evidence of malignant transformation.

**Histopathology.** This tumour-like lesion is composed of loose connective tissue and epithelial ductal elements in varying proportions. Grossly, the cut surfaces exhibit solid, pink-tan areas and cysts containing a clear fluid. Histologically, the connective tissue is typically loose and oedematous with a matrix of acid mucopoly-

**Table 8.05**
Presentation of mesenchymal tumours of the liver.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode of Presentation</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Asymptomatic (incidental finding)</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper abdominal mass +/- hepatomegaly</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sudden increase in size of tumour</td>
<td>Mesenchymal hamartoma, cavernous haemangioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Febrile illness with weight loss</td>
<td>Inflammatory pseudotumour, embryonal sarcoma, angiosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute abdominal crisis from rupture</td>
<td>Cavernous haemangioma, angiosarcoma, epithelioid haemangioendothelioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budd-Chiari syndrome</td>
<td>Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congestive heart failure</td>
<td>Infantile haemangioendothelioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac tumour syndrome</td>
<td>Embryonal sarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consumption coagulopathy</td>
<td>Cavernous haemangioma, infantile haemangioendothelioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycaemia</td>
<td>Solitary fibrous tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portal hypertension</td>
<td>Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma, inflammatory pseudotumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver failure</td>
<td>Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma, angiosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstructive jaundice</td>
<td>Inflammatory pseudotumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lung metastases</td>
<td>Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma, angiosarcoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
saccharide, or it is collagenous and arranged concentrically around the ducts. Fluid accumulation leads to separation of the fibres with formation of lymphangioma-like areas and larger cavities. The epithelial component consists of bile ducts that may be tortuous and occasionally dilated. The ducts often are arranged in a ductal-plate-malformation pattern. Islets of liver cells without an acinar architecture may be present. Numerous arteries and veins are scattered throughout, as are foci of extramedullary haematopoiesis.

**Infantile haemangioendothelioma**

This lesion is defined as a benign tumour composed of vessels lined by plump endothelial cells, intermingled with bile ducts, that are set in a fibrous stroma. Infantile haemangioendothelioma accounts for about one fifth of all liver tumours and pseudotumours from birth to 21 years of age. It usually presents in the first two years of life, when it represents 40% of all tumours and pseudotumours and 70% of the benign ones [1839]. It occurs more frequently in females (63%) than in males. Infantile haemangioendothelioma is a localized 'tumour malformation' that develops in utero. There may be a variety of associated congenital anomalies, including hemihypertrophy and Cornelia de Lange syndrome. Patients may develop congestive heart failure or consumption coagulopathy, with or without an abdominal mass [397, 1708], and about 10% have haemangiomas of the skin. Grossly, infantile haemangioendothelioma forms a single large mass (55%) or involves the entire liver by multiple lesions (45%). The single tumours have a maximum diameter up to 14 cm while the multiple lesions are often less than a centimeter. The large, single lesions are red-brown or red-tan, often with haemorrhagic or fibrotic centers and focal calcification. The small lesions appear spongy and red-brown on sectioning.

**Histopathology.** Lesions are composed of numerous small vascular channels lined by plump endothelial cells usually arranged in a single layer, but multilayering and tufting can occur. The vessels are supported by a scanty fibrous stroma that may be loose or compact. Larger cavernous vessels with a single layer of flat endothelial cells are often present in the centre of the larger lesions; these vessels may undergo thrombosis with infarction, secondary fibrosis and calcification. Other characteristic features of infantile haemangioendothelioma are small bile ducts scattered between the vessels, and foci of extramedullary haematopoiesis. Endothelial cells in the tumour express Factor VIII-related antigen and CD34.

**Prognosis.** Infantile haemangioendothelioma has an overall survival of 70%; adverse risk factors include congestive heart failure, jaundice and the presence of multiple tumours [1708]. Single tumours are generally resected although some 5-10% undergo spontaneous regression. Hepatic artery ligation or transarterial embolization are other therapeutic modalities. There are occasional reports of transformation of infantile haemangioendothelioma to angiosarcoma [1708].

**Cavernous haemangioma**

This is the most frequently occurring benign tumour of the liver. The reported incidence varies from 0.4 to 20%, the highest figure being the result of a thorough prospective search [892]. It is more frequent in females, and occurs at all ages but is least common in the paediatric age group. Although it usually presents in adults, it is thought to be a hamartomatous lesion. It is known to increase in size or even rupture during pregnancy, and also may enlarge or recur in patients on oestrogen therapy. Consumption coagulopathy may occur. Cavernous

---

**Fig. 8.62** Infantile haemangioendothelioma. A Red and brown tumour with focal hemorrhage. B Multiple brown cavitory lesions. C The tumour is well circumscribed but not encapsulated, and consists of small vessels. D Masson trichrome stain shows vessels lined by a single layer of plump endothelial cells surrounded by a scant fibrous stroma. Note the scattered bile ducts.

**Fig. 8.63** Cavernous haemangioma. A Multilocular blood-filled structures with pale solid areas. B Large thin-walled vascular spaces.
Haemangiomas are not known to undergo malignant change. Only large symptomatic tumours (‘giant’ haemangiomas) that can replace most of the liver. They are usually single, and soft or fluctuant. When sectioned they partially collapse due to the escape of blood and have a spongy appearance. Recent haemorrhages, organized thrombi, fibrosis and calcification may be seen.

**Histopathology.** Lesions are typically composed of blood-filled vascular channels of varied size lined by a single layer of flat endothelial cells supported by fibrous tissue. Thrombi in various stages of organization with areas of infarction may be present, and older lesions show dense fibrosis and calcification. In sclerosed haemangiomas, most or all of the vessels are occluded and sometimes are only demonstrable by stains for elastic tissue.

**Angiomyolipoma**

The lesion is defined as a benign tumour composed of variable admixtures of adipose tissue, smooth muscle (spindled or epithelioid), and thick-walled blood vessels. The age range of angiomyolipoma is from 30-72 years, with a mean of 50 years [1373]. It is seen equally in males and females [604]. A small number are associated with tuberous sclerosis. Angiomyolipomas are usually single, with 60% located in the right lobe, 30% in the left lobe, 20% in both lobes and 8% in the caudate lobe [1373]. They are sharply demarcated but not encapsulated, fleshy or firm and, when sectioned, with a homogeneous yellow, yellow-tan or tan appearance, depending on their content of fat.

**Histopathology.** Angiomyolipomas are composed of adipose tissue, smooth muscle and thick-walled, sometimes hyalinized blood vessels in varying proportions. Morphologically and phenotypically they are believed to belong to a family of lesions characterized by proliferation of perivascular epithelioid cells [2197]. The smooth muscle is composed of spindle-shaped cells arranged in bundles, or larger more rounded cells with an ‘empty’ (glycogen-rich) cytoplasm or an eosinophilic, epithelioid appearance. The nuclei of the spindle cells are elongated with blunt ends, but the larger smooth muscle cells can have large, hyperchromatic nuclei with prominent nucleoli. The microscopic appearances are extensively varied and may imitate several malignant tumours, e.g. leiomyosarcoma, malignant fibrous histiocytoma and hepatocellular carcinoma [1971]. A characteristic feature of angiomyolipoma is the presence of extramedullary haematopoiesis. The smooth muscle cells contain variable quantities of melanin and express the melanoma markers HMB-45 and Melan-A. They also express muscle specific actin and smooth muscle actin.
Solitary fibrous tumour

Solitary fibrous tumour has an age range from 32-83 years (mean, 57 years) (1270). Its aetiology is unknown. Lesions vary considerably in size, from 2-20 cm in diameter (1270). They arise in either lobe and are occasionally pedunculated. The external surface is smooth and the consistency firm. They are sharply demarcated but not encapsulated. Gross sections show a light tan to almost white colour with a whorled texture. **Histopathology.** Solitary fibrous tumour often shows alternating cellular and relatively acellular areas. The cellular areas consist of bundles of spindle cells arranged haphazardly or in a storiform network. There is a well-developed reticulin network. In some cases the cells are arranged around ectatic vessels in a hae-mangiopericytoma-like pattern. Nuclei of the spindle cells are uniform and lack pleomorphism, but these tumours may undergo malignant change as evidenced by the presence of foci of necrosis, prominent cellular atypia, and mitotic activity in the range of 2-4 mitoses/10 hpf (1270, 514). The relatively acellular areas of solitary fibrous tumour contain abundant collagen bundles with thin, stretched-out tumour cells. The tumour cells characteristically express CD34.

Inflammatory pseudotumour

This lesion is defined as a benign, non-neoplastic, non-metastasizing mass composed of fibrous tissue and proliferated myofibroblasts, with a marked inflammatory infiltration, predominantly plasma cells (318). The mean age at presentation of inflammatory pseudotumour of the liver is 56 years (range, 3-77) (438); it is commoner in males (70%) than in females (1270). Inflammatory pseudotumours are solitary (81%) or less often multiple (19%) (1275) and usually intrahepatic, but some can involve the hepatic hilum. About half of the solitary tumours are located in the right lobe. They vary in size from 1 cm to large masses involving an entire lobe, and are firm, tan, yellow-white or white. Some inflammatory pseudotumours are probably the residuum of a resolved bacterial abscess, while others may be related to Epstein-Barr virus infection (82, 318). **Histopathology.** The lesions are similar to those occurring in other sites. They are composed of inflammatory cells in a stroma of interlacing bundles of myofibroblasts, fibroblasts, and collagen bundles. The majority of inflammatory cells are mature plasma cells, but lymphocytes (and occasional lymphoid aggregates or follicles), as well as eosinophils and neutrophils, may be present. Macrophages, sometimes showing xanthomatous changes, occasional granulomas and, rarely, phlebitis involving portal vein branches or outflow veins, may be seen.

Lymphangioma and lymphangiomatosis

*Lymphangioma* is a benign tumour characterized by multiple endothelial-lined spaces that vary in size from capillary channels to large, cystic spaces containing lymph. The vascular spaces are lined by a single layer of endothelial cells, though papillary projections or tufting may be seen. The cells rest on a basement membrane and the supporting stroma is usually scanty. Clear, pink-staining lymph fills the lymphatic channels. **Hepatic lymphangiomatosis,** often accompanied by lymphangiomatosis of the spleen, skeleton, and other tissues, may represent a malformation syndrome. Diffuse lymphangiomatosis involving the liver and multiple organs is associated with a poor prognosis. Single lesions have been successfully resected.

Pseudolipoma

Pseudolipoma is believed to represent an appendix epiploica attached to the Glisson capsule after becoming detached from the large bowel (1609). Lesions are usually a small, encapsulated mass of fat located in a concavity on the surface of the liver, the fat typically showing necrosis and calcification (891).

Focal fatty change

Focal fatty change of the liver is characterized by multiple, contiguous acini showing macrovesicular steatosis of hepatocytes, with preservation of acinar architecture (804). About 45% of cases of a series of focal fatty change occurred in patients with diabetes mellitus (632).

Embryonal sarcoma

A malignant tumour composed of mesenchymal cells that, by light microscopy, are undifferentiated. Embryonal sarcoma (‘undifferentiated’ sarcoma) comprises 6% of all primary hepatic tumours in childhood (2082). It usually occurs between 5 and 20 years of age (1840). Rarely, cases have occurred in middle and even old age. The incidence in males and females is equal (1840). Embryonal sarcoma is of unknown aetiology, although one patient had a past history of prenatal exposure...
to phenytoin (148). Symptoms include abdominal enlargement, fever, weight loss, and nonspecific gastrointestinal complaints (1840). Rarely, the tumour invades the vena cava and grows into the right atrium, mimicking a cardiac tumour (561).

**Macroscope.** Embryonal sarcoma is usually located in the right lobe of the liver, and varies from 10-20 cm in diameter. It is typically well-demarcated but not encapsulated. Gross sections reveal a variegated surface with glistening, solid, grey-white tumour tissue alternating with cystic, gelatinous areas and/or red and yellow foci of haemorrhage or necrosis.

**Histopathology.** Embryonal sarcoma is composed of malignant stellate or spindle cells that are compactly or loosely arranged in a myxoid stroma. Tumour cells often show prominent anisokaryosis with hyperchromasia; giant cells that may be multinucleated are seen in many cases. A characteristic feature is the presence of eosinophilic globules of varied size, sometimes many per cell, in the cytoplasm. They are PAS-positive, resist diastase digestion, and express alpha-1 antitrypsin, though the larger globules may only be immunoreactive at the periphery. Entrapped bile ducts and hepatocellular elements are often present in the peripheral areas of these tumours. The spindle, stellate and giant cells typically show no morphological evidence of differentiation, but immunohistochemical studies in a few cases have demonstrated widely divergent differentiation into both mesenchymal and epithelial phenotypes, probably from a primitive stem cell (1460).

**Prognosis.** Until recently the prognosis of embryonal sarcoma has been very poor, with a median survival of less than one year after diagnosis (1840). The survival has greatly improved in the last several years with some patients living five or more years after combined modality therapy (surgical resection, radiotherapy, and chemotherapy).

**Kaposi sarcoma**

This lesion is defined as a tumour composed of slit-like vascular channels, spindle cells, mononuclear inflammatory cells, with an admixture of haemosiderin-laden macrophages. Kaposi sarcoma involves the liver in 12-25% of fatal cases of the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), but is not known to contribute significantly to its morbidity and mortality. In patients with AIDS, it is aetiologically related to HHV-8 infection (276, 1367). It involves portal areas but can infiltrate the adjacent parenchyma for short distances, and is characterized grossly by irregular, variably-sized, red-brown lesions scattered throughout the liver. Histologically, lesions resemble those occurring in other sites with spindle cells showing elongated or ovoid, vesicular nuclei with rounded ends and inconspicuous nucleoli. Eosinophilic, PAS-positive globules may be seen in the cytoplasm. The tumour cells are separated by slit-like vascular spaces. Aggregates of haemosiderin granules may be present. The spindle cells express endothelial cell markers (CD31, CD34).

**Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma**

A tumour of variable malignant potential that is composed of epithelioid or spindle cells growing along preformed vessels or forming new vessels. Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma presents between 12 and 86 years (mean 47 years) (807, 1150). Its overall incidence is unknown, but more are reported in females (61%) than in males (39%) (807, 1150). Risk factors are not known; the

![Fig. 8.68 Kaposi sarcoma. A Multiple dark brown lesions centered in large portal areas. B, C Spindle cells and slit-like vascular spaces.](image)

![Fig. 8.69 Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma. There is extensive destruction of liver cell plates. Note the intracellular vascular lumina (arrow).](image)
suggestion of a relationship to oral contraceptive use has not been validated (1270). Epithelioid haemangiendothelioma causes systemic symptoms (weakness, malaise, anorexia, episodic vomiting, upper abdominal pain, and weight loss) and hepato-splenomegaly (807, 1150). Some patients develop jaundice and liver failure. Uncommon modes of presentation include the Budd-Chiari syndrome (2040) or portal hypertension.

**Macroscopy.** Macroscopically, lesions are usually multifocal; ill-defined lesions scattered throughout the liver vary from a few millimeters to several centimeters in greatest dimension. They are firm, tan to white on sectioning, and often have a hyperaemic periphery; calcification may be evident grossly.

**Histopathology.** The tumour nodules are ill-defined, and often involve multiple contiguous acini. In actively proliferating lesions the acinar landmarks, such as terminal hepatic venules (THV) and portal areas, can be recognized despite extensive infiltration by the tumour. The cells grow along preexisting sinusoids, THV, and portal vein branches, and often invade Glisson capsule. Growth within the acini is associated with gradual atrophy and eventual disappearance of liver cell plates. Intravascular growth may be in the form of a solid plug, or a polypoid or tuft-like projection.

Neoplastic cell are either ‘dendritic’, with spindle or irregular shapes and multiple interdigitating processes, ‘epithelioid’, with a more rounded shape and an abundant cytoplasm, or ‘intermediate’. Nuclear atypia and mitoses are mainly observed in the epithelioid cells. Cytoplasmic vacuoles, representing intracellular vascular lumens, are often identified and may contain erythrocytes. The tumour cells synthesize factor VIII-related antigen (von Willebrand factor), which can be demonstrated in the cytoplasm or in the neoplastic vascular lumens. Other endothelial cell markers, such as CD31 and CD34, are also positive.

The stroma can have a myxoid appearance due to an abundance of sulphated mucopolysaccharide. Reticulin fibres surround round nests of tumour cells. Basement membrane can be demonstrated around the cells by the PAS stain, as well as ultrastructurally and immunohistochemically. Variable numbers of smooth muscle cells surround the basement membrane.

As the lesions evolve they are associated with progressive fibrosis and calcification. Eventually, tumour cells (and indeed, the vascular nature of the lesion) may be difficult if not impossible to recognize in the densely sclerosed areas. Needle biopsy specimens taken from such areas often pose diagnostic problems. The histopathological differential diagnosis includes angiosarcoma and cholangiocarcinoma. Angiosarcoma is much more destructive than epithelioid haemangiendothelioma, obliterates acinar landmarks and results in cavity formation. Cells of cholangiocarcinoma are arranged in a tubular or glandular pattern, and often produce mucin; the cells are cytokeratin positive and do not express endothelial cell markers.

**Prognosis.** The clinical outcome of epithelioid haemangiendothelioma is unpredictable, with some patients having a fulminant course and others surviving many years with no therapy. A recent study (1150) showed a correlation between high cellularity of the tumour with a poor clinical outcome. Successful treatment includes resection, when feasible, and liver transplantation.

**Angiosarcoma**

A malignant tumour composed of spindle or pleomorphic cells that line, or grow into, the lumina of preexisting vascular spaces, such as liver sinusoids and small veins. Worldwide, about 200 cases of angiosarcoma are diagnosed annually (848, 59). During the period 1973-87, the SEER database of the US National Cancer Institute contained 6,391 histologically-confirmed primary liver cancers; of these only 65 (1%) were angiosarcomas (252). The peak incidence is in the 6th and 7th decades of life. The male to female ratio is 3:1 (1085). 75% of angiosarcomas of the liver have no known aetiology (484). The remainder have been linked to prior administration of Thorotrast (a radioactive material containing thorium dioxide, that was used as an angiography contrast medium from the 1930s to the early 1950s), exposure to vinyl chloride monomer (VCM) or inorganic arsenic, and the use of androgenic-anabolic steroids (484).

Patients with angiosarcoma present in one of several ways: 61% have symptoms referable to the liver (e.g. hepatomegaly, abdominal pain, ascites); 15% have an acute abdominal crisis due to haemoperitoneum from rupture of the tumour; 15% have splenomegaly, often with pancytopenia; and 9% present due to distant metastases (804). The prognosis of angiosarcoma is very poor, with most patients dying within 6 months of diagnosis.

**Macroscopy.** Angiosarcoma typically affects the entire liver. Grayish-white
tumour alternates with red-brown haemorrhagic areas. Large cavities with ragged edges, filled with liquid or clotted blood, may be present. A reticular pattern of fibrosis is seen in cases related to prior exposure to Thorotrast.

**Histopathology.** Tumour cells grow along preformed vascular channels (sinusoids, THV and portal vein branches). Sinusoidal growth is associated with progressive atrophy of liver cells and disruption of the plates, with formation of larger vascular channels and eventually the development of cavities of varied size. These cavities have ragged walls lined by tumour cells, sometimes with polypoid or papillary projections, and are filled with clotted blood and tumour debris. Reti-

---

**Fig. 8.71** **Angiosarcoma.** **A** Multiple dark brown tumour foci scattered throughout the liver. **B** Solid portion showing spindle cells and numerous small vascular channels. **C** Intravascular papillary structure covered by neoplastic endothelial cells. **D** Tumour cells express CD34.

**Fig. 8.72** **Angiosarcoma.** **A** Sinusoidal spread of tumour cells with destruction of hepatocyte plates. **B** Disrupted liver cells act as scaffolding for the tumour cells.
culin fibres and, less often, collagen fibres support the tumour cells. Perithelial cells, reactive for alpha-smooth muscle actin, may also be present. The tumour cells are sometimes packed solidly in nodules that resemble fibrosarcoma. The cells of angiosarcoma are spindle-shaped, rounded or irregular in outline, and often have ill-defined borders. The cytoplasm is lightly eosinophilic, and nuclei are hyperchromatic and elongated or irregular in shape. Nucleoli can be small, or large and eosinophilic. Large, bizarre nuclei and multinucleated cells may be seen, and mitotic figures are frequently identified. The spindled cells have ill-defined outlines, a lightly eosinophilic cytoplasm, and vesicular nuclei with blunt ends. Factor VIII-related antigen can be identified in tumour cells immunohistochemically. Other useful markers include CD31 and CD34; the former is believed to be the most sensitive immunostain [1224].

Invasion of THV and portal vein branches leads to progressive obstruction of the lumen, and readily explains the frequently encountered areas of haemorrhage, infarction, and necrosis. Haematopoietic activity is observed in the majority of tumours. Cases related to Thorotrast and vinyl chloride monomer are often associated with considerable periportal and subcapsular fibrosis. Thorotrast deposits are readily recognized in reticuloendothelial cells, in connective tissue of portal areas, in Glisson capsule, or in the walls of THV. The deposits are coarsely granular and refractile, and in an H&E-stained section they have a pink-brown hue. They are readily visualized by scanning electron microscopy, and thorium can be definitively identified by energy dispersive X-ray microanalysis [804].

**Genetics.** Analysis of six hepatic angiosarcomas associated with VCM exposure found three TP53 mutations, all A:T→T:A transversions, which are otherwise uncommon in human cancers [728]. Another study of 21 sporadic angiosarcomas not associated with vinyl chloride exposure found TP53 mutations to be uncommon, thus supporting previous evidence of the carcinogenic potential of chloroethylene oxide, a metabolite of VCM [1776]. A high rate of KRAS-2 mutations has been found in both sporadic and Thorotrast-induced angiosarcomas of the liver [1542].

Malignant mesenchymal tumours other than angiosarcoma may have cytogenetic aberrations similar to those of soft tissue tumours [513, 1812].

**Carcinosarcoma**

This neoplasm is defined as a malignant tumour containing an intimate mixture of carcinomatous (either hepatocellular or cholangiocellular) and sarcomatous elements; such lesions have also been called ‘malignant mixed tumour’ of the liver. Carcinosarcoma should be distinguished from carcinomas with foci of spindled epithelial cells and from the rare true ‘collision’ tumours.
Secondary tumours of the liver

P.P. Anthony
P. DeMatos

Definition
Malignant neoplasms metastasized to the liver from extrahepatic primary tumours.

Epidemiology
In Europe and North America, metastases predominate over primary hepatic tumours in a ratio of 40:1 (130, 1517). In Japan the ratio is 2.6:1 (1517). In South-East Asia and sub-Saharan Africa, primary hepatic tumours are more common than metastases (1909) owing to the high incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma, a shorter life span (common extrahepatic carcinomas affect older age groups) and the low incidence of certain tumour types (e.g. carcinomas of the lung and colorectum). Autopsy studies in the USA and Japan have shown that about 40% of patients with extrahepatic cancer have hepatic metastases (351, 1517).

Aetiology
The liver has a rich systemic (arterial) and portal (venous) blood supply, providing a potentially abundant source of circulating neoplastic cells. Circulating tumour cell arrest is controlled by Kupffer cells in the sinusoids (881, 121) and may be enhanced by growth factors such as transforming growth factor alpha (TGFα) (385), tumour necrosis factor (TNF) (1431), and insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) (1091). As tumour deposits enlarge, they induce angiogenesis using native sinusoidal endothelium; this enhances their chances of survival and is often macroscopically evident (1919). Most metastases from unpaired abdomino-pelvic organs reach the liver via the portal vein, and from other sites via the systemic arterial circulation. Lymphatic spread is less common and extension to the liver via the peritoneal fluid is rare (351). Cirrhosis provides some relative protection against seeding by secondary tumours (1983, 1211). It has also been suggested that metastasis is rare in fatty livers (676), but excess alcohol consumption apparently enhances hepatic metastases (1140).

Origin of metastases
The majority of secondary liver neoplasms are carcinomas, involvement by lymphomas is next and sarcomas are uncommon. The order of frequency by primary site in Western populations is: upper gastrointestinal tract (stomach, gallbladder, pancreas): 44-78%; colon: 56-58%; lung: 42-43%; breast 52-53%; oesophagus 30-32% and genito-urinary organs 24-38% (130, 1517, 351). Carcinomas of the prostate and the ovaries preferentially spread to the lymph nodes and the spine, and to the peritoneal cavity, respectively. Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphomas may involve the liver in up to 20% of cases on presentation and 55% at autopsy (1620, 826). Sarcomas are much less common but 6% had hepatic metastases at presentation (mostly intra-abdominal leiomyosarcomas) in one study (833).
while 34% had hepatic metastases at autopsy in another (1517). In a study of randomly selected liver biopsies from England and Wales (852), the commonest histological type of metastasis was adenocarcinoma (39%), followed by carcinoma not otherwise specified (36%); the rest were undifferentiated small cell carcinoma, other special types of carcinoma, and lymphomas.

Clinical features
Symptoms and signs
Hepatic metastases produce clinical manifestations in about two-thirds of cases and they generally reveal themselves through symptoms referable to the liver. Afflicted patients often present with ascites, hepatomegaly or abdominal fullness, hepatic pain, jaundice, anorexia, and weight loss. Constitutional symptoms, such as malaise, fatigue, and fever may be present. On examination, nodules or a mass are felt in up to 50% of the cases, and a friction bruit may be heard on auscultation. Unfortunately, symptomatic presentation is associated with bulky, rapidly progressive tumours with a poor prognosis (2035).

Rarely, patients present with fulminant hepatic failure, obstructive jaundice, or intraperitoneal haemorrhage. Functioning neuroendocrine tumours produce syndromes of hormonal excess. ‘Carcinomatous cirrhosis’ with jaundice, ascites, and bleeding varices due to diffuse infiltration of the liver, usually by metastatic breast carcinoma, has been described (174).

Imaging
Ultrasound (US) can identify tumours measuring 1-2 cm in size, can differentiate solid from cystic lesions, and provide guidance for percutaneous needle biopsy. However, it provides poor anatomical definition and frequently misses smaller lesions.

Computed tomography (CT), using both contrasted and non-contrasted images, can also serve as a screening tool. The administration of intravenous contrast permits the detection of tumours as small as 0.5 cm in diameter (1763). Most metastases display decreased vascularity in comparison to the surrounding hepatic parenchyma and appear as hypodense defects. Tumours that are hypervascular (e.g. melanoma, carcinoids and some breast cancers) or calcified (e.g. colorectal carcinoma) are better delineated by noncontrast views.

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) is more sensitive than CT in the detection of hepatic tumours and can demonstrate additional lesions, too small to be seen on CT.

Positron emission tomography (PET) can detect metastatic disease in the liver and elsewhere. Using 2-(18)fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose (F-18 FDG), a radiolabeled glucose analogue, PET highlights metabolically active tissues. Through co-registration with anatomical studies like CT or MRI, viable malignant tumours can be differentiated from benign or necrotic lesions (54).

CT arterial portography performed preoperatively, and intraoperative ultrasound are associated with the highest sensitivities (1796). The former is capable of detecting lesions as small as 15 mm, although a false positive rate of melanoma. Tests of synthetic function, e.g. serum albumin levels and the prothrombin time, may be normal despite extensive metastatic involvement. Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) levels may be slightly to moderately elevated but very high concentrations are more consistent with a diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma (904). Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) levels, which are raised in as many as 90% of patients with metastases from colorectal carcinoma, can be useful in monitoring patients after primary tumour resection. However, CEA levels do not correlate well with prognosis (2043, 1821).

Laboratory studies
The alkaline phosphatase (ALP) and serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase (SGOT) levels, although non-specific, are elevated in approximately 80% and 67% of patients respectively, and most likely represent the effects of hepatic parenchymal infiltration by tumour and of generalized wasting. Elevated lactic dehydrogenase (LDH) levels are relatively specific for the presence of metastatic
17% has been reported (1795). Its success relies on the fact that tumours are not fed by portal vein blood, so that metastases appear as filling defects. The latter, capable of detecting lesions 2-4 mm in diameter delineates the anatomical location of tumours in relationship to major vascular and biliary structures and provides guidance for intraoperative needle biopsies. It is the definitive step in determining resectability at the time of exploratory laparotomy or laparoscopy. Angiography use has declined in recent years. It remains useful for defining vascular anatomy for planned hepatic resections, selective chemotherapy, chemoembolization, or devascularization procedures, for assessing whether there is metastatic involvement of the portal venous system and/or hepatic veins, and for differentiating between benign vascular lesions, such as haemangiomas and metastases, when other imaging studies have yielded equivocal results.

**Macroscopy**

The distribution of metastases from colorectal carcinoma was found to be homogenous, regardless of the primary site of origin (1695) but in another study, it was suggested that right sided cancers predominantly metastasize to the right lobe of the liver and left sided cancers to both lobes (1749). Metastases are nearly always multinodular or diffusely infiltrative, but may rarely be solitary and massive (e.g. from colorectal and renal cell carcinomas). Umbilication (a central depression on the surface of a metastatic deposit) is due to necrosis or scarring and is typical of an adenocarcinoma from stomach, pancreas or colorectum. A vascular rim around the periphery is often seen. Highly mucin secreting adenocarcinomas appear as glistening, gelatinous masses whilst well differentiated keratinizing squamous cell carcinomas are granular. Metastatic carcinoid tumours can form pseudocysts (401). Haemorrhagic secondary deposits suggest angiosarcoma, choriocarcinoma, carcinoma of thyroid or kidney, neuroendocrine tumour, or vascular leiomyosarcoma. Some diffusely infiltrating carcinomas (e.g. small cell carcinoma), lymphomas and sarcomas may have a soft, opaque ‘fish flesh’ appearance. Metastatic breast carcinoma in particular can produce an intensely fibrous, granular liver (‘carcinomatous cirrhosis’) either before (174) or after (1693) treatment. Calcification of secondary deposits is a feature of colorectal carcinoma but it is seldom excessive and has no effect on prognosis (653). Metastatic melanoma is often, but not always, of a brown-black colour. Secondary tumours may appear in the liver long after the removal of the primary.

**Histopathology**

Liver biopsy samples can be obtained by percutaneous or transjugular routes with or without imaging techniques for guidance, as a wedge during laparotomy, or a fine needle can be used to aspirate material for cytology. Each of these methods has advantages and drawbacks but a guided percutaneous needle biopsy producing a core of liver for histology is the one most frequently used. It produces a tissue sample that is usually adequate for all purposes, including the use of special stains, immunohistochemistry and molecular biological techniques. Touch preparations for cytology can also be prepared from needle cores before fixation and may provide an instant diagnosis (1523).

**Differential diagnosis**

Hepatocellular carcinoma can usually be distinguished from metastatic tumours by its trabecular structure, sinusoids, lack of stroma, bile production, absence of mucin secretion, and the demonstration of bile canaliculi by polyclonal CEA antisera, which is specific for a liver cell origin. Other useful immunophenotypic features in this differentiation are the presence of liver export proteins (albumin, fibrinogen, alpha-1-antitrypsin), the cytokeratin pattern, and the expression of Hep Par 1 antigen (1046). Metastatic tumours that often mimic hepatocellular carcinoma are adrenal cortical and renal cell carcinomas. Amelanotic melanoma may also cause difficulties but it is easily identified by positive immunostaining for S100 protein and HMB45.

The distinction between primary cholangiocarcinoma and metastatic adenocar-
Tumours of the liver and intrahepatic bile ducts

Metastases are easily identified by their organoid nesting pattern, uniform cytology and vascularity, and positive immunostaining for chromogranin, synaptophysin and neuron specific enolase; islet cell tumours also produce specific hormones such as insulin, glucagon, gastrin, vasoactive intestinal peptide and somatostatin, which either give rise to clinical syndromes or can be demonstrated in the blood or tumour tissue. Most sarcomas that metastasize to the liver are gastrointestinal stromal tumours that are positive for CD34 and c-kit, or leiomyosarcomas of the uterus that may be positive for desmin or muscle-specific actin. Some carcinomas, notably of the kidney, may be sarcomatoid in their morphology.

Many haematological malignancies, e.g. leukaemias, myeloproliferative disorders and both Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphomas, involve the liver. Leukaemias tend to produce diffuse sinusoidal infiltrates. Hodgkin and high-grade non-Hodgkin lymphomas produce tumour-like masses, while low-grade non-Hodgkin lymphomas produce diffuse portal infiltrates.

Rare secondary tumours include those from the thyroid, prostate, and gonads. The diagnosis can be confirmed by the immunohistochemical demonstration of thyroglobulin, prostate specific antigen and AFP and βHCG, respectively.

A triad of histological features, namely proliferating bile ducts, leukocytes and focal sinusoidal dilatation, is found in the liver adjacent to space-occupying lesions. Their presence in a core biopsy suggests the possibility of a metastatic deposit missed by the biopsy needle. Three lesions, bile duct adenoma, sclerosed haemangioma, and larval granuloma may resemble metastatic tumours at laparotomy.

**Prognosis**

In most cases, disseminated disease is present which precludes surgical intervention. Due to recent improvements in imaging techniques, more metastatic carcinomas are being diagnosed early, providing the possibility of surgical resection in a greater number of patients. When curative resection is feasible, 5-year survival can be as high as 40%; without surgical therapy, median survivals of less than 12 months should be expected (1817).

---

**Fig. 8.80** Typical histological changes adjacent to space occupying liver lesions: sinusoidal dilatation, leucocyte infiltration, and bile-ductular proliferation.
CHAPTER 9

Tumours of the Gallbladder and Extrahepatic Bile Ducts

These two closely related tumour sites show remarkable differences in terms of epidemiology, aetiology, and clinical presentation. The incidence of gallbladder carcinoma shows prominent geographic, gender, and racial differences, while extrahepatic bile duct carcinomas show none of these variations. Aetiologic associations include gall stones, sclerosing cholangitis, ulcerative colitis, abnormal choledochopancreatic junction, choledochal cysts, and infestation with liver flukes.
WHO histological classification of tumours of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Epithelial tumours</th>
<th>Small cell carcinoma</th>
<th>8041/3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Benign Adenoma</td>
<td>Large cell neuroendocrine carcinoma</td>
<td>8013/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubular 8140/0</td>
<td>Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
<td>8020/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary 8260/0</td>
<td>Biliary cystadenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8161/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubulopapillary 8263/0</td>
<td>Carcinoid tumour</td>
<td>8240/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biliary cystadenoma 8161/0</td>
<td>Goblet cell carcinoma</td>
<td>8243/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillomatosis (adenomatosis) 8264/0</td>
<td>Tubular carcinoma</td>
<td>8245/1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mixed carcinoid-adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>8244/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia and carcinoma in situ)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Malignant Carcinoma</th>
<th>Granular cell tumour</th>
<th>9580/0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Leiomyoma</td>
<td>8890/0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Leiomyosarcoma</td>
<td>8890/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma, intestinal type</td>
<td>Rhabdomyosarcoma</td>
<td>8900/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adenocarcinoma, gastric foveolar type</td>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma</td>
<td>9140/3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear cell adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>Malignant lymphoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Non-epithelial tumours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Secondary tumours</th>
<th>Granular cell tumour</th>
<th>9580/0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Leiomyoma</td>
<td>8890/0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leiomyosarcoma</td>
<td>8890/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhabdomyosarcoma</td>
<td>8900/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaposi sarcoma</td>
<td>9140/3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TNM classification of tumours of the gallbladder

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM classification¹ ²</th>
<th>Stage Grouping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T – Primary Tumour</td>
<td>N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
<td>Stage I T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No evidence of primary tumour</td>
<td>Stage II T2 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcina in situ</td>
<td>Stage III T1 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Stage IVA T4 N0, N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour invades lamina propria or muscle layer</td>
<td>Stage IVB Any T N2 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Stage IVA T4 Any T Any N M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour invades lamina propria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour invades muscle layer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour invades perimuscular connective tissue, no extension beyond serosa or into liver</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour perforates serosa (visceral peritoneum) or directly invades into one adjacent organ or both (extension 2 cm or less into liver)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour extends more than 2 cm into liver and/or into two or more adjacent organs (stomach, duodenum, colon, pancreas, omentum, extrahepatic bile ducts, any involvement of liver)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N – Regional Lymph Nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>Stage I T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>Stage III T1 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1 Metastasis in cystic duct, pericholecdochal, and/or hilar lymph nodes (i.e., in the hepatoduodenal ligament)</td>
<td>Stage IVA T4 N0, N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2 Metastasis in peripancreatic (head only), periudodenal, periporal, coeliac, and/or superior mesenteric lymph nodes</td>
<td>Stage IVB Any T N2 M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (542) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /1 for unspecified, borderline, or uncertain behaviour, /2 for in situ carcinomas and grade III intraepithelial neoplasia and /3 for malignant tumours.

² A help desk for specific questions about the TNM classification is available at http://tnm.uicc.org.

TNM classification of tumours of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM classification¹ ²</th>
<th>Stage Grouping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>T – Primary Tumour</td>
<td>N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
<td>Stage I T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No evidence of primary tumour</td>
<td>Stage II T2 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcina in situ</td>
<td>Stage III T1 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1</td>
<td>Stage IVA T4 N0, N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour invades lamina propria or muscle layer</td>
<td>Stage IVB Any T N2 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a</td>
<td>Stage IVA T4 Any T Any N M1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour invades lamina propria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour invades muscle layer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour invades perimuscular connective tissue, no extension beyond serosa or into liver</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour perforates serosa (visceral peritoneum) or directly invades into one adjacent organ or both (extension 2 cm or less into liver)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumour extends more than 2 cm into liver and/or into two or more adjacent organs (stomach, duodenum, colon, pancreas, omentum, extrahepatic bile ducts, any involvement of liver)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N – Regional Lymph Nodes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
<td>Stage I T1 N0 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
<td>Stage III T1 N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1 Metastasis in cystic duct, pericholecdochal, and/or hilar lymph nodes (i.e., in the hepatoduodenal ligament)</td>
<td>Stage IVA T4 N0, N1 M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2 Metastasis in peripancreatic (head only), periudodenal, periporal, coeliac, and/or superior mesenteric lymph nodes</td>
<td>Stage IVB Any T N2 M0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) (542) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /1 for unspecified, borderline, or uncertain behaviour, /2 for in situ carcinomas and grade III intraepithelial neoplasia and /3 for malignant tumours.

² A help desk for specific questions about the TNM classification is available at http://tnm.uicc.org.
### TNM classification of tumours of the extrahepatic bile ducts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM classification(^1,^2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> - Primary Tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue or fibromuscular layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1a Tumour invades subepithelial connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1b Tumour invades fibromuscular layer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Tumour invades perifibromuscular connective tissue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 Tumour invades adjacent structures: liver, pancreas, duodenum, gallbladder, colon, stomach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong> - Regional Lymph Nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1 Metastasis in cystic duct, pericholedochal, and/or hilar lymph nodes (i.e., in the hepatoduodenal ligament)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N2 Metastasis in peripancreatic (head only), peripancreatic, periportal, coeliac, superior mesenteric, posterior peripancreatic-duodenal lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong> - Distant Metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MX Distant metastasis cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1 Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Stage Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1, N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1, N2</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage V</td>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The classification applies to carcinomas of extrahepatic bile ducts and those of choledochal cysts.

\(^2\) A help desk for specific questions about the TNM classification is available at http://tnm.uicc.org.

### TNM classification of tumours of the Ampulla of Vater

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TNM classification(^1,^2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>T</strong> - Primary Tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TX Primary tumour cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T0 No evidence of primary tumour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tis Carcinoma in situ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T1 Tumour limited to ampulla of Vater or sphincter of Oddi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2 Tumour invades duodenal wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3 Tumour invades 2 cm or less into pancreas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T4 Tumour invades more than 2 cm into pancreas and/or into other adjacent organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong> - Regional Lymph Nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N0 No regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N1 Regional lymph node metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>M</strong> - Distant Metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MX Distant metastasis cannot be assessed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M0 No distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M1 Distant metastasis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Stage Grouping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Tis</th>
<th>N0</th>
<th>M0</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 0</td>
<td>T0</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage I</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage II</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N0</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage III</td>
<td>T1</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage IV</td>
<td>T2</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage V</td>
<td>T3</td>
<td>N1</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage VI</td>
<td>T4</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any T</td>
<td>Any N</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) The classification applies only to carcinomas.

\(^2\) A help desk for specific questions about the TNM classification is available at http://tnm.uicc.org.
Carcinoma of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts

Definition
A malignant epithelial tumour with glandular differentiation, arising in the gallbladder or extrahepatic biliary system.

Epidemiology
Most tumours of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts are carcinomas. Only a small proportion are adenomas, carcinoid and stromal tumours [35].

Geographic distribution
The incidence of carcinoma of the gallbladder varies in different parts of the world and also differs among different ethnic groups within the same country. In the United States, carcinoma of the gallbladder is more common in Native Americans and Hispanic Americans than in whites or blacks; the rate among female Native Americans is 21 per 100,000 compared with 1.4 per 100,000 among white females. In Latin American countries, the highest rates are found in Chile, Mexico and Bolivia. In Japan, the incidence rates are intermediate. In the general population of the United States cancer of the gallbladder accounts for 0.17% for all cancers in males and 0.49% in females. There are no geographic variations in the incidence of extrahepatic bile duct carcinoma which accounts for 0.16% of all invasive cancers in males and 0.15% in females in the general population of the United States [35].

Age and sex distribution
Carcinomas of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts are diseases of older age groups. Most patients are in the 6th or 7th decades of life. Gallbladder carcinomas have a strong female predominance, whereas extrahepatic bile duct carcinomas occur more frequently in males.

Aetiology
Unlike carcinoma of the extrahepatic bile ducts, gallbladder carcinomas are not associated with primary sclerosing cholangitis or ulcerative colitis.

Gallbladder carcinoma
Gallstones. The incidence of gallbladder cancer is higher in patients with gallstones than in patients without stones [35], and stones are present in over 80% of gallbladder carcinomas. The incidence of gallbladder carcinoma parallels that of gallstones, being more frequent in females and in certain ethnic groups, e.g. Native Americans, who have a high incidence of stones. Nevertheless, although gall stones are considered a risk factor, the overall incidence of carcinoma of the gallbladder in patients with cholelithiasis is less than 0.2%; this percentage varies with race, sex, and length of exposure to the stones [35]. While some authors have reported a correlation between gallstone size and the risk of cancer, others have not found such a correlation [35].

Abnormal choledochopancreatic junction. Data largely reported from Japan indicate an association between gallbladder cancer and an abnormal junction of the pancreatic and common bile ducts [1248]. Normally, the main pancreatic duct and the common bile duct unite within the sphincter to form the pancreaticobiliary duct. The abnormal junction is defined as the union of the pancreatic and common bile ducts outside the wall of the duodenum beyond the influence of the sphincter of Oddi. As a result, pancreatic juice can reflux into the common bile duct, resulting in hyperplastic, meta-
plastic, and neoplastic changes in the gallbladder epithelium.

**Porcelain gallbladder.** Diffuse calcification of the gallbladder wall (porcelain gallbladder) is associated with carcinoma in 10-25% of cases.

**Genetic susceptibility.** As discussed above, carcinoma of the gallbladder is concentrated in certain racial and ethnic groups. Familial aggregation of gallbladder cancer has been recorded in the US and in other countries [35].

**Carcinoma of extrahepatic bile ducts**

Well established risk factors for carcinomas of the extrahepatic bile ducts are sclerosing cholangitis, ulcerative colitis, abnormal choledochopancreatic junction, choledochal cysts and infestation with the liver flukes C. sinensis and O. viverrini. Choledocholithiasis does not seem to play a role in the pathogenesis of carcinomas of the extrahepatic bile ducts.

**Clinical features**

Cancer of the gallbladder usually presents late in its course. The signs and symptoms are not specific, often resembling those of chronic cholecystitis. Right upper quadrant pain is common. Computed tomography and ultrasonography can be used to demonstrate the lesion.

Carcinomas of the extrahepatic bile ducts usually present relatively early with obstructive jaundice, which can rapidly progress or fluctuate. Jaundice usually appears while the tumour is relatively small before widespread dissemination has occurred. Other symptoms include right upper quadrant pain, malaise, weight loss, pruritus, anorexia, nausea, and vomiting. If cholangitis develops, chills and fever appear. In patients with carcinoma of the proximal bile ducts (right and left hepatic ducts, common hepatic duct), the intrahepatic bile ducts are dilated, the gallbladder is not palpable and the common duct often collapses. Patients with carcinoma in the common or cystic ducts have a distended and palpable gallbladder as well as a markedly dilated proximal duct system, as may be shown by ultrasonography and computerised tomography. Transhepatic cholangiograms and endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography are essential for exact localization of carcinomas of the extrahepatic bile ducts.

**Macroscopy**

Carcinoma of the gallbladder appears as an infiltrating grey white mass. Some carcinomas may cause diffuse thickening and induration of the entire gallbladder wall. The gallbladder may be distended by the tumour, or collapsed due to obstruction of the neck or cystic duct. It can also assume an hourglass deformity when the tumour arises in the body and constricts the lateral walls. Papillary carcinomas are usually sessile and exhibit a polypoid or cauliflower-like appearance. Mucinous and signet ring cell carcinomas have a mucoid or gelatinous cut surface. Although any type of gallbladder cancer may show necrosis, undifferentiated giant cell and small cell carcinomas are usually the most necrotic. Submucosal growth is an important feature of signet ring and small cell carcinomas. Carcinomas of the extrahepatic bile ducts have been divided into polypoid, nodular, scirrhous constricting, and diffusely infiltrating types. This separation can provide a guide to the operative procedure, extent of resection, and prognosis. However, except for the polypoid tumours, this separation is rarely possible in practice because of overlapping gross features. The nodular and scirrhous types tend to infiltrate surrounding tissues and are difficult to resect. The diffusely infiltrating types tend to spread linearly along the ducts.

**Tumour staging**

There are separate TNM classifications for carcinomas of the gallbladder, extrahepatic bile ducts, and the ampulla of Vater.

**Histopathology**

The histological classification of tumours of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts is essentially similar to the previous WHO classification published in 1991 (1774) and to the classification adopted by the AFIP fascicle published in 2000 [35].

**Adenocarcinoma**

Well to moderately differentiated adenocarcinomas are the most common malignant epithelial tumours of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts. They are composed of short or long tubular glands lined by cells that vary in height from low cuboidal to tall columnar, superficially resembling biliary epithelium. Mucin is frequently present in the cells and glands. Rarely, the extracellular mucin may
Tumours of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts become calcified (1465, 1606). About one-third of the well differentiated tumours show focal intestinal differentiation and contain goblet and endocrine cells (36, 2152, 2158). The endocrine cells may be numerous and show immunoreactivity for serotonin and peptide hormones, but a diagnosis of neuroendocrine neoplasm is not warranted. Paneth cells may rarely be seen.

An extremely well differentiated adenocarcinoma with gastric foveolar phenotype that simulates adenoma has been described in the extrahepatic bile ducts (39). Adenocarcinomas may show cribriform or angiosarcomatous patterns. They may also contain cyto- and syncytio-trophoblast cells.

Extrahepatic bile duct adenocarcinomas tend to be better differentiated than their gallbladder counterparts. Many gallbladder carcinomas are immunoreactive for TP53 (1907, 2125).

**Histological variants of adenocarcinoma**

**Papillary adenocarcinoma.** This malignant tumour is composed predominantly of papillary structures lined by cuboidal or columnar epithelial cells often containing variable amounts of mucin. Some tumours show intestinal differentiation with collections of goblet, endocrine, and Paneth cells. Papillary adenocarcinomas may fill the lumen before invading the wall. Papillary adenocarcinomas appear to be more frequent in the gallbladder than in the extrahepatic biliary tree (2150). In addition, skip lesions may be observed in approximately 10% of cases (1989).

**Adenocarcinoma, intestinal type.** This unusual variant of adenocarcinoma is composed of tubular glands or papillary structures lined predominantly by cells with an intestinal phenotype, namely goblet cells or colonic-type epithelium or both, with or without a variable number of endocrine and Paneth cells (41).

**Mucinous adenocarcinoma.** Mucinous adenocarcinomas of the biliary tree are similar to those that arise in other anatomic sites. By definition, more than 50% of the tumour contains extracellular mucin (1774). There are two histological variants of mucinous adenocarcinomas of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts: one variant is characterized by neoplastic glands distended with mucin and lined by columnar cells with mild to moderate nuclear atypia, and the second variant is characterized by small groups or clusters of cells surrounded by abundant mucin. Some tumours show both growth patterns. The abundant mucin makes the tumour appear hypocellular.

**Cystadenocarcinoma** refers to a unilocular or multilocular glandular tumour that may be the result of malignant transformation of a cystadenoma.

**Clear cell adenocarcinoma.** This rare malignant tumour is composed predominantly of glycogen-rich clear cells having well-defined cytoplasmic borders and hyperchromatic nuclei. In addition to clear cells, a variable number of cells contain eosinophilic granular cytoplasm. The clear cells line glands or are arranged in nests, sheets, cords, trabeculae or papillary structures (40, 145, 1856). Foci of conventional adenocarcinoma with focal mucin production are usually found and are useful in separating primary from metastatic clear cell carcinomas. In some clear cell adenocarcinomas of the biliary tree the columnar cells contain subnuclear and supranuclear vacuoles similar to those seen in secretory endometrium. Focal hepatoid differentiation with production of alpha-fetoprotein has been documented in clear cell carcinomas of the gallbladder (2000).

**Signet-ring cell carcinoma.** Cells containing intracytoplasmic mucin displacing the nuclei toward the periphery predominate in this variant of adenocarcinoma. A variable amount of extracellular mucin is usually present. Lateral spread through the lamina propria is a common feature.

---

Fig. 9.06 Well differentiated adenocarcinoma infiltrating gallbladder wall.

Fig. 9.07 Mucinous adenocarcinoma of gallbladder.

Fig. 9.08 Signet-ring cell carcinoma of gallbladder.

Fig. 9.09 Adenosquamous carcinoma of gallbladder.

Fig. 9.10 Squamous cell carcinoma of gallbladder.

Fig. 9.11 Undifferentiated carcinoma of gallbladder, spindle and giant cell type. No glandular differentiation.
A diffusely infiltrating linear pattern resembling linitis plastica of the stomach is observed in some cases.

**Adenosquamous carcinoma**
This tumour consists of two malignant components, one glandular and the other squamous. The extent of differentiation of the two components varies, but in general they tend to be moderately differentiated (1357, 1867). Keratin pearls are often present in the squamous component, and mucin is usually demonstrable in the neoplastic glands.

**Squamous cell carcinoma**
This malignant epithelial tumour is composed entirely of squamous cells. The extent of differentiation varies considerably. Keratinizing and non-keratinizing types exist. Spindle cells predominate in some poorly differentiated tumours, which may be confused with sarcomas. Immunostains for cytokeratin may clarify the diagnosis in these spindle cell cases. The tumour may arise from areas of squamous metaplasia. Intraepithelial neoplasia can be found in the metaplastic squamous mucosa [35].

**Small cell carcinoma**
This lesion is covered in the chapter on endocrine tumours of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts.

**Undifferentiated carcinoma**
Undifferentiated carcinomas are more common in the gallbladder than in the extrahepatic bile ducts. Characteristically, glandular structures are absent in undifferentiated carcinomas. There are four histological variants [40, 411, 643, 1360].

- **Undifferentiated carcinoma, spindle and giant cell type.** The spindle and giant cell type is the most common and resembles a sarcoma. These tumours have been referred to as pleomorphic spindle and giant cell adenocarcinomas or sarcomatoid carcinomas. They consist of variable proportions of spindle, giant and polygonal cells, but foci of well-differentiated neoplastic glands are usually found in some of these tumours after extensive sampling. Areas of squamoid differentiation may also be seen. Rarely, foci of osteoclast-like multinucleated giant cells are present. Rarely, foci of osteoclast-like multinucleated giant cells are present. The presence of cytokeratin in the spindle cells may help to distinguish this tumour from carcinosarcoma. Cytokeratin and carcinoembryonic antigen are absent from the mesenchymal component includes foci of heterologous elements such as chondrosarcoma, osteosarcoma, and rhabdomyosarcoma. Cytokeratin and carcinoembryonic antigen are absent from the mesenchymal component.

- **Undifferentiated carcinoma with osteoclast-like giant cells.** This variant contains mononuclear cells and numerous evenly spaced osteoclast-like giant cells resembling giant cell tumour of bone. The mononuclear cells show immunoreactivity for cytokeratin and epithelial membrane antigen while the osteoclast-like giant cells are positive for histiocytic markers such as CD68.

- **Undifferentiated carcinoma, nodular or lobular type.** The fourth variant consists of well defined nodules or lobules of neoplastic cells superficially resembling breast carcinoma.

**Carcinosarcoma**
This malignant tumour consists of a mixture of two components: carcinomatous and sarcomatous. The epithelial elements usually predominate in the form of cords or sheets. Foci of malignant squamous cells are occasionally seen. The mesenchymal component includes foci of heterologous elements such as chondrosarcoma, osteosarcoma, and rhabdomyosarcoma. Cytokeratin and carcinoembryonic antigen are absent from the mesenchymal component.
component, which helps to distinguish carcinosarcomas from spindle and giant cell carcinomas.

**Grading**

Adenocarcinomas can be divided into well, moderately, or poorly differentiated types. The diagnosis of well differentiated adenocarcinoma requires that 95% of the tumour contains glands. For moderately differentiated adenocarcinoma 40 to 94% of the tumour should be composed of glands and for poorly differentiated adenocarcinomas 5 to 39% of the tumour should contain glands. Undifferentiated carcinomas display less than 5% of glandular structures.

**Precursor lesions**

**Adenoma**

Adenomas are benign neoplasms of glandular epithelium (intraepithelial neoplasia) that are typically polypoid, single and well-demarcated. They are more common in women than in men [42]. There is a wide age range; although mostly a disease of adults rare gallbladder adenomas occur in children [1256, 2126]. They are more common in the gallbladder than in the extrahepatic bile ducts, and are found in 0.3-0.5% of gallbladders removed for cholelithiasis or chronic cholecystitis. A small proportion of adenomas progress to carcinoma [42, 909, 967].

Adenomas are often small, asymptomatic, and usually discovered incidentally during cholecystectomy, but they can be multiple, fill the lumen of the gallbladder and be symptomatic. Occasionally, adenomas of the gallbladder occur in association with the Peutz-Jeghers syndrome [521] or with Gardner syndrome [1900, 2041]. Adenomas of the extrahepatic bile ducts are usually symptomatic and cause biliary obstruction. These benign tumours are not associated with lithiasis.

According to their pattern of growth, they are divided into three types: tubular, papillary, and tubulopapillary. Cytologically, they are classified as: pyloric gland type, intestinal type, and biliary type. Tubular adenomas of pyloric gland type are more common in the gallbladder while intestinal type adenomas are more common in the extrahepatic bile ducts [42].

**Tubular adenoma, pyloric-gland type.** A benign tumour composed of closely packed short tubular glands that are similar to pyloric glands. Early lesions appear as well demarcated nodules embedded in the lamina propria and covered with normal biliary epithelium. They are composed of lobules that contain closely packed pyloric-type glands, some of which may be cystically dilated. The epithelial cells are columnar or cuboidal with vesicular or hyperchromatic nuclei and small nucleoli and variable amounts of cytoplasmic mucin. Nodular aggregates of cytologically bland spindle cells with eosinophilic cytoplasm but without keratinization or intercellular bridges known as squamoid morules (984, 1361) are present in about 10% of the cases, whereas frank squamous metaplasia is exceedingly rare. Paneth cells and endocrine cells are often present. By immunohistochemistry, serotonin and a variety of peptide hormones including somatostatin, pancreatic polypeptide, and gastrin have been detected in the cytoplasm of these cells. Smaller lesions show low-grade intraepithelial neoplasia, but larger adenomas may have high-grade changes or foci of invasive carcinoma. As they enlarge, most adenomas develop a pedicle and project into the lumen. Rarely, they extend into or arise from Rokitansky-Aschoff sinuses, a finding that should not be mistaken for carcinoma [42].

**Tubular adenoma, intestinal type.** This benign tumour is composed of tubular glands lined by cells with an intestinal phenotype, and closely resembles colonic adenomas. It consists of tubular glands lined by pseudostratified columnar cells with elongated hyperchromatic nuclei, and high-grade dysplastic changes are frequent. The glands lack invasive properties and focally are arranged in well defined lobules. The adenomatous epithelium may extend into the Rokitansky-Aschoff sinuses, a finding that should not be confused with stromal invasion. Clusters of goblet, Paneth, and endocrine cells are usually mixed with the columnar cells. Serotonin and, less frequently, peptide hormones have been identified in the endocrine cells by immunohistochemistry. Hyperplasia of metaplastic pyloric type glands is often seen at the base of the adenomas.

**Papillary adenoma, intestinal type.** This benign tumour consists predominantly of papillary structures lined by dysplastic cells with an intestinal phenotype. These adenomas, which usually arise in a background of pyloric gland metaplasia, may

---

Fig. 9.15 Papillary adenoma of gallbladder, intestinal type. A Numerous papillary structures project into lumen. B Pseudostratified columnar cells with scattered goblet and Paneth cells.
occur in the gallbladder or the extrahepatic bile ducts. In a series of five intestinal type papillary adenomas of the gallbladder, one progressed to invasive carcinoma [42]. The predominant cell is columnar with elongated hyperchromatic nuclei and little or no cytoplasmic mucin. The cells are pseudostratified, mitotically active, and indistinguishable from those of villous adenomas arising in the large intestine. Tubular glands lined by the same type of epithelium, but representing less than 20% of the tumour, may also be found. Dysplastic changes are more extensive than in pyloric-gland type adenomas. Also present are goblet, Paneth, and serotonin-containing cells. Some of the endocrine cells are immunoreactive for peptide hormones.

**Papillary adenoma, biliary type.** This lesion consists predominantly of papillary structures lined by cells with a biliary phenotype. It is well demarcated and consists of papillary structures lined by tall columnar cells, which except for the presence of more cytoplasmic mucin show minimal variation from normal gallbladder epithelium. Endocrine or Paneth cells are not found. Only mild dysplastic changes are noted. In situ or invasive carcinoma has not been reported in association with these adenomas. This is the rarest form of adenoma of the gallbladder; we have seen only one case. Most papillary lesions composed of normal-appearing gallbladder epithelium are examples of hyperplasia secondary to chronic cholecystitis.

**Tubulo-papillary adenoma.** When tubular glands and papillary structures each comprise more than 20% of the tumour, the term tubulo-papillary adenoma is applied. Two subtypes are recognized: one is composed of tubular glands and papillary structures similar to those of tubulovillous intestinal adenomas; the other subtype consists of tubular glands similar to pyloric glands and papillary structures often lined by foveolar epithelium. Paneth and endocrine cells are present in some. Rarely, tubulo-papillary adenomas arise from the epithelial invaginations of adenomyomatous hyperplasia.

**Other benign biliary lesions**

**Biliary cystadenoma.** These lesions resemble their intrahepatic counterparts (see chapter on bile duct cystadenoma and cystadenocarcinoma). Cystadenomas are seen predominantly among adult females and are usually symptomatic. Some of the tumours may measure up to 20 cm in diameter leading to obstructive jaundice or cholecystitis-like symptoms. More common in the extrahepatic bile ducts than in the gallbladder, cystadenomas are multiloculated neoplasms that contain mucinous or serous fluid and are lined by columnar epithelium reminiscent of bile duct or foveolar gastric epithelium [404]. Occasionally endocrine cells are present. The cellular subepithelial stroma resembles ovarian stroma and shows immunoreactivity for estrogen and progesterone receptors [2029]. The stroma also shows variable fibrosis. Malignant transformation (cystadenocarcinoma) can occur [404].

**Papillomatosis (adenomatosis).** Papillomatosis is a clinicopathological condition characterized by multiple recurring papillary adenomas, that may involve extensive areas of the extrahepatic bile ducts and even extend into the gallbladder and intrahepatic bile ducts. The disease affects both sexes equally. Most patients are adults between 50 and 60 years. Complete excision of the multicentric lesions is difficult and local recurrence is common. The lesion consists of numerous papillary structures as well as complex glandular formations. Because severe dysplasia is often present, papillomatosis is difficult to distinguish from papillary carcinoma. Some regard this lesion as a form of low-grade multicentric intraductal papillary carcinoma. Papillomatosis has a greater potential for malignant transformation than solitary adenomas.

**Intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia)**

If intraepithelial neoplasia is found, multiple sections should be taken to exclude invasive cancer. Cholecystectomy is a curative surgical procedure for patients with in situ carcinoma or with carcinoma extending into the lamina propria [35].

**Epidemiology.** The rate of intraepithelial neoplasia of the gallbladder reflects that of invasive carcinoma. In countries in which carcinoma of the gallbladder is endemic, the prevalence is higher than in countries in which this tumour is sporadic. Studies from different countries have shown that the incidence of high-grade dysplasia or carcinoma in situ in gallbladders with lithiasis has varied from 0.5-3% [35]. This variation in the incidence of intraepithelial neoplasia is also attributable to other factors such as lack of uniformity in morphological criteria and sampling methods.
Macroscopic features. Intraepithelial neoplasia is usually not recognized on macroscopic examination because it often occurs in association with chronic cholecystitis. The mucosa may appear granular, nodular, plaque-like, or trabeculated. The papillary type of intraepithelial neoplasia usually appears as a small, cauliflower-like excrescence that projects into the lumen and can be recognized on close inspection. However, in most cases, the gallbladder shows only a thickened and indurated wall, the result of chronic inflammation and fibrosis.

Microscopic features. Microscopically two types of intraepithelial neoplasia are recognized: papillary and flat, the latter being more common. The papillary type is characterized by short fibrovascular stalks that are covered by dysplastic or neoplastic cells. Intraepithelial neoplasia usually begins on the surface epithelium and subsequently extends downward into the Rokitansky-Aschoff sinuses and into metaplastic pyloric glands. Columnar, cuboidal, and elongated cells with variable degrees of nuclear atypia, loss of polarity, and occasional mitotic figures are characteristic. The dysplastic cells are usually arranged in a single layer, but can be pseudostratified. Later, papillary structures covered by dysplastic epithelium may form. The large nuclei of dysplastic cells may be round, oval, or fusiform, with one or two nucleoli that are more prominent than those of normal cells. The cytoplasm is usually eosino-philic and contains non-sulphated acid and neutral mucin. Goblet cells are found in one third of cases. An abrupt transition between normal-appearing columnar cells and intraepithelial neoplasia is seen in nearly all cases. In general, the cell population of dysplasia is homogeneous, unlike the heterogeneous cell population of the epithelial atypia of repair. Widespread involvement of the mucosa by intraepithelial neoplasia often occurs. For this reason, we have suggested that some, if not most, invasive carcinomas of the gallbladder arise from a field change within the epithelium. The cells of intraepithelial neoplasia are reactive for CEA and for the carbohydrate antigen CA19-9 [35]. Expression of p53 occurs in some lesions [2125].

Differential diagnosis. Reactive epithelial changes (‘atypia of repair’) differs from intraepithelial neoplasia in consisting of a heterogeneous cell population in which columnar mucus-secreting cells, low cuboidal cells, atrophic-appearing epithelium, and pencil-like cells are present. In addition, there is a gradual transition of the cellular abnormalities, in contrast with the abrupt transition seen in intraepithelial neoplasia. The extent of nuclear atypia is less pronounced in reactive changes and immunoreactivity for p53 protein is absent, while usually positive in intraepithelial neoplasia.

High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia and carcinoma in situ. In cases where the cells have all the cytological features of malignancy with frequent mitotic figures, nuclear crowding and prominent pseudostratification, the term carcinoma in situ may be used. Neoplastic cells first appear along the surface epithelium and later spread into the epithelial invaginations and antral-type metaplastic glands. In the late stages of carcinoma in situ, the histological picture is that of back-to-back glands located in the lamina propria but often connected with the surface epithelium. However, not all in situ carcinomas exhibit this type of growth pattern. Some show distinctive papillary features with small fibrovascular stalks lined by neoplastic cells. Not infrequently, a combination of these growth patterns is seen. The differential diagnosis between high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia (severe dysplasia) and carcinoma in situ is difficult and often impossible in many cases. This is not important because the two lesions, which vary only in degree histologically, are closely related biologically.

Histological variants of carcinoma in situ. An in situ carcinoma composed of goblet cells, columnar cells, Paneth cells, and endocrine cells, has been described, which may represent an in situ phase of intestinal-type adenocarcinoma [35, 41]. Another type of in situ intestinal-type carcinoma is composed of cells closely resembling those of colonic carcinomas at the light and electron microscopic lev-
The neoplastic columnar cells extend into the epithelial invaginations and the antral-type glands. Formation of cribriform structures in the lamina propria occurs. This tumour also has scattered endocrine cells, most of which are immunoreactive for serotonin.

Two examples of in situ signet-ring cell carcinoma confined to the surface epithelium and to the epithelial invaginations of the gallbladder have been reported [40]. These in situ signet ring cell carcinomas represented incidental findings in cholecystectomy specimens and were cytologically similar to those reported in the stomach. This unusual form of carcinoma in situ should be distinguished from epithelial cells which acquire signet-ring cell morphology when desquamated within the lumen of dilated metaplastic pyloric glands in cases of chronic cholecystitis and from mucin-containing histiocytes (muciphages).

The morphological type of in situ carcinoma does not always correspond with that of the invasive carcinoma. For example, we have seen conventional adenocarcinoma in situ in the mucosa adjacent to invasive squamous, small cell, and undifferentiated carcinomas.

The wall of the gallbladder with dysplasia or carcinoma in situ usually shows variable inflammatory changes, typically with a predominance of lymphocytes and plasma cells, although lymphoid follicles with germinal centers, xanthogranulomatous inflammation or an acute inflammatory reaction may be present.

**Molecular pathology**

Mutations of TP53 are found in the vast majority of invasive gallbladder carcinomas [2124, 2127]. Loss of heterozygosity (LOH) at chromosomal loci 8p (44%), 9p (50%) and 18q (31%) are also frequently detected [2127]. These genetic alterations are considered early events, while RAS mutations and LOH at 3p, RB, and 5q occur less frequently and are considered late events, probably related to tumour progression. Amplification of the c-erbB-2 gene, that codes for a glycoprotein structurally similar to the epidermal growth factor receptor was detected in 30 of 43 invasive gallbladder carcinomas [1036]. However, no correlation between c-erbB-2 gene amplification and prognosis was found.

In contrast to lesions of the gallbladder, the incidence of TP53 mutations in extrahepatic bile duct carcinomas is lower and appears to be a late molecular event.

Although the frequency of KRAS mutations in gallbladder carcinomas has ranged from 0%-34% in different studies, most investigators have found these mutations to be significantly higher in extrahepatic bile duct tumours than in gallbladder carcinomas [2067]. Depending on the study, the incidence of KRAS mutations in extrahepatic bile duct carcinomas has varied from 0-100% [1586], but most likely, the true incidence is around 56% [2067]. However, the incidence of KRAS mutations is greater in gallbladder carcinomas associated with an anomalous junction of the pancreaticobiliary duct than in carcinomas not associated with this congenital anomaly [661]. These molecular pathology findings support the concept that gallbladder carcinogenesis requires a number of genetic alterations involving activation of oncogenes or inactivation of tumour suppressor genes.

The molecular pathology of adenomas of the gallbladder differs from that of carcinomas. None of 16 adenomas showed TP53 or p16 Ink4/CDKN2a gene mutations, which are common in carcinomas [2126]. Four adenomas had KRAS mutations (2 in codon 12 and 2 in codon 61) which are considered rare and late.
events in the pathogenesis of carcinomas of the gallbladder. Only one adenoma of intestinal type showed loss of heterozygosity at 5q22 [2126]. Intraepithelial neoplasia (both dysplasia and carcinoma in situ) shows a high incidence of loss of heterozygosity at the TP53 gene locus. Other molecular abnormalities include loss of heterozygosity at 9p and 8p loci and the 18q gene. These abnormalities are also early events and most likely contributing factors in the pathogenesis of gallbladder carcinoma. However, KRAS mutations were not detected in intraepithelial neoplasia [2125].

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

The prognosis of tumours of the extrahepatic biliary tract depends primarily on the extent of disease and histological type [694, 695]. Polypoid tumours (which histologically often prove to be papillary carcinomas) have the best prognosis. Non-invasive papillary carcinomas are associated with a better prognosis than other types of invasive carcinomas. Perineural invasion and lymphatic permeation are common in the extrahepatic bile duct carcinoma and are significant prognostic factors [2150, 376].

**Definition**

Tumours with endocrine differentiation arising from the extrahepatic bile ducts and gallbladder.

**Epidemiology**

In an analysis of 8305 cases of carcinoids of all sites, 19 cases of gallbladder and one case of biliary tract carcinoids were recorded, representing 0.2% and 0.01% of cases [1251]. The average age of presentation (60 years) is lower than the average age of presentation of non-carcinoid neoplasms (71 years). The reported male/female ratio is 1:1.2 [1251]. Small cell carcinomas of the gallbladder, like other carcinomas, are more common in females (M/F ratio: 1:1.8) [1359]. The reported average age of presentation is 65 years (range, 43-83 years) [1359]. Small cell carcinomas represent about 4% of all malignant tumours of the gallbladder [1359, 37].

**Aetiology**

Small cell carcinomas are more common in females and are almost always associated with stones [34, 1524]. There is no available information on the aetiology of the very rare carcinoid tumours of the extrahepatic biliary tree.

**Macroscopy**

Carcinoids are usually small grey-white or yellow submucosal nodules or polyps, sometimes infiltrating the muscular wall, that may be located in any part of the gallbladder or the extrahepatic biliary tree [1639, 34]. Small cell carcinomas appear as a nodular mass or diffusely invade the gallbladder wall [1359]. A significant proportion of mixed endocrine-exocrine carcinomas have a polypoid or protruding aspect [2157, 2030].

**Localization**

All types of endocrine tumours are more often located in the gallbladder than in extrahepatic bile ducts [1251, 2157, 1639, 34].

**Clinical features**

Gallbladder carcinoids can cause recurrent upper quadrant pain. Carcinoids of extrahepatic bile ducts typically produce the sudden onset of biliary colic and/or sometimes painless jaundice [1639]. In the majority of cases of small cell carcinoma, the chief complaint is abdominal pain. Other clinical features include abdominal mass, jaundice, and ascites [1359]. A case of primary gastrinoma of the common hepatic duct with Zollinger-Ellison syndrome [1175], and a patient with Cushing syndrome due to an ACTH-secreting small cell carcinoma have been reported [1801].

**Histopathology**

Carcinoid (well differentiated endocrine tumour)

The cells forming this tumour are uniform in size, with round or oval nuclei, inconspicuous nucleolus, and eosinophilic cytoplasm. Neoplastic cells are arranged in combined patterns with trabecular anastomosing structures, tubular structures and solid nests [1639, 299, 603, 177]. Tumour cells show positive staining for Grimelius silver [1639, 195, 115, 926, 1205], chromogranin [1639, 57], neuron-specific enolase [195, 115, 57], and sev-
eral hormones including serotonin (115, 57), gastrin (1175, 1156), and somatostatin (603, 57). Cases showing regional or distant metastases (177, 926, 1205, 57) or signs of local aggressive growth, including invasion of the entire wall (1205, 57) and neural invasion (1205), should be considered as well differentiated endocrine carcinomas (malignant carcinoids).

**Small cell carcinoma (poorly differentiated endocrine carcinoma)**

The cell population and growth patterns of this tumour are similar to those of small cell carcinoma of the lung (38, 40, 1359). Small cell carcinomas appear to be more common in the gallbladder than in the extrahepatic bile ducts. Some mimic carcinoid tumours. Most tumours are composed of round or fusiform cells arranged in sheets, nests, cords, and festoons. Rosette-like structures and tubules are occasionally present. Extensive necrosis and subepithelial growth are constant features. In necrotic areas, intense basophilic staining of the blood vessels occurs. The tumour cells have round or ovoid hyperchromatic nuclei with inconspicuous nucleoli. A few tumour giant cells can be observed in some cases (1359, 34). Occasionally, focal glandular configurations similar to those of adenocarcinomas, and foci of squamous differentiation are seen (40, 774, 40, 1359). Mitotic figures are frequently observed and they are reported to range from 15 to 206 (mean 75) per 10 high power fields (1359). Most small cell carcinomas show scattered Grimelius positive cells. In addition, tumour cells immunoreact with epithelial markers such as EMA, AE1/AE3 and CEA, and endocrine markers such as NSE, chromogranin, serotonin and gastrin (2157, 2030, 1405, 1575). The adenocarcinoma component is usually tubular or papillary, formed by columnar cells, goblet cells and sometimes Paneth cells, but a case of a combined diffuse type tumour in which mucin-containing signet-ring cells were admixed with clear endocrine cells has also been reported (1455). These tumours behave as adenocarcinomas and, therefore, are clinically more aggressive than carcinoids. Adenocarcinoma with endocrine cells should not be included in this category.

**Genetic susceptibility**

Carcinoids of the gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts are infrequently associated with the Zollinger-Ellison, MEN I, or the carcinoid syndromes. One patient with von Hippel-Lindau syndrome and a carcinoid tumour of the extrahepatic bile ducts has been reported.

---

**Mixed endocrine-exocrine carcinoma**

A significant number of cases reported in the older literature as carcinoids, including the cases reviewed by Yamamoto et al. (2157), are in fact mixed endocrine-exocrine carcinomas. These are composite tumours in which areas of adenocarcinoma intermingle with areas of endocrine cell carcinoma formed by solid and/or trabecular structures with cells which are argyrophilic and immunoreactive for endocrine markers, including NSE, chromogranin, serotonin and gastrin (2157, 2030, 1405, 1575). The adenocarcinoma component is usually tubular or papillary, formed by columnar cells, goblet cells and sometimes Paneth cells, but a case of a combined diffuse type tumour in which mucin-containing signet-ring cells were admixed with clear endocrine cells has also been reported (1455). These tumours behave as adenocarcinomas and, therefore, are clinically more aggressive than carcinoids. Adenocarcinoma with endocrine cells should not be included in this category.

---

**Fig. 9.22 Small cell carcinoma lying below normal gallbladder epithelium.**

**Fig. 9.21 Carcinoid tumour of common bile duct.** A A band of fibrous tissue separates the tumour from normal bile duct epithelium. B Carcinoid cells with round nuclei and eosinophilic cytoplasm. C The tumour cells are immunoreactive for serotonin.
Genetics
Overexpression of TP53 has been found in 64% of small cell carcinomas of the gallbladder [1359], compared with a frequency of 44% in small cell carcinomas of the lung [773] and 75% in small cell carcinomas of the stomach [1589].

Prognostic factors
The percentage of gallbladder carcinoids showing regional and distant metastases has been estimated as approximately 44% and 11%, respectively [1251]. The 5-year survival rate was 41% in SEER data. Carcinoid tumours larger than 2 cm often extend into the liver or metastasize. Complete excision of small tumours is usually curative. The prognosis of small cell carcinoma of the gallbladder is poor, with only one of 18 patients [34] surviving 11 months following cholecystectomy, radiotherapy, and chemotherapy. In one study, the survival rates differed significantly between stages I, II, III and stage IV [1359]. The survival of patients with small cell carcinoma of the gallbladder appears to be shorter than that of patients with papillary adenocarcinoma [1359].

Neural and mesenchymal tumours

Paraganglioma
This benign tumour is composed of chief cells and sustentacular cells arranged in a nesting or zellballen pattern. The chief cells are argyrophilic and stain for neuron-specific enolase and chromogranin. The sustentacular cells are S-100 protein positive. The tumour is located in either the subserosa or muscular wall of the gallbladder and apparently arises from normal paraganglia. This rare and small tumour is usually an incidental finding in cholecystectomy specimens. Paragangliomas also occur in the extrahepatic bile ducts, where they may be symptomatic.

Granular cell tumour
Granular cell tumours are the most common benign non-epithelial tumours of the extrahepatic biliary tract. They are more common in the bile ducts than in the gallbladder. Although usually single, granular cell tumours may be multicentric or may coexist with one or more granular cell tumours in other sites, especially the skin.

Ganglioneuromatosis
Ganglioneuromatosis of the gallbladder is a component of the type llb multiple endocrine neoplasia syndrome. The histological changes consist of Schwann cell and ganglion cell proliferation in the lamina propria as well as enlarged and distorted nerves in the muscle layer and subserosa. Neurofibromatosis is exceedingly rare in the gallbladder but has been reported in association with multiple neurofibromatosis. Embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma (‘sarcoma botryoides’) is the most common malignant neoplasm of the biliary tract in childhood. It occurs more frequently in the bile ducts than in the gallbladder. Kaposi sarcoma of the extrahepatic biliary tract is an incidental autopsy finding in the acquired immune deficiency syndrome. The haemorrhagic lesions are usually located in the subserosa or muscular wall of the gallbladder or in the periductal connective tissue of the bile ducts. Other malignant non-epithelial tumours are leiomyosarcoma, malignant fibrous histiocytoma and angiosarcoma. Leiomyoma, lipoma, haemangioma, and lymphangioma have been described. A benign stromal tumour of the gallbladder with interstitial cells of Cajal phenotype has been reported recently [35].
Lymphoma of the gallbladder

In common with lymphoma elsewhere in the digestive system, primary lymphoma of the gallbladder is defined as an extra-nodal lymphoma arising in the gallbladder with the bulk of the disease localized to this site (796). Contiguous lymph node involvement and distant spread may be seen but the primary clinical presentation is in the gallbladder with therapy directed at this site.

Primary lymphoma of the gallbladder is extremely rare, with only about 13 cases reported (282, 1201, 94, 138). Two cases of low-grade B-cell MALT lymphoma have been described (1201, 138), while the majority of the remainder have been large B-cell lymphomas. MALT lymphomas may arise within acquired MALT that is frequently encountered within gallbladders associated with chronic cholecystitis (1943). The morphology of primary MALT lymphoma of the gallbladder resembles that seen elsewhere in the digestive tract. Lymphoid follicles are surrounded by an infiltrate of centrocyte-like (CCL) cells showing variable plasma cell differentiation. Infiltration of the epithelium with the formation of lymphoepithelial lesions is a typical feature. Characteristically, the CCL cells show expression of the pan-B-cell markers CD20 and CD79a, and there is frequent expression of bcl-2 protein. Tumour cells are usually negative for CD5 and CD10 but there may be expression of CD43.

Secondary tumours and melanoma

Incidence and origins

Although rare in clinical practice, gallbladder and extrahepatic bile duct metastases were encountered in 15% and 6% of cases respectively in an autopsy study of melanoma patients (373). Indeed, malignant melanoma accounts for more than 50% of all reported cases of gallbladder and intrabiliary metastases (100). Other metastatic lesions include carcinomas of the kidney, lung, breast, ovary and oesophagus (35, 1674, 2085); some examples result from transcoelomic spread in the setting of peritoneal carcinomatosis. The gallbladder and extrahepatic bile ducts may also be involved by direct extension from carcinomas of the pancreas, stomach, colon and liver.

Metastatic infiltration of the common bile duct by carcinoma of the breast, giving rise to obstructive jaundice, has been reported (471). Certain types of non-Hodgkin lymphoma (e.g. mantle cell lymphoma) may also involve the common bile duct.

Malignant melanoma

Primary malignant melanoma is exceedingly rare in the gallbladder. Junctional activity in the epithelium adjacent to the tumour, absence of a primary melanoma elsewhere in the body and long term survival are important features to distinguish primary from the more commonly occurring metastatic melanoma. However, junctional activity has been reported in metastatic melanoma in the gallbladder.

Clinical features

Involvement of the gallbladder by metastatic tumour rarely produces symptoms, which could explain the paucity of clinical reports published in the literature (373, 427). When symptoms are present, they are usually those of acute cholecystitis (1433, 1013, 427). Patients with bile duct metastases may present with obstructive jaundice (180). Ultrasound may be used to evaluate metastatic lesions within the gallbladder. Computed tomography is also helpful especially for assessing the extent of tumour when therapeutic intervention is contemplated (1013). The common bile duct is best imaged through the use of ultrasound, endoscopic retrograde cholangiography, and percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography.

Macroscopy

Intraluminal metastases of melanoma tend to be polypoid whilst metastatic carcinoma of the breast and lymphoma produce diffuse infiltrates and strictures.

Histopathology

The features are similar to those observed in other organs.
CHAPTER 10

Tumours of the Exocrine Pancreas

Pancreatic carcinoma is a highly malignant neoplasm that still carries a very poor prognosis. Ductal adenocarcinoma is the most frequent type. Although cigarette smoking has been established as a causative factor, the risk attributable to tobacco abuse amounting to approximately 30%. An increased risk is also associated with hereditary pancreatitis, but additional aetiological factors remain to be identified.

Significant progress has been made in the understanding of the molecular basis of ductal carcinomas. KRAS point mutations and inactivation of the tumour suppressor genes p16, TP53 and DPC4 have been identified as most frequent genetic alterations.

Non-ductal pancreatic neoplasms span a wide range of histological features that need to be recognized by pathologists as several entities are associated with distinct opportunities for therapy.
### WHO histological classification of tumours of the exocrine pancreas

#### Epithelial tumours

**Benign**
- Serous cystadenoma 8441/0
- Mucinous cystadenoma 8470/0
- Intraductal papillary-mucinous adenoma 8453/0
- Mature teratoma 9080/0

**Borderline (uncertain malignant potential)**
- Mucinous cystic neoplasm with moderate dysplasia 8470/1
- Intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasm with moderate dysplasia 8453/1
- Solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm 8452/1

**Malignant**
- Ductal adenocarcinoma 8500/3
- Mucinous noncystic carcinoma 8480/3
- Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma 8470/3
- Acinar cell carcinoma 8550/3
- Acinar cell cystadenocarcinoma 8551/3
- Mixed acinar-endocrine carcinoma 8154/3

**Others**
- Serous cystadenocarcinoma 8441/3
- Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma 8470/3
- Intraductal papillary-mucinous carcinoma 8453/3
- Solid-pseudopapillary carcinoma 8452/3

#### TNM classification of tumours of the exocrine pancreas

**Primary Tumour (T)**
- TX Primary tumour cannot be assessed
- T0 No evidence of primary tumour
- Tis Carcinoma in situ
- T1 Tumour limited to the pancreas, 2 cm or less in greatest dimension
- T2 Tumour limited to the pancreas, more than 2 cm in greatest dimension
- T3 Tumour extends directly into any of the following: duodenum, bile duct, peripancreatic tissues
- T4 Tumour extends directly into any of the following: stomach, spleen, colon, adjacent large vessels

**Regional Lymph Nodes (N)**
- NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed
- N0 No regional lymph node metastasis
- N1 Regional lymph node metastasis
  - N1a Metastasis in a single regional lymph node
  - N1b Metastasis in multiple regional lymph nodes

**Distant Metastasis (M)**
- MX Distant metastasis cannot be assessed
- M0 No distant metastasis
- M1 Distant metastasis

**Stage grouping**
- Stage 0 Tis N0 M0
- Stage I T1 N0 M0
- Stage II T2 N0 M0
- Stage III T1 N1 M0
- Stage IV A T4 Any N M0
- Stage IV B Any T Any N M1

---

1 Morphology code of the International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) and the Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (http://snomed.org). Behaviour is coded /0 for benign tumours, /1 for unspecified, borderline or uncertain behaviour, /2 for in situ carcinomas and /3 for malignant tumours.

---

TNM classification of tumours of the exocrine pancreas

1 This classification applies only to carcinomas of the exocrine pancreas.
2 A help desk for specific questions about the TNM classification is available at http://tnm.uicc.org.
3 Peripancreatic tissues include the surrounding retroperitoneal fat (retroperitoneal soft tissue or retroperitoneal space), including mesentery (mesenteric fat), mesocolon, greater and lesser omentum, and peritoneum. Direct invasion to bile ducts and duodenum includes involvement of ampulla of Vater.
4 Adjacent large vessels are the portal vein, coeliac artery, and superior mesenteric and common hepatic arteries and veins (not splenic vessels).
Ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas

Definition
A carcinoma occurring almost exclusively in adults that probably arises from and is phenotypically similar to, pancreatic duct epithelia, with mucin production and expression of a characteristic cytokeratin pattern.

ICD-O codes
Ductal adenocarcinoma 8500/3
Mucinous noncystic carcinoma 8480/3
Signet ring cell carcinoma 8490/3
Adenosquamous carcinoma 8560/3
Undifferentiated (anaplastic) carcinoma 8020/3
Undifferentiated carcinoma with osteoclast-like giant cells 8035/3
Mixed ductal-endocrine carcinoma 8154/3

Epidemiology
Incidence and geographical distribution
Ductal adenocarcinoma and its variants are the most common neoplasms in the pancreas, representing 85-90% of all pancreatic neoplasms [359, 941, 1781]. In developed countries, the annual age-adjusted incidence rates (world standard population) range from 3.1 (Herault, France) to 20.8 (central Louisiana, USA, blacks) per 100,000 males and from 2.0 (Herault, France) to 11.0 (San Francisco, CA, USA, blacks) per 100,000 females [1471]. Rates from most developing countries range from 1.0 to close to 10 per 100,000. Incidence and mortality rates are almost identical, since survival rates for pancreatic carcinoma are very low.

Time trends
After a steady increase between 1930 and 1980, the incidence rates have levelled off [593]. It is currently the fifth leading cause of cancer death in Western countries, second only to colon cancer among malignancies of the digestive tract.

Age and sex distribution
Approximately 80% of cases manifest clinically in patients 60-80 years; cases below the age of 40 years are rare [1781]. The incidence of pancreatic carcinoma is slightly higher among men than women, with a male/female ratio of 1.6 in developed nations and 1.1 in developing countries. Blacks have distinctly higher rates than whites [593].

Aetiology
The development of pancreatic carcinoma is strongly related to cigarette smoking, which carries a 2-3 fold relative risk (RR) that increases with the number of pack-years of smoking [21]. Although the association between cigarette smoking and pancreatic carcinoma is not as strong as that between cigarette smoking and lung cancer (RR > 20), it has been estimated that a substantial reduction of the number of smokers in the European Union could save as many as 68,000 lives that would otherwise be lost to pancreatic cancer during the next 20 years [1293]. Chronic pancreatitis, past gastric surgery, occupational exposure to chemicals such as chlorinated hydrocarbon solvents, radiation exposure, and diabetes mellitus have also been associated with the development of pancreatic carcinoma [593, 1100, 2080]. A markedly increased risk has been observed in hereditary pancreatitis [1101].

A number of dietary factors have been putatively connected with pancreatic cancer, including a diet low in fibre and high in meat and fat [593]. Coffee consumption was once thought to be a risk factor for pancreatic carcinoma, but recent studies showed no significant associations [593].

Localization
60-70% of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas are found in the head of the gland, the remainder occur in the body and/or tail. Pancreatic head tumours are mainly localized in the upper half, rarely in the uncinate process [1781]. Rarely, heterotopic pancreatic tissue gives rise to a carcinoma [596, 1898].

Clinical features
Symptoms and signs
Clinical features include abdominal pain, unexplained weight loss, jaundice and pruritus. Diabetes mellitus is present in
70% of patients, usually with a diabetes history of less than 2 years. Later symptoms are related to liver metastasis and/or invasion of adjacent organs (stomach, colon) or of the peritoneal cavity (ascites). Occasionally, patients present with acute pancreatitis (621), migratory thrombophlebitis, hypoglycaemia, or hypercalcaemia (1261).

**Imaging and laboratory tests**

Currently, the most important tests for establishing the diagnosis of pancreatic carcinoma are ultrasonography (US) and computerised tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), with or without guided percutaneous fine-needle biopsy, endoscopic retrograde cholangiography (ERCP), endoscopic ultrasonography (EUS) and tumour marker determination (CA 19-9, Du-Pan 2, CEA, Span-1). The sensitivity and specificity of any of these tests alone ranges between 55 and 95%. By applying combinations of these tests, accuracy rates of more than 95% have been achieved (2061). On transabdominal US and on EUS, pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas are characterised as echo-poor and inhomogeneous mass lesions in about 80% of cases. About 10% of the tumours appear echo-rich. With increasing size, tumours tend to become inhomogeneous, with cystic and echo-rich areas. Indirect signs of a pancreatic tumour (dilatation of pancreatic and/or common bile duct) are usually found proximal to tumours larger than 3 cm. On EUS lymph node metastases appear as enlarged echo-poor nodes. ERCP may demonstrate displacement, narrowing, or obstruction of the pancreatic duct. Angiography is helpful in preoperative management. CT shows pancreatic adenocarcinomas as hypodense masses in up to 92% of cases (528). Diffuse tumour involvement of the pancreas is found in about 4%. In up to 4% the pancreatic and common bile duct are dilated without an identifiable mass.

**KRAS mutations.** Mutations in codon 12 of the KRAS gene have been detected in the stool, in pancreatic juice and/or blood samples from patients with proven ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas (224, 960, 1876), but their diagnostic value in is still controversial.

**Fine needle aspiration (FNA)**

FNA can be performed percutaneously with guidance by imaging techniques or under direct visualisation at surgery. Aspirates from a typical, well to moderately differentiated ductal adenocarcinoma show a cellular aspirate (32, 940). Pancreatic juice cytology obtained from ERCP is less sensitive than percutaneous or intraoperative FNA (76 versus 90 to 100%) (32, 1242, 1311).

**Macroscopy**

Ductal adenocarcinomas are firm and poorly defined masses. The cut surfaces are yellow to white. Haemorrhage and necrosis are uncommon, but microcystic areas may occur. In surgical series, the size of most carcinomas of the head of the pancreas ranges from 1.5 to 5 cm, with a mean diameter between 2.5 and 3.5 cm. Carcinomas of the body/tail are usually somewhat larger at diagnosis. Tumours with a diameter less than 2 cm are infrequent (697) and may be difficult to recognise by gross inspection. Carcinomas of the head of the pancreas usually invade the common bile duct and/or the main pancreatic duct and produce stenosis that results in proximal dilatation of both duct systems. Complete obstruction of the main pancreatic duct leads to extreme prestenotic duct dilatation with duct haustration and fibrous atrophy of the parenchyma (i.e. obstructive chronic pancreatitis). More advanced pancreatic head carcinomas involve the ampulla of Vater and/or the duodenal wall, causing ulcerations. Carcinomas in the pancreatic body or tail obstruct the main pancreatic duct, but typically do not involve the common bile duct.

**Tumour spread and staging**

It is an exception to find a resected carcinoma that is still limited to the pancreas (1414). In head carcinomas, peripancre-
iatric tumour invasion, often via perineural sheaths, primarily involves the retroperitoneal fatty tissue. Subsequently, retroperitoneal veins and nerves are invaded. Direct extension into neighbouring organs and/or the peritoneum is seen in advanced cases. In carcinomas of the body and tail, local extension is usually greater, because of delayed tumour detection, and includes invasion of the spleen, stomach, left adrenal gland, colon, and peritoneum (359, 941).

Lymphatic spread of pancreatic head carcinomas involves, in descending order of frequency, the retroaortic (posterior pancreaticoduodenal) and the superior pancreatic head groups, the inferior head and the superior body groups, and the anterior pancreaticoduodenal and the inferior body groups (359). This lymph node compartment is usually resected using a standard Whipple procedure (1955). More distal nodal metastases may occur in the ligamentum hepatoduodenale, at the coeliac trunk, the root of the superior mesenteric artery, and in paraaortic nodes at the level of the renal arteries. These lymph node compartments are only removed if an extended Whipple procedure is performed. Carcinomas of the body and tail metastasise especially to the superior and inferior body and tail lymph node groups and the splenic hilus lymph nodes. They may also spread via lymphatic channels to pleura and lung.

Haematogenous metastasis occurs, in approximate order of frequency, to the liver, lungs, adrenals, kidneys, bones, brain, and skin (359, 941, 1231).

Staging
The 1997 TNM classification (66) is presented on page 220. Another staging system has been published by the Japan Pancreas Society (832).

Histopathology
Most ductal adenocarcinomas are well to moderately differentiated. They are characterized by well-developed glandular structures, which more or less imitate normal pancreatic ducts, embedded in desmoplastic stroma. The large amount of fibrous stroma accounts for their firm consistency. Variations in the degree of differentiation within the same neoplasm are frequent, but well differentiated carcinomas with foci of poor differentiation are uncommon.

Well differentiated carcinomas consist of large duct-like structures, combined with medium-sized neoplastic glands. Tubular or cribriform patterns are typical; there may also be small irregular papillary projections without a distinct fibrovascular stalk, particularly in large duct-like structures. Mitotic activity is low. In between the neoplastic glands there may be a few non-neoplastic ducts as well as remnants of acini and individual islets. Sometimes, the neoplastic duct-like glands are so well differentiated that they are difficult to distinguish from non-neoplastic ducts. However, the mucin-containing neoplastic glands may be ruptured or incompletely formed, a feature that is not seen in normal ducts. The mucin-producing neoplastic cells tend to be columnar, have eosinophilic and occasionally pale or even clear cytoplasm, and are usually larger than those of non-neoplastic ducts. They contain large round to ovoid nuclei which may vary in size, with sharp nuclear membranes and distinct nucleoli that are not found in normal duct cells. Moreover, although the neoplastic cell nuclei tend to be situated at the base of the cell, they always show some loss of polarity.

Moderately differentiated carcinomas predominantly show a mixture of medium-sized duct-like and tubular structures of variable shape, embedded in desmoplastic stroma. Incompletely formed glands are common. Compared with the well differentiated carcinoma, there is a greater variation in nuclear size, chromatin structure and prominence of nucleoli. Mitotic figures are rather frequent. The cytoplasm is usually slightly eosinophilic, but clear cells are occasionally abundant. Mucin production appears to be decreased and intraductal in situ components are somewhat less frequent than in well differentiated carcinomas. Foci of poor and irregular glandular differentiation are often found at the leading edge of the neoplasm, particularly where it invades the peripancreatic tissue.

Poorly differentiated ductal carcinomas are infrequent. They are composed of a mixture of densely packed, small irregular glands as well as solid tumour cell sheets and nests, which entirely replace the acinar tissue. While typical large, duct-like structures and intraductal tumour components are absent, there may be small squamoid, spindle cell, or anaplastic foci (comprising by definition less than 20% of the tumour tissue). There may be some scattered inflammatory cells. Foci of necrosis and haemorrhage occur. The neoplastic cells show marked pleomorphism, little or no mucin production, and brisk mitotic activity. At the advancing edge of the carcinoma, the gland and the peripancreatic tissue are infiltrated by small clusters of neoplastic cells.

Changes in non-neoplastic pancreas
All ductal adenocarcinomas are associated with more or less developed fibrosclerotic and inflammatory changes.
in the adjoining non-neoplastic pancreas, due to carcinomatous duct obstructions (obstructive chronic pancreatitis). In cases of complete occlusion of the main duct, there is marked upstream dilatation of the duct and almost complete fibrotic atrophy of the parenchyma. In contrast to chronic pancreatitis due to alcoholism, intraductal calcifications are generally absent. Poorly differentiated carcinomas usually destroy the islets. In the well and moderately differentiated neoplasms, however, islets may be found entrapped in neoplastic tissue. In addition, scattered endocrine cells occur attached to or intermingled between neoplastic columnar cells. Only in exceptional cases do the endocrine cells constitute a second cell component of the ductal carcinoma (see mixed ductal-endocrine carcinoma).

Histochemistry and immunohistochemistry

Although no histochemical or immunohistochemical marker is able to unequivocally distinguish pancreatic from extra-pancreatic adenocarcinoma, some markers are useful in separating ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas from non-duct-type tumours or other gastrointestinal carcinomas.

Mucin. Ductal adenocarcinomas mainly stain for sulphated acid mucins but focally also for neutral mucins (1714). Immunohistochemically, most ductal adenocarcinomas express MUC1, MUC3 and MUC5/6 (but not MUC2) (1918, 2179), CA 19-9, Du-Pan 2, Span-1, CA 125 and TAG72 (1714, 1884). The expression patterns of CA 19-9, Du-Pan 2, Span-1, CA 125 and TAG 72 are largely comparable in their immunoreactivity and specificity. These markers also label the epithelium of normal pancreatic ducts to some extent, particularly in chronic pancreatitis, and the tumour cells of some serous cystadenomas and acinar cell carcinomas (1282).

Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA). Monospecific antibodies against CEA that do not recognise other members of the CEA family are capable of discriminating between non-neoplastic duct changes, such as ductal papillary hyperplasia, and a variety of neoplasms [119]. CEA is negative in serous cystadenoma.

Cytokeratins, vimentin, endocrine markers and enzymes. Normal pancreatic and biliary ductal cells and pancreatic centroacinar cells express the cytokeratins (CK) 7, 8, 18, 19 and occasionally also 4 (1696). Acinar cells contain only CK 8 and 18, and islet cells 8, 18 and occasionally also 19. Ductal adenocarcinomas express the same set of cytokeratins as the normal duct epithelium, i.e. CK 7, 8, 18 and 19. More than 50% of the carcinomas also express CK 4 (1696), but are usually negative for CK 20 (1259). As the usual keratin patterns of non-duct-type pancreatic neoplasms (i.e. acinar carcinomas and endocrine tumours, CK 8, 18 and 19) and gut carcinomas (i.e. CK 8, 18, 19 and 20) differ from that of ductal carcinoma, it is possible to distinguish these tumours on the basis of their CK profile.

Ductal adenocarcinomas are usually negative for vimentin (1696). With rare exceptions (see mixed ductal-endocrine carcinoma), they also fail to label with endocrine markers such as synaptophysin and the chromogranins, but may contain, particularly if well differentiated, some scattered (possibly non-neoplastic) endocrine cells in close association with the neoplastic cells (167). They are generally negative for pancreatic enzymes such as trypsin, chymotrypsin and lipase (739, 1282).

Growth factors and adhesion molecules.

Pancreatic carcinomas overexpress epidermal growth factor and its receptor, c-erbB-2, transforming growth factor alpha [380, 1676, 2163], metallothionein (1409), CD44v6 (259, 1880) and membranous E-cadherin (1519).

Ultrastructure

Ductal adenocarcinoma cells are characterized by mucin granules in the apical cytoplasm, irregular microvilli on the luminal surface, and a more or less polarized arrangement of the differently sized nuclei (359, 901, 1714). The content of the mucin granules (0.4-2.0 μm) varies from solid-electron dense to filamentous and punctate; often there is a dense

![Fig. 10.05 Undifferentiated carcinoma exhibiting extreme pleomorphism with giant cells.](image_url)

![Fig. 10.06 Undifferentiated carcinoma with osteoclast-like giant cells. A The carcinoma is in the uncinate process and shows haemorrhagic necrosis. B There is marked cellular pleomorphism with scattered osteoclast-like giant cells and a well-differentiated ductal carcinoma component (left upper corner).](image_url)
Ductal adenocarcinoma

225

eccentric core. Some cells have features of gastric foveolar cells, showing granules with a punctate-cerebroid structure (1714). Loss of tumour differentiation is characterized by loss of cell polarity, disappearance of a basal lamina, appearance of irregular luminal spaces, and loss of mucin granules (901).

Histological variants
Adenosquamous carcinoma and undifferentiated (anaplastic) carcinoma (including osteoclast-like giant cell tumours), mucinous noncystic adenocarcinoma and signet-ring cell carcinoma are considered variants of ductal adenocarcinoma because most of these carcinomas, even if poorly differentiated, contain some foci showing neoplastic glands with ductal differentiation (288, 359, 941, 947, 1781).

Adenosquamous carcinoma
This rare neoplasm, relative frequency 3-4% (941, 359, 813, 1415), is characterized by the presence of variable proportions of mucin-producing glandular elements and squamous components. The squamous component should account for at least 30% of the tumour tissue. In addition, there may be anaplastic and spindle cell foci. Pure squamous carcinomas are very rare.

Undifferentiated (anaplastic) carcinoma
Also called giant cell carcinoma, pleomorphic large cell carcinoma, and sarcomatoid carcinoma, these tumours have a relative frequency of 2-7%. They are composed of large eosinophilic pleomorphic cells and/or ovoid to spindle-shaped cells that grow in poorly cohesive formations supported by scanty fibrous stroma. Commonly the carcinomas contain small foci of atypical glandular elements (359, 941, 1786, 1962). Carcinomas consisting predominantly of spindle cells may also contain areas of squamoid differentiation. High mitotic activity as well as perineural, lymphatic, and blood vessel invasion is found in almost all cases. Immunohistochemically, some or most tumour cells express cytokeratins and usually also vimentin (740). Electron microscopy reveals microvilli and mucin granules in some cases (359). Undifferentiated carcinomas with a neoplastic mesenchymal component (carcinosarcoma) have so far not been described.

Undifferentiated carcinoma with osteoclast-like giant cells
This rare neoplasm is composed of pleomorphic to spindle-shaped cells and scattered non-neoplastic osteoclast-like giant cells with usually more than 20 uniformly small nuclei. In many cases there is an associated in situ or invasive adenocarcinoma (359). The osteoclast-like giant cells are often concentrated near areas of haemorrhage and may contain haemosiderin and, occasionally, phagocytosed mononuclear cells. Osteoid formation may also be found. Immunohistochemically, at least some of the neoplastic cells express cytokeratin, vimentin and p53 (740, 2095). The osteoclast-like giant cells, in contrast, are negative for cytokeratin and p53, but positive for vimentin, leukocyte common antigen (CD56) and macrophage markers such as KP1 (740, 1258, 2095).

The mean age of patients with osteoclast-like giant cell tumours is 60 years but there is a wide age range from 32 to 82 years (1370). Some tumours are found in association with mucinous cystic neoplasms (1258, 2095, 2198). In the early reports on this tumour it was suggested that they may have a more favourable prognosis than the usual ductal adenocarcinoma (359). More recently a mean survival of 12 months has been reported.

Mucinous noncystic carcinoma
This uncommon carcinoma (relative frequency: 1-3%) (941) has also been called ‘colloid’ or gelatinous carcinoma. Mucin accounts for > 50% of the tumour. The large pools of mucin are partially lined by well-differentiated cuboidal cells and contain clumps or strands of tumour cells. Some floating cells may be of the signet-ring cell type. Sex and age distribution are similar to those of ductal adenocarcinoma. The tumours may be very large and are usually well demarcated. The development of pseudomyxoma peritonei has been described (285). It is of interest that the invasive component of some of the intraductal papillary-mucinous tumours resembles mucinous noncystic carcinoma. Mucinous noncystic carcinoma should not be confused with mucinous cystic tumour because of the much better prognosis of the latter (see chapter on mucinous cystic neoplasms).

Signet-ring cell carcinoma
The extremely rare signet-ring cell carcinoma is an adenocarcinoma composed almost exclusively of cells filled with mucin (1781, 1951). The prognosis is extremely poor; a gastric primary should always be excluded before making this diagnosis.
Mixed ductal-endocrine carcinoma

Mixed ductal-endocrine carcinoma (947) has also been referred to as mixed carcinoid-adenocarcinoma, mucinous carcinoid tumour (359), or simply mixed exocrine-endocrine tumour. This neoplasm is characterized by an intimate admixture of ductal and endocrine cells in the primary tumour as well as in its metastases. By definition, the endocrine cells should comprise at least one third to one half of the tumour tissue. The ductal differentiation is defined by mucin production and the presence of a duct type marker such as CEA. The endocrine cells are characterized by the presence of neuroendocrine markers and/or hormonal products; immunoexpression of all four islet hormones, amylin (IAPP), serotonin, pancreatic polypeptide (PP), and occasionally gastrin have been described (167).

Mixed ductal-endocrine carcinomas, as defined above, seem to be exceptionally rare in the pancreas (1714, 1781). Biologically, the mixed carcinoma behaves like the usual ductal adenocarcinoma. Acinar cell carcinomas (739, 1694, 1985) and pancreatoblastomas (741) with some endocrine and ductal elements, and endocrine tumours with ductal components (1372, 1941) are not discussed here, because their behaviour is dictated by their acinar and endocrine elements. Mixed ductal-endocrine carcinomas should also be distinguished from ductal adenocarcinomas with scattered endocrine cells, since scattered endocrine cells are found in 40-80% of ductal adenocarcinomas (167, 289) and seem to be particularly frequent in the well differentiated tumours, where they are either lined up along the base of the neoplastic ductal structures or lie between the neoplastic columnar cells. 'Collision tumours' composed of two topographically separate components are not included in the mixed ductal-endocrine category.

Other rare carcinomas

Other very rare carcinomas of probable ductal phenotype include clear cell carcinoma (359, 882, 1908, 1121) and ciliated cell carcinoma (see chapter on miscellaneous carcinomas) (1276, 1786). Carcinomas with ‘medullary’ histology have recently been described (590); these lesions are associated with wild-type KRAS status and microsatellite instability. The so-called microglandular carcinomas (359) or microadenocarcinomas are distinguished by a microglandular to solid-cribriform pattern. They most likely do not form an entity of their own but belong to either the ductal, endocrine, or acinar carcinomas.

Grading

A few formal grading systems have been described. Miller et al. graded pancreatic tumours using the system of Broder, which distinguishes four grades of cellular atypia. High-grade carcinomas (Broder grades 3 and 4) were larger and the frequency of venous thrombosis and metastasis higher than in low-grade tumours. A more recent grading system is based on combined assessment of histological and cytological features and mitotic activity (944, 1119). If there is intratumour heterogeneity, i.e. a variation in the degree of differentiation and mitotic activity, the higher grade and mitotic activity is assigned. This rule also applies if only a minor component (less than half of the tumour) was of lower grade. Using this system, there is a correlation between grade and survival and grade is an independent prognostic variable (944, 1119).

Precursor lesions

Pancreatic neoplasms

Mucinous cystic neoplasms and intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms may progress to invasive cancer. In the case of mucinous cystic neoplasms, the invasive component usually resembles ductal adenocarcinoma (1781). In the case of intraductal papillary-mucinous

Fig. 10.09 Pancreatic duct showing high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia (PanIN III).
carcinoma, the invasive component either corresponds to a usual ductal adenocarcinoma or to mucinous noncystic carcinoma (1781).

**Severe ductal dysplasia – carcinoma in situ**
This change of the ductal epithelium is characterized by irregular epithelial budding and bridging, small papillae lacking fibrovascular stalks, and severe nuclear abnormalities such as loss of polarity, pleomorphism, coarse chromatin, dense nucleoli and mitotic figures. The lesion is often surrounded by one or two layers of fibrosclerotic tissue. Here, no attempt is made to distinguish between severe dysplasia and carcinoma in situ, since it is very difficult, if not impossible, to draw a clear distinction between these two changes, which both represent high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia. The lesion corresponds to PanIN III in the proposed terminology of pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia (Table 10.01). High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia is commonly found in association with an invasive ductal adenocarcinoma (358, 555, 943), and may represent either a precursor to invasive carcinoma or continuous intraductal extensions of the invasive tumour. Similar duct changes have also been described remote from the macroscopic tumour (1781) or years before the development of an invasive ductal carcinoma (185, 191).

**Duct changes**
With the exception of high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia, the precursors to infiltrating ductal adenocarcinomas are still ill-defined. Putative precursor lesions (Table 10.01) include mucinous cell hypertrophy, ductal papillary hyperplasia with mucinous cell hypertrophy, mucoid transformation, simple hyperplasia, flat ductal hyperplasia, mucous hyperplasia, hyperplasia with pyloric gland metaplasia, ductal hyperplasia grade 1, non-papillary epithelial hyperplasty, nonpapillary ductal hyperplasia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommended WHO term</th>
<th>Previous WHO classification (947)</th>
<th>Other synonyms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Squamous metaplasia</td>
<td>Squamous metaplasia</td>
<td>Epidermoid metaplasia, multilayered metaplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete squamous metaplasia</td>
<td>Incomplete squamous metaplasia</td>
<td>focal epithelial hyperplasia, focal atypical epithelial hyperplasia, multilayered metaplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PanIN-IA</td>
<td>Mucinous cell hypertrophy</td>
<td>Mucinous cell hyperplasia, mucinous ductal hyperplasia, mucoid transformation, simple hyperplasia, flat ductal hyperplasia, mucous hyperplasia, hyperplasia with pyloric gland metaplasia, ductal hyperplasia grade 1, non-papillary epithelial hyperplasty, nonpapillary ductal hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PanIN-IB</td>
<td>Ductal papillary hyperplasia</td>
<td>Papillary ductal hyperplasia, ductal hyperplasia grade 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PanIN-II</td>
<td>Any PanIN-I lesion with moderate dysplasia as defined in the text</td>
<td>Adenomatous hyperplasia, ductular cell hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PanIN-III</td>
<td>Severe ductal dysplasia</td>
<td>Ductal hyperplasia grade 3, atypical hyperplasia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 10.02**
Histopathological grading of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (1119).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tumour grade</th>
<th>Glandular differentiation</th>
<th>Mucin production</th>
<th>Mitoses (per 10 HPF)</th>
<th>Nuclear features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1</td>
<td>Well differentiated</td>
<td>Intensive</td>
<td>≤ 5</td>
<td>Little polymorphism, polar arrangement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2</td>
<td>Moderately differentiated duct like structures and tubular glands</td>
<td>Irregular</td>
<td>6-10</td>
<td>Moderate polymorphism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3</td>
<td>Poorly differentiated glands, mucoid and pleomorphic structures</td>
<td>Abortive</td>
<td>&gt; 10</td>
<td>Marked polymorphism and increased size</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tumours of the exocrine pancreas

that ductal papillary hyperplasia is similar to severe dysplasia-carcinoma in situ lesions seen in the vicinity of invasive ductal carcinomas (358). Clinically, Brat et al. (185) and Brockie et al. (191) have reported a total of five patients who developed infiltrating ductal adenocarcinomas years after the identification of atypical duct lesions in their pancreas. Finally, molecular genetic analyses of duct lesions have demonstrated that they contain some of the same genetic alterations seen in infiltrating ductal carcinomas. For example, activating point mutations in codon 12 of the KRAS gene, alterations of the p16 and TP53 tumour suppressor genes and loss of BRCA2 and DPC4 have all been reported in duct lesions (1286, 1875, 2166, 2105, 589). Duct lesions and infiltrating cancers from the same pancreas may harbour identical mutations (1120, 1286).

Only a minority of duct lesions may progress to invasive cancer, as demonstrated by recent data from a study on normal pancreases, which showed that all types of duct lesions and even normal epithelium may harbour KRAS mutations, and that the lesions are evenly distributed in the pancreas and do not concentrate in the head region where the carcinoma is most frequent (647). It has recently been suggested that the term ‘Pancreatic Intraepithelial Neoplasia (PanIN)’ be adopted for these duct lesions (see http://pathology.jhu.edu/pancreas.panin) (937). Table 10.01 indicates the general relationship between the previous WHO terminology and this new proposed PanIN terminology.

Genetic susceptibility

Between 3% and 10% of cases of pancreatic cancer are familial (754, 1125, 1126, 499). Some arise in patients with recognized genetic syndromes, as discussed below, but in most instances the genetic basis for the familial aggregation of pancreatic carcinomas has not been identified. A confounding factor is the possibility of shared environmental factors, such as tobacco use. Nevertheless, some studies show familial aggregations suggestive of a genetic aetiology (485, 577, 499, 1207). Studies of extended families have shown a pattern suggestive of an autosomal dominant mode of inheritance.

Hereditary pancreatitis

This disease is caused by germline mutations in the cationic trypsinogen gene on 7q35 (2098). This syndrome is characterized by the early onset of severe recurrent bouts of acute pancreatitis, and affected individuals have as high as a 40% lifetime risk of developing pancreatic carcinoma (1101).

FAMMM syndrome

Familial atypical multiple mole melanoma (FAMMM) is associated with germline mutations in the p16 tumour suppressor gene on 9p. Affected individuals have an increased risk of developing both melanoma and pancreatic carcinoma (601, 1127, 1285, 2097). The lifetime risk for developing pancreatic carcinoma is about 10%.

BRCA2

The discovery of the second breast cancer gene (BRCA2) on 13q was made possible in large part by the discovery of a homozygous deletion in a pancreatic carcinoma (1697). Pancreatic carcinomas have been reported in some kindred with BRCA2 mutations and familial breast

Table 10.03
Genetic alterations in pancreatic ductal carcinoma.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Chromosome</th>
<th>Mechanism of alteration</th>
<th>% of cancers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oncogenes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KRAS</td>
<td>12p</td>
<td>Point mutation</td>
<td>&gt; 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MYB, AKT2, AIB1</td>
<td>6q, 19q, 20q</td>
<td>Amplification</td>
<td>10-20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2-neu</td>
<td>17p</td>
<td>Overexpression</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor suppressor genes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p16</td>
<td>9p</td>
<td>Homozygous deletion and intragenic mutation</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Promoter and intragenic mutation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP53</td>
<td>17p</td>
<td>Loss of heterozygosity and intragenic mutation</td>
<td>50-70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPC4</td>
<td>18q</td>
<td>Homozygous deletion and intragenic mutation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCA2</td>
<td>13q</td>
<td>Inherited intragenic mutation and loss of heterozygosity</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MKK4</td>
<td>17p</td>
<td>Homozygous deletion and intragenic mutation</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LKB1/STK11</td>
<td>19p</td>
<td>Loss of heterozygosity and intragenic mutation</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALK5 and TGFβR2</td>
<td>9q, 3p</td>
<td>Homozygous deletion</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA Mismatch Repair</td>
<td></td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSH2, MLH1, others</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In cases of amplification, it is generally not possible to unambiguously identify the key oncogene due to the participation of multiple genes in an amplicon.*
cancer (1514, 1934, 591, 479) identified germline mutations in BRCA2 in about 7% of patients with pancreatic carcinoma. Remarkably, most pancreatic ductal carcinoma patients with such mutations do not have a strong family history of breast or pancreatic carcinoma. A number of them are, however, of Ashkenazi Jewish ancestry (591, 1442).

**Peutz-Jeghers syndrome**

Patients with the Peutz-Jeghers syndrome have an increased risk of developing pancreatic carcinoma, and recently the biallelic inactivation of the *LKB1/STK11* gene has been demonstrated in a pancreatic carcinoma which arose in a patient with the Peutz-Jeghers syndrome (579, 1851).

**Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC)**

This syndrome is associated with an increased risk of developing carcinoma of the colon, endometrium, stomach, and ovary (2071). It can be caused by germline mutations in any one of a number of DNA mismatch repair genes, including *MSH2* on 2p and *MLH1* on 3p (1029, 1076, 2071). Lynch et al. have reported pancreatic carcinomas in some kindreds with HNPCC, and Goggins et al. have recently reported microsatellite instability, a genetic change associated with defects in DNA mismatch repair genes, in about 4% of pancreatic carcinomas (590, 1130, 1487).

**Genetics**

Genetic alterations are listed in Table 10.03. At the chromosome level, they include losses and gains of genetic material as well as generalised chromosome instability (608, 625, 626). The most frequent gains identified cytogenetically include those of chromosomes 12 and 7; the most common recurrent structural abnormalities involve chromosome arms 1p, 6q, 7q, 17p, 1q, 3p, 11p, and 19q, and the most frequent losses involve chromosomes 18, 13, 12, 17, and 6 (626, 625). Similar patterns of loss have been identified at the molecular level (184, 1716), using highly polymorphic microsatellite markers. These include very high rates of loss at chromosomes 18q (90%), 17p (90%), 1p (60%), and 9p (85%) and moderately frequent losses at 3p, 6p, 8p, 10q, 12q, 13q, 18p, 21q, and 22q (25-50% of cases).

Recurrent losses of genetic material at specific loci in a carcinoma suggest that these loci harbour tumour suppressor genes which are inactivated in the carcinoma, and, indeed, the *p16* gene on 9p, the *Tp53* gene on 17p, and the *DPC4* gene on 18q are all frequently inactivated in pancreatic carcinoma (1716). The *p16* tumour suppressor gene is inactivated in 40% of pancreatic carcinomas by homozygous deletion, in 40% by loss of one allele coupled with an intragenic mutation in the second, and by hypermethylation of the *p16* promoter in an additional 15% (223, 1698, 2104). The *Tp53* is inactivated in 75% of pancreatic carcinomas by loss of one allele coupled with an intragenic mutation in the second allele (1570, 1624). The *DPC4* tumour suppressor gene is inactivated in 55% of pancreatic carcinomas (651), in 35% of the carcinomas by homozygous deletion and in 20% by loss of one allele coupled with an intragenic mutation in the second allele. The *BRCA2* tumour suppressor gene on 13q is inactivated in about 7% of pancreatic carcinomas (591, 1442, 1697). Remarkably, in almost all of these cases one allele of *BRCA2* is inactivated by a germline (inherited) mutation in the gene (591). Other tumour suppressor genes which have been shown to be occasionally inactivated in pancreatic carcinoma include the genes *MKK4*, *RB1*, *LKB1/STK11*, and the transforming growth factor β receptors I and II (592, 761, 1850, 1851). Several oncogenes have been shown to be activated in ductal adenocarcinomas of the pancreas. These include the *KRAS* gene on chromosome 12p, which is activated by point mutations in over 90% of the carcinomas, overexpression of the *HER2-neu* gene on 17q in 70% of the carcinomas, and amplification of the *AKT2* gene on chromosome 19q in 10-20% of the carcinomas, the nuclear receptor coactivator gene *AIB1* on chromosome 20q, and the *MYB* gene on chromosome 6q (47, 292, 380, 576, 761, 1242, 2039). Compared to normal pancreas, *Smad2* mRNA levels are increased in pancreatic carcinoma, which might lead to the over-expression of components of the TGF-beta signalling pathway that is observed in these lesions (931). DNA mismatch repair genes, such as *MLH1* and *MSH2*, can also play a role. Microsatellite instability resulting from the inactivation of both alleles of a DNA mismatch repair gene has been identified in 4% of pancreatic carcinomas (590). They had wild-type *KRAS* genes and a characteristic ‘medullary’ histological appearance, forming a distinct subset of pancreatic adenocarcinomas (see section on other rare carcinomas).

**Prognosis and predictive factors**

Ductal adenocarcinoma is fatal in most cases (639). The mean survival time of the untreated patient is 3 months, while the mean survival after radical resection varies from 10-20 months (560, 692, 814, 1955). The overall 5-year survival rate of patients treated by resection is 3-4% (639), although in selected and stage-stratified series survival figures approaching 25 or even 46% have been reported (560, 1955, 1966, 1976). Unresectable carcinomas are treated with palliative bypass operations. Response to chemotheraphy with 5-fluorouracil or gemcitabine may be seen in up to approximately 10% of patients. Radiotherapy alone is largely ineffective (2061).

**Site, size, and stage**

The survival time is longer in patients with carcinomas confined to the pancreas and less than 3 cm in diameter (17-29 months) than in patients with tumours of greater size or retroperitoneal invasion (6-15 months) (2172). Carcinomas of the body or the tail of the pancreas tend to present at a more advanced stage than those of the head (560, 1955, 1966, 1976). Some have found that lymph node metastases significantly worsen prognosis, while others have not (710, 1955, 2172).

**Residual tumour tissue**

Patients with no residual tumour following resection (RO) have the most favourable prognosis of all patients undergoing surgical resection (2108). This implies that local spread to peripancreatic tissues, i.e., the retroperitoneal resection margin, is of utmost importance in terms of prognosis (1122).

**Recurrence**

Local recurrence seems to be the major factor determining survival after resection of pancreatic ductal carcinoma. The most common sites of recurrences are the tissues surrounding the large mesenteric vessels (646). Clear retroperitoneal resection margin or margins are therefore
required, if a ‘curative’ resection (R0) is to be achieved (1122). Second in frequency are recurrences arising from lymph node or liver metastases that were too small to be detected during surgery. The peritoneum and the bone marrow are rare sites of recurrence, although malignant cells are detected cytologically in one quarter of the patients during laparoscopy and one half of the patients when bone marrow trepanation is performed during a Whipple procedure (870).

**Grading**

Based on the criteria of the grading system summarised in Table 10.02, it was found that median postoperative survival correlated significantly with tumour grade (944), mitotic index, and severity of cellular atypia. As grading systems are, however, to a great extent subjective, reproducibility may be low (1119). Other studies found no relationship between grade and survival (2079). Nuclear parameters such as median nuclear size, nuclear area, and nuclear perimeter have been shown to be of prognostic value for ductal adenocarcinoma (477, 944).

**DNA content and proliferation**

Nondiploid and/or aneuploid DNA content is associated with advanced tumour stage and shorter survival (46, 105, 476, 2079). Tumours with low argyrophilic nucleolar organizer region (AgNOR) counts per cell (< 3.25) have been reported to have a better prognosis than tumours with a high AgNOR count (1413). High Ki-67 labeling index is an indicator of poor prognosis, but does not seem to be an independent prognostic parameter (1111, 1119). The immunohistochemical expression of a number of growth factors has shown weak association with survival (21, 535).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome (MIM No)</th>
<th>Mode of inheritance</th>
<th>Gene (chromosomal location)</th>
<th>Lifetime risk of pancreatic cancer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Early onset familial pancreatic adenocarcinoma associated with diabetes (Seattle family) (197800)</td>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>About 30%; 100-fold increased risk of pancreatic cancer; high risk of diabetes and pancreatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary pancreatitis (167800)</td>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Cationic trypsinogen (7q35)</td>
<td>30%; 50-fold increased risk of pancreatic cancer (1101, 499)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAMMM: familial atypical multiple mole melanoma (155600)</td>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>p16/CMM2 (9p21)</td>
<td>10% (601, 1127, 2097)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial breast cancer (600185)</td>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>BRCA2 (13q12-q13)</td>
<td>5-10%; 8174delT in Ashkenazi Jews (1442); 998del5 in Iceland (1934)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia-telangiectasia (208900) (heterozygote state)</td>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td>ATM, ATB, others (11q22-q23)</td>
<td>Unknown; somewhat increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peutz-Jeghers (175200)</td>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>STK11/LKB1 (19p)</td>
<td>Unknown; somewhat increased (579)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNPCC: hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer (120435)</td>
<td>Autosomal dominant</td>
<td>MSH2 (2p), MLH1 (3p), others</td>
<td>Unknown; somewhat increased (1130, 2071)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial pancreatic cancer</td>
<td>Possibly autosomal dominant</td>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Unknown; 5-10fold increased risk if a first-degree relative has pancreatic cancer (499, 1128, 755)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Mendelian Inheritance in Man: www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/omim

**Table 10.04**

Genetic syndromes with an increased risk of pancreatic cancer.
Serous cystic neoplasms of the pancreas

Serous cystic pancreatic tumours are cystic epithelial neoplasms composed of glycogen-rich, ductular-type epithelial cells that produce a watery fluid similar to serum. Most are benign (serous cystadenomas), either serous microcystic adenoma or serous oligocystic adenoma. Only very rare cases exhibit signs of malignancy (serous cystadenocarcinoma).

A solid variant of serous cystadenoma (solid serous cystadenoma) has been described [1499] but remains to be established as a separate disease entity.

ICD-O codes
Serous cystadenoma 8441/0
Serous cystadenocarcinoma 8441/3

Serous microcystic adenoma

Definition
A benign neoplasm composed of numerous small cysts lined by uniform glycogen-rich cuboidal epithelial cells, disposed around a central stellate scar.

Epidemiology
This is a rare neoplasm, accounting for 1 to 2% of all exocrine pancreatic tumours [1280]. The mean age at presentation is 66 years (range, 34-91 years), with a predominance in women (70%) [1781]. It has been reported in patients with different ethnicity [327, 2151].

Aetiology
The aetiology and pathogenesis of the neoplasm are unknown. The striking predilection for women suggests that sex hormones or genetic factors may play a role. An association with Von Hippel-Lindau disease has been reported [327, 2026] and confirmed by recent genetic molecular investigations [2026].

Localization
The neoplasms occur most frequently (50-75%) in the body or tail; the remaining tumours involve the head of the pancreas [49, 327].

Clinical features
About one third of the neoplasms present as an incidental finding at routine physical examination or at autopsy [445]. Approximately two thirds of patients exhibit symptoms related to local mass effects, including abdominal pain, palpable mass, nausea and vomiting, and weight loss [1544]. Jaundice due to obstruction of the common bile duct is unusual, even in neoplasms originating from the head of the pancreas. Pancreatic serum tumour markers are generally normal. Calcifications are found in a few patients on plain abdominal roentgenograms. Ultrasonography (US) and computed tomography (CT) reveal a well circumscribed, multicellular cyst, occasionally with an evident central stellate scar and a sunburst type calcification [532, 817, 1544]. On angiography, the tumours are usually hypervascular.

Macroscopy
Serous microcystic adenomas are single, well-circumscribed, slightly bosselated, round lesions, with diameters ranging from 1-25 cm in greatest dimension (average, 6-10 cm). On section, the neoplasms are sponge-like and are made up of numerous tiny cysts filled with serous (clear watery) fluid. The cysts range from 0.01-0.5 cm, with a few larger cysts of up to 2 cm in diameter. Often, the cysts are arranged around a more or less centrally located, dense fibronodular core from which thin fibrous septa radiate to the periphery (central stellate scar).

Histopathology
At low magnification, the pattern of the cysts is similar to a sponge. The cysts contain proteinaceous fluid and are lined by a single layer of cuboidal or flattened epithelial cells. Their cytoplasm is clear and only rarely eosinophilic and granular. The nuclei are centrally located, round to oval in shape, uniform, and have an inconspicuous nucleolus. Due to the presence of abundant intracytoplasmic glycogen, the periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) stain without diastase digestion is positive, whereas PAS-diastase and Alcian blue stains are negative [160]. Mitoses are practically absent and there is no cytological atypia. Occasionally, the neoplastic cells form intracytic papillary projections, usually without a fibrovascular stalk. The central fibrous stellate core is formed of hyalinized tissue with a few clusters of tiny cysts.

Immunohistochemistry
The epithelial nature of these neoplasms is reflected in their immunoreactivity for epithelial membrane antigen and cytokeratins 7, 8, 18, and 19. In addition, the neoplastic cells may focally express CA19-9 and B72.3 [815, 1752]. They are uniformly negative for carcinoembryonic...
antigen (CEA), trypsin, chromogranin A, synaptophysin, S-100 protein, desmin, vimentin, factor VIII-related antigen and actin {49, 119, 445, 689, 815, 1752, 1781, 2151}.

Ultrastructure
Electron microscopy shows a single row of uniform epithelial cells lining the cysts and resting on a basal lamina {49, 160, 915}. The apical surfaces have poorly developed or no microvilli. The cytoplasm contains numerous glycogen granules but only a few mitochondria, short profiles of endoplasmic reticulum, lipid droplets, and multivesicular bodies. Golgi complexes are rarely identified. Zymogen granules and neurosecretory granules are absent.

**Genetics**
Loss of heterozygosity at the von Hippel-Lindau (VHL) gene locus, mapped to chromosome 3p25, was found in 2/2 serous microcystic adenomas associated with VHL disease and in 7/10 sporadic cases {2026}. In contrast to ductal adenocarcinomas, serous microcystic adenomas have wild-type KRAS and lack immunoreactivity for TP53 {815}.

**Prognosis**
The prognosis of patients with this neoplasm is excellent, since there is only a minimal risk of malignant transformation {1159}.

**Serous oligocystic adenoma**

**Definition**
A benign neoplasm composed of few, relatively large cysts, lined by uniform glycogen-rich cuboidal epithelial cells.

**Synonyms**
This tumour category includes macrocystic serous cystadenoma {257, 1062}, serous oligocystic and ill-demarcated adenoma {445}, and some cystadenomas observed in children {2057}. Whether these neoplasms form a homogeneous group remains to be established.

**Epidemiology**
Serous oligocystic adenomas are much less common than serous microcystic adenomas {445, 1062}. There is no sex predilection. Adults are usually 60 years and over (age range, 30-69 years; mean, 65 years); the tumour has been described in two male and two female infants, aged between 2 and 16 months {1781}.

**Aetiology**
The aetiology of this neoplasm is not known. In children, it has been suggested that the lesions may be of malformative origin and not true neoplasms since in two cases there was a cytomegalovirus infection in the adjacent pancreas {52, 273}.

**Localization**
Most serous oligocystic adenomas are located in the head and body of the pancreas {1781}. In the head, they may obstruct the periampullary portion of the common bile duct.

**Clinical features**
In most cases reported in adult patients, the neoplasms caused symptoms that led to their discovery and removal. The most common symptom was upper abdominal discomfort or pain {1781}. Other symptoms included jaundice and steatorrhoea. In infants, the tumours presented as a palpable abdominal mass {52, 273}.

**Macroscopy**
These neoplasms typically appear as a cystic mass with a diameter of 4-10 cm (mean, 6 cm) {1781}. On cut surface,
Serous cystic neoplasms

there are few (occasionally only one) macroscopically visible cysts filled with watery clear or brown fluid. The cysts usually vary between 1 and 2 cm in diameter, but cysts as large as 8 cm have been reported (1062). The irregularly arranged cysts, sometimes separated by broad septa, lie within a fibrous stroma that lacks a central stellate scar. The cysts and the supporting fibrous tissue may extend into the adjoining pancreatic tissue so that the tumours are poorly demarcated.

**Histopathology**

Serous oligocystic adenoma has generally the same histological features as serous microcystic adenoma. Occasionally, however, the lining epithelium may be more cuboidal and less flattened, and the nuclei are generally larger. The cytoplasm is either clear, due to the presence of glycogen, or eosinophilic. The stromal framework is well developed and often hyalinized. The tumour border is not well defined and small cysts often extend into the adjoining pancreatic tissue. The immunohistochemical and ultrastructural features are the same as for serous microcystic adenoma (445, 2057).

**Prognosis**

There is no evidence of malignant potential (445).

**Serous cystadenocarcinoma**

**Definition**

A malignant cystic epithelial neoplasm composed of glycogen-rich cells.

**Epidemiology**

So far, only eight cases have been reported (573, 815, 1781). These patients were between 63 and 72 years of age; there were four women and four men. Three patients were Caucasian and four were from Japan (8, 815, 1781).

**Clinical features**

Clinical symptoms reported in the cases so far observed include bleeding from gastric varices due to tumour invasion of the wall of the stomach and the splenic vein, a palpable upper abdominal mass, and jaundice. Ultrasonography and CT revealed a hyperechoic mass. CEA and CA19-9 were normal or slightly increased.

**Macroscopy**

These neoplasms have a spongy appearance (573, 879, 2182). Their reported size has varied between 2.5 and 12 cm. Liver and lymph node metastases have been reported (573, 815, 1781, 2182). Invasion of the spleen and metastasis to the gastric wall were found in one case.

**Histopathology**

The histological features in the primary tumour as well as in the metastases are remarkably similar to those of serous microcystic adenoma, although focal mild nuclear pleomorphism can be found (573, 2182). One carcinoma reported showed neural invasion and aneuploid nuclear DNA content (879), while other cases showed vascular and perivascular invasion (1412) or involvement of a lymph node and adipose tissue (8).

**Prognosis**

Serous cystadenocarcinomas are slowly growing neoplasms and palliative resection may be helpful even in advanced stages (2182).
Mucinous cystic neoplasms of the pancreas

Definition
Cystic epithelial neoplasms occurring almost exclusively in women, showing no communication with the pancreatic ductal system and composed of columnar, mucin-producing epithelium, supported by ovarian-type stroma. According to the grade of intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia), tumours may be classified as adenoma, borderline (low-grade malignant) and non-invasive or invasive carcinoma.

ICD-O codes
- Mucinous cystadenoma 8470/0
- Mucinous cystic neoplasm with moderate dysplasia 8470/1
- Mucinous cystadenocarcinoma
  - non-invasive 8470/2
  - invasive 8470/3

Epidemiology
Although more than 500 cases have been reported in the literature [328, 2198], mucinous cystic neoplasm (MCN) is still considered a rare lesion, representing approximately 2-5% of all exocrine pancreatic tumours [1781, 1932]. Changes in diagnostic criteria over the years and the high resectability rate compared to that of ductal adenocarcinoma may have led to an overrepresentation of MCNs in histopathology series. The increasing number of these lesions seen in recent years is most likely due to advances in diagnostic techniques, allowing early and correct recognition of MCN.

In a recent study, in which MCNs were defined by the lack of a communication with the pancreatic duct system and the presence of an ovarian type stroma, all occurred in women [2198]. It is likely that many of the cases reported in men in the early literature were intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms (IPMNs) [328, 1932, 2198]. The mean age at diagnosis is 49 years (range, 20-82 years) [1781]. Patients with mucinous cystadenocarcinomas are about 10 years older than patients with adenomatous or borderline tumours (54 versus 44 years), suggesting an adenoma - carcinoma sequence [2198]. MCTNs seem to occur in patients with different ethnic background [1781].

Aetiology
Pancreatic MCNs share many features with their counterparts in the liver and retroperitoneum, including their morphology and their almost exclusive occurrence in women [328, 2139, 404, 2198]. The possible derivation of the stromal component of MCNs from the ovarian primordium is supported by morphology, tendency to undergo luteinization, presence of hilar-like cells, and immunophenotypic sex cord-stromal differentiation. It has been hypothesized that ectopic ovarian stroma incorporated during embryogenesis in the pancreas, along the biliary tree or in the retroperitoneum may release hormones and growth factors causing nearby epithelium to proliferate and form cystic tumours [2198]. Since the left primordial gonad and the dorsal pancreatic anlage lie side by side during the fourth and fifth weeks of development, this hypothesis could explain the predilection of MCN for the body-tail region of the pancreas [1977].

Localization
The overwhelming majority of cases occur in the body-tail of the pancreas [328, 1932, 2148, 2198]. The head is only rarely involved, with a predilection for mucinous cystadenocarcinomas [1932, 2198].

Fig. 10.15 Mucinous cystic neoplasm. The pancreatic duct, which does not communicate with the cyst lumen, has been opened over the surface of the tumour (left, arrowheads). The thick wall and irregular lining of the bisected neoplasm are shown on the right.

Fig. 10.16 Mucinous cystic neoplasm in the tail of the pancreas. The thick wall shows focal calcification.
Preoperative diagnosis of MCN is important, since other types of cystic neoplasm may be treated differently. Furthermore, MCNs must be distinguished from an inflammatory pseudocyst, because drainage may be appropriate for patients with a pseudocyst, but is disastrous for patients with MCN, since apparently histologically benign mucinous cystic tumours can recur after drainage as invasive cystadenocarcinomas (328, 2194). The best approach to obtain an exact preoperative diagnosis is the combined evaluation of all available clinical, serological, radiological, and biopsy findings.

Macroscopy
MCNs typically present as a round mass with a smooth surface and a fibrous pseudocapsule with variable thickness and frequent calcifications. The size of the tumour ranges from 2-35 cm in greatest dimension, with an average size between 6 and 10 cm. The cut surfaces demonstrate a unilocular or multilocular tumour with cystic spaces ranging from a few millimetres to several centimeters in diameter, containing either thick mucin or a mixture of mucin and haemorrhagic necrotic material. The internal surface of unilocular tumours is usually smooth and glistening, whereas the multilocular tumours often show papillary projections and mural nodules. Malignant tumours are likely to show papillary projections and/or mural nodules and multilocularity (2198). As a rule, there is no communication of the tumour with the pancreatic duct system, but exceptions have been reported (2148).

Tumour spread and staging
Invasive mucinous cystadenocarcinoma follows the same pathways of local spread as ductal adenocarcinoma. The first metastases are typically found in the regional peripancreatic lymph nodes and the liver (1781). Staging follows the protocol for ductal adenocarcinomas.

Histopathology
MCNs show two distinct components: an inner epithelial layer and an outer densely cellular ovarian-type stromal layer. Large locules can be extensively denuded and many sections are often needed to demonstrate the epithelial lining. The epithelium may be flat or it may form papillary or polyvold projections, pseudodrostrifications and crypt-like invaginations. The columnar cells are characterized by basally located nuclei and abundant intracellular mucin which is diastase-PAS and Alcian blue positive. Pseudopyloric, gastric foveolar, small and large intestinal, and squamous differentiation can also be found. About half of the tumours contain scattered argentophil and argentaffin endocrine cells at the bases of the columnar cells (33, 36, 328, 2151).

Spectrum of differentiation
This ranges from histologically benign appearing columnar epithelium to severely atypical epithelium. According to the grade of intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia), tumours may be classified as adenoma, borderline (low-grade malignant) and non-invasive or invasive carcinoma (947).

Mucinous cystadenomas show only a slight increase in the size of the basally located nuclei and the absence of mitosis. Mucinous cystic neoplasms of borderline malignant potential exhibit papillary projections or crypt-like invaginations, cellular pseud stratification with crowding of slightly enlarged nuclei, and mitoses. Mucinous cystadenocarcinomas may be invasive or non-invasive. They show changes of high-grade intraepithelial neoplasia which are usually focal and may be detected only after careful search of multiple sections from different regions. The epithelial cells, which often form papillae with irregular branching and budding, show nuclear stratification, severe nuclear atypia and frequent mitoses.

Invasive mucinous cystadenocarcinoma is characterized by invasion of the malignant epithelium into the stroma. The invasive component usually resembles the common ductal adenocarcinoma. How-
ever, mucinous cystadenocarcinomas with invasive adenosquamous carcinoma, osteoclast-like giant cell or choriocarcinoma have been reported (328, 1530, 1571, 2194). Invasive foci may be focal and require careful search.

**Stroma**
The ovarian-type stroma consists of densely packed spindle-shaped cells with round or elongated nuclei and sparse cytoplasm. It frequently displays a variable degree of luteinization, characterized by the presence of single or clusters of epithelioid cells with round to oval nuclei and abundant clear or eosinophilic cytoplasm. Occasionally, these cells, resembling ovarian hilar cells, can be found associated with (or present in) nerve trunks. Stromal luteinization is found in decreasing order of frequency from adenomatous to carcinoma- tosous cases (2194). The stroma of large MCNs may become fibrotic and hypocellular. Rare MCNs show mural nodules with a sarcomatous stroma or an associated sarcoma (1932, 2088, 2198).

**Immunohistochemistry**
The epithelial component is immunoreactive with epithelial markers including EMA, CEA, cytokeratins 7, 8, 18 and 19 (2151), and it may show gastroenteropancreatic differentiation, as is also observed in ovarian and retroperitoneal MCN (1714, 1910). With increasing degrees of epithelial atypia the character of mucin production changes from sulphated to sialated or neutral mucin (1932). The neoplastic cells express gastric type mucin marker M1 and PGII, the intestinal mucin markers CAR-5 and M3SI, and the pancreatic type mucin marker DUPAN-2 and CA19-9 (119, 1714, 2151, 2190). Furthermore, pancreatic, hepatobiliary, and retroperitoneal MCNs share the same types of intraepithelial endocrine cells (613, 1911, 1910). p53 nuclear positivity in more than 10% of neoplastic cells, found in 20% of MCN, strongly correlates with mucinous cystadenocarcinoma (2198). The stromal component expresses vimentin, alpha smooth muscle actin, desmin and, in a high proportion, progesterone and estrogen receptors (2198). The luteinized cells are labeled with antibodies against tyrosine hydroxylase, calretinin, which have been shown to recognize testicular Leydig cells and hilar ovarian cells, and the sex cord-stromal differentiation marker inhibin (2198, 2206).

**Ultrastructure**
Electron microscopy of tumours with only mild to moderate dysplasia demonstrates columnar epithelial cells resting on a thin basement membrane. The cells may have well-developed microvilli and mucin granules (33).

**Genetics**
Activating point mutations in codon 12 of KRAS were found in invasive mucinous cystic neoplasms (MCNs) (117) and mucinous cystic neoplasms associated with osteoclast-like giant cells (1485). Mutations of KRAS and allelic losses of 6q, 9p, 8p have been reported in MCNs with sarcomatous stroma (1998).

**Prognosis and predictive factors**
The prognosis of MCN, regardless of the degree of cellular atypia, is excellent if the tumour is completely removed (328, 410, 2060, 2198). The prognosis of invasive mucinous cystadenocarcinoma depends on the extent of tumour inva- sion. Tumour recurrence and poor outcome correlate with invasion of the tumour wall and peritumoural tissues (2198). Patients older than 50 years appear to have a lower survival rate (2198). Other variables such as site, tumour size, macroscopic appearance, grade of differentiation, luteinization of the stroma and p53 positivity have no prognostic significance.

Aneuploidy is a rare event in MCNs, is largely restricted to mucinous cystadenocarcinomas and carries a worse prognosis (1792, 1932, 512).
Intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasms of the pancreas

Definition
An intraductal papillary mucin-producing neoplasm, arises in the main pancreatic duct or its major branches. The papillary epithelium component, and the degree of mucin secretion, cystic duct dilatation, and invasiveness are variable. Intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasms are divided into benign, borderline, and malignant non-invasive or invasive lesions.

ICD-O codes
Intraductal papillary-mucinous adenoma 8453/0
Intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasm with moderate dysplasia 8453/1
Intraductal papillary-mucinous carcinoma non-invasive 8453/2
invasive 8453/3

Synonyms and historical annotation
Papillary pancreatic neoplasms have been recognized for many years [247, 1532], but the distinction between mucinous cystic neoplasms and intraductal papillary neoplasms was not made until the last two decades [947, 1781, 65, 1404]. Interest in IPMNs was first stimulated when they were recognized clinically [1281], and pathological descriptions quickly followed [2164, 1093]. The incidence appears to have risen since the first reports, but this may reflect the combined effects of new diagnostic techniques, and progress in recognition and classification of IPMNs [1138, 918]. It is likely that many IPMNs were classified among the mucinous cystic neoplasms as recently as a decade ago.

Epidemiology
The incidence is low and not precisely known because IPMNs are not accurately identified in large population-based registries. Nomenclature and classification have been highly variable until recently, and are not yet standardized worldwide. IPMNs have been estimated to amount to 1-3% of exocrine pancreatic neoplasms, with an incidence rate well below 1 per 100,000 per year [1280, 1095]. IPMNs are found in a broad age range (30-94) with a median age of diagnosis in the 6-7th decade [1443, 2148, 556]. They occur more frequently in males than in females [1138, 2148]. IPMNs were first reported from France and Japan, but subsequent reports have come from all parts of the world. Two studies provide some evidence that the incidence may be higher among Asians than among whites, but issues of consistency of classification require that this be further evaluated [1095, 941].

Aetiology
The low incidence and imprecise identification of IPMN in large databases has hindered recognition of aetiological factors. In one series, most patients with IPMNs were cigarette smokers [550]. There is no consistent association with other types of pancreatic neoplasm [2198].

Localization
The majority of these neoplasms occur in the main pancreatic duct and its branches in the head of the pancreas [1781, 330, 97]. A single cystic mass or segmental involvement of the duct is usual, but diffuse involvement is also described [1093, 1751, 1953]. Multicentric origin is suspected because of recurrence in pancreatic remnants following surgical removal of IPMNs [1088]. IPMNs may extend to the ampulla of Vater, commonly in association with involvement of the duct of Wirsung or the common bile duct [1781].

Clinical features
Clinical presentation includes epigastric pain, pancreatitis, weight loss, diabetes, and jaundice [2169, 1953, 942]; some patients have no symptoms. Some cases are detected because of dilatation of the pancreatic duct seen incidentally in imaging studies. Serum amylase and lipase are commonly elevated. Endoscopic ultrasound, ERCP, and endoscopic examination of the pancreatic duct [1596] may all contribute to pre-operative diagnosis. Endoscopic biopsy or cytology may provide histological confirmation, but definitive diagnosis requires surgical removal and extensive histological sampling. Serum markers such as CEA and CA19-9 are too insensitive to be of value [2148, 1953].

Macroscopy
Depending on the degree of ductal dilatation, IPMNs vary in size from 1 to 8 cm in maximum dimension [17]. They are cystic and may appear multiloculated if branch ducts are involved. The mucin found in IPMN is viscous or sticky and can dilate parts of the duct that are lined by normal appearing epithelium. The lining of cystic spaces may be smooth and glistening, granular, or velvet-like, the latter reflecting papillary growth. When...
Tumours of the exocrine pancreas

Papillary growths are large, the dilated ducts may show localized excrescences or be filled with soft papillary masses of tissue. The pancreatic parenchyma surrounding and retrograde to the tumour is often pale and firm, reflecting changes of chronic obstructive pancreatitis. When there is invasion, gelatinous areas may be identified in fibrotic tissue.

Tumour spread and staging
Adenomas, borderline tumours and non-invasive carcinomas may extend intraductally into adjacent portions of the duct system, and evidence of such extension is often encountered adjacent to IPMNs. Recurrence following surgical resection has been reported in patients that had IPMNs extending into the margin of resection (1953). Invasive neoplasms are staged as ductal adenocarcinomas.

Histopathology
IPMN tumour cells are usually tall columnar mucin-containing epithelial cells that line dilated ducts or cystic spaces arising from dilated branch ducts. The epithelium typically forms papillary or pseudopapillary structures, but portions of the neoplasm may be lined by non-papillary epithelium or be denuded of epithelium. The amount of mucin production varies widely, as does the degree of duct dilatation (97, 872). Goblet or Paneth cells may be present as a manifestation of intestinal metaplasia in the neoplastic epithelium, and neuroendocrine cells have also been demonstrated.

Histologically, the recently described intraductal oncocytic papillary neoplasm probably represents a rare related phenotype that is similar macroscopically (1244, 1860). Oncocytic IPMNs are composed of stratified oncocytic cells with pale pink cytoplasmic granules that are much finer than those seen in Paneth cells. Goblet cells may be interspersed among the oncocytic cells. A characteristic feature of the oncocytic papillary neoplasms is the formation of ‘intraepithelial lumina’, which are spaces in the epithelium about one quarter the size of the cells.

Histochemistry and immunohistochemistry
A variety of abnormalities have been demonstrated in IPMNs using mucin and immunohistochemical stains. Most IPMNs express epithelial membrane antigen (EMA) as well as several cytokeratins (1917). A variety of endocrine cell types occur in most tumours but account for fewer than 5% of the tumour cells (1676). A change in type of mucin has been suggested as a marker of progression since normal duct cells characteristically secrete sulfated mucin, intraductal papillary-mucinous adenomas characteristically secrete neutral mucin, and dysplastic epithelium secretes predominantly sialomucin (1138, 1916, 1186). Nearly all IPMNs express MUC2 (2179).

Overexpression of c-erbB-2 protein occurs in a high fraction of IPMNs (1939, 1675, 1877, 380). A study of cell proliferation, as shown by PCNA and Ki67 labelling indices, demonstrated a progressive increase in cell proliferation from normal duct epithelium, to adenomas, to borderline tumours, to carcinomas (1917). The labeling index in IPM carcinomas was lower than in ductal adenocarcinomas. Although immunostaining of p53 protein was detected in a lower fraction of IPMN (31%) than is usually seen in solid ductal adenocarcinomas, it was found only in borderline and malignant IPMN and therefore may be a marker of progression (1939).

Failure of IPMN to elicit the production of a collagenase that mediates invasion was reported (2193).
Classification and grading of IPMNs
IPMNs have been the source of great confusion that is reflected in a diverse nomenclature found in case and series reports and in standard references (1781). Because of the variability within a tumour, it is important to sample IPMNs well, giving special emphasis to papillary areas because this is where the highest degree of intraepithelial neoplasia (dysplasia) is likely to occur, and to sclerotic areas that may reflect invasion. IPMNs are classified as benign, borderline, or malignant on the basis of the greatest degree of dysplasia present. In accordance with the previous WHO classification, lesions are specifically designated as intraductal papillary-mucinous adenoma, borderline intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasm, and intraductal papillary-mucinous carcinoma, with or without invasion (947, 1781).

A slightly different histopathological classification has been proposed by the Japan Pancreas Society (JPS) (65), intraductal tumours are designated as intraductal papillary adenoma or adenocarcinoma. The degree of cellular atypia in adenomas is designated as slight, moderate, or severe. The JPS category of adenoma with severe atypia corresponds to the WHO borderline lesion, although some authors also utilize a borderline category (2148).

Intraductal papillary-mucinous adenoma
The epithelium is comprised of tall columnar mucin-containing cells that show slight or no dysplasia, i.e. the epithelium maintains a high degree of differentiation in adenomas.

Borderline intraductal papillary-mucinous neoplasm
IPMNs with moderate dysplasia are placed in the borderline category. The epithelium shows no more than moderate loss of polarity, nuclear crowding, nuclear enlargement, pseudostatification, and nuclear hyperchromatism. Papillary areas maintain identifiable stromal cores, but pseudopapillary structures may be present.

Intraductal papillary-mucinous carcinoma
IPMNs with severe dysplastic epithelial change are designated as carcinoma even in the absence of invasion. Carcinomas are papillary or micropapillary. Cribriform growth and budding of small clusters of epithelial cells into the lumen support the diagnosis of carcinoma. Severe dysplasia is manifest cytologically as loss of polarity, loss of differentiated cytoplasmic features including diminished mucin content, cellular and nuclear pleomorphism, nuclear enlargement, and the presence of mitoses (especially if suprabasal or luminal in location). Severely dysplastic cells may lack mucin. Non-invasive lesions are termed non-invasive intraductal papillary-mucinous carcinoma. When invasive, an IPMN may be called a papillary-mucinous carcinoma since it is no longer only intraductal. When IPMNs become invasive, the invasive component may assume the appearance of a tubular ductal adenocarcinoma or a mucinous noncystic carcinoma (17). If the invasive component is dominant, and is a ductal or mucinous noncystic carcinoma, then that diagnosis may be used, descriptively noting the association with an IPMN component.

Differential diagnosis
Historically, IPMNs and mucinous cystic neoplasms (MCNs) have been confused because they are both cystic and have a similar epithelial component. However, IPMNs and MCNs are distinct entities and can be separated easily, because MCNs typically occur in women with a median age in the fifth decade, almost always are located in the tail or body of the pancreas, typically exhibit a thick wall with a cellular ‘ovarian’ stroma, and typically fail to communicate with the pancreatic duct system.

Precursor lesions
The criteria for classifying pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PanIN) lesions (including papillary hyperplasia, see chapter on ductal adenocarcinoma of the pancreas) in IPMNs are not well established (1144, 1744), and need to be defined. PanIN lesions characteristically occur in intralobular ducts, are not detected macroscopically, and are clinically silent (17). It seems likely that the earliest stage of development of the IPMN would involve the progression from a flat area of mucous metaplasia to a papillary lesion in a main or branch pancreatic duct as suggested by Nagai et al.
Thus, it will be difficult to recognize the initial stage of an intraductal papillary-mucinous adenoma unless a distinctive molecular marker is identified.

Genetic susceptibility
Excessive rates of colonic and gastric epithelial neoplasms were reported in a group of 42 patients with IPMNs (106). This suggests the possibility of a predisposing genetic susceptibility, but no specific hereditary syndrome was identified.

Genetics
Activating point mutations in codon 12 of the KRAS gene have been reported in 40-60% of intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms (1939, 544). Fujii et al. examined a series of IPMNs using polymorphic microsatellite markers and found allelic loss at 9p in 62% of the cases and at 17p and 18q in ~40% (544). These allelic losses include the loci of the p16, TP53, and DPC4 tumour-suppressor genes. In addition to immunohistochemical evidence of p53 abnormality in IPMN (544), mutations have been demonstrated in two adenomas (876). Overexpression of anti-apoptotic genes in IPMN is reported (1247).

Mutations of KRAS and TP53 genes have been detected in DNA from pancreatic juice of patients with IPMN (875).

Prognosis and predictive factors
The overall 5-year survival rate for a composite series was 83% (2148). The prognosis is excellent for adenomas and borderline tumours with 3 and 5-year survivals approaching 100%. The survival rates are high for non-invasive carcinomas, and survival rates for patients with invasive IPMNs may also be higher than for patients with typical ductal adenocarcinomas (2148, 97, 2169). The histological classification, with major emphasis on the presence or absence of invasion, and stage remain the best predictors for survival.

As the distinction between IPMNs and MCNs has been refined, some authors report that MCNs are more often malignant than IPMNs and that the latter have a better prognosis following treatment (97), but this was not confirmed in other series (1953, 551). Expression of MUC2 and MUC5AC mucins are associated with a good prognosis relative to ductal adenocarcinomas that do not express these mucins (2179, 2178).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10.05</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Summary of mucin histochemistry and immunostaining of IPMN.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antibody or epitope</th>
<th>Comments on staining in IPMN</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Differentiation markers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcian blue stain</td>
<td>Adenomas contain neutral mucin, carcinomas contain sialomucin</td>
<td>(1138, 1916)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUC1</td>
<td>Negative&gt;&gt;positive</td>
<td>(2179)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MUC2</td>
<td>Positive&gt;&gt;negative</td>
<td>(2179)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocrine markers</td>
<td>&lt; 5% of cells positive in most IPMN</td>
<td>(1676)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epithelial membrane antigen</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>(1917)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytokeratins 7, 8, 18, 19</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>(1917)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEA</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>(1939)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA-19-9</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>(1939)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B72.3</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>(1939)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUPAN-2</td>
<td>Seen in a minority</td>
<td>(1939)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oncogene products</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c-erbB-2</td>
<td>13/17 IPMN positive, including all with moderate or severe dysplasia</td>
<td>(1675)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p27</td>
<td>p27 staining exceeds cyclin E</td>
<td>(556)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tumour suppressor gene products</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP53</td>
<td>Often positive in borderline tumours and carcinomas</td>
<td>(1939)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proliferation markers</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCNA and Ki67</td>
<td>Labeling index increases with progression from adenoma to carcinoma</td>
<td>(1917)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Definition**
A carcinoma occurring mainly in adults, composed of relatively uniform neoplastic cells that are arranged in solid and acinar patterns and produce pancreatic enzymes.

**ICD-O codes**
- Acinar cell carcinoma 8550/3
- Acinar cell cystadenocarcinoma 8551/3
- Mixed acinar-endocrine carcinoma 8154/3

**Epidemiology**
Acinar cell carcinomas represent 1-2% of all exocrine pancreatic neoplasms in adults [739, 936]. Most occur in late adulthood, with a mean age of 62 years [825, 979, 2073]. The tumour is rare in adults under the age of 40. Pediatric cases do occur, usually manifesting in patients 8 to 15 years of age [979, 1282]. Males are affected more frequently than females, with an M:F ratio of 2:1 [739, 936].

**Aetiology**
The aetiology is unknown.

**Localization**
Acinar cell carcinomas may arise in any portion of the pancreas but are somewhat more common in the head.

**Clinical features**
**Symptoms and signs**
Most acinar cell carcinomas present clinically with relatively non-specific symptoms including abdominal pain, weight loss, nausea, or diarrhoea [739, 936, 979, 2073]. Because they generally push rather than infiltrate into adjacent structures, biliary obstruction and jaundice are infrequent presenting complaints.

A well-described syndrome occurring in 10-15% of patients is the lipase hypersecretion syndrome [1781, 213, 936, 975]. It is most commonly encountered in patients with hepatic metastases, and is characterized by excessive secretion of lipase into the serum, with clinical symptoms including subcutaneous fat necrosis and polyarthralgia. Peripheral blood eosinophilia may also be noted. In some patients, the lipase hypersecretion syndrome is the first presenting sign of the tumour, while in others it develops following tumour recurrence. Successful surgical removal of the neoplasm may result in the normalization of the serum lipase levels and resolution of the symptoms.

**Laboratory analyses**
Other than an elevation of serum lipase levels associated with the lipase hypersecretion syndrome, there are no specific laboratory abnormalities in patients with acinar cell carcinoma. A few cases show increased serum alpha-fetoprotein [819, 1426, 1369, 1747].

**Imaging**
Acinar cell carcinomas are generally bulky with a mean size of 11 cm [979]. On abdominal CT scans, they are circumscribed and have a similar density to the surrounding pancreas. Because of their larger size and relatively sharp circumscription, acinar cell carcinomas can generally be distinguished from ductal adenocarcinomas radiographically.

**Fine needle aspiration cytology**
There is usually a high cellular yield from fine needle aspiration [1446, 1978, 2015]. The cytological appearances of acinar cell carcinomas closely mimic those of pancreatic endocrine neoplasms, although the latter are more likely to exhibit a plasmacytoid appearance to the cells and a speckled chromatin pattern. Immunohistochemistry may be used on cytological specimens to confirm the diagnosis of acinar cell carcinoma [1446, 1978].

**Macroscopy**
Acinar cell carcinomas are generally circumscribed and may be multinodular [739, 936]. Individual nodules are soft and vary from yellow to brown. Areas of necrosis and cystic degeneration may be present. Occasionally, the neoplasm is found attached to the pancreatic surface. Extension into adjacent structures, such as duodenum, spleen, or major vessels may occur. Multicystic examples of acinar cell carcinoma have been reported as acinar cell cystadenocarcinoma [229, 739, 1815].

**Tumour spread and staging**
Metastases most commonly affect regional lymph nodes and the liver, although distant spread to other organs occurs occasionally. Acinar cell carcinomas are staged using the same protocol as ductal adenocarcinomas.

**Histopathology**
Large nodules of cells are separated by hypocellular fibrous bands. The desmoplastic stroma characteristic of ductal adenocarcinomas is generally absent. Tumour necrosis may occur and is generally infarct-like in appearance. Within the tumour cell islands, there is an abundant fine microvasculature. Several architectural patterns have been described. The most characteristic is the acinar pattern, with neoplastic cells arranged in small glandular units; there are numerous small lumina within each island of cells giving a cribriform appearance. In some instances, the lumina are more dilated, resulting in a glandular pattern, although separate glandular structures surrounded by stroma are usually not encountered. A number of the micro-
glandular tumours previously reported as ‘microadenocarcinoma’ were more recently shown to have been acinar cell carcinomas (see chapter on miscellaneous carcinomas). The second most common pattern in acinar cell carcinomas is the solid pattern: solid nests of cells lacking luminal formations are separated by small vessels. Within these nests, cellular polarization is generally not evident, but there may be an accentuation of polarization at the interface with the vessels, resulting in basal nuclear localization in these regions and a palisading of nuclei along the microvasculature. In rare instances, a trabecular arrangement of tumour cells may be present, with exceptional cases also showing a gyriiform appearance [936]. The neoplastic cells contain minimal to moderate amounts of cytoplasm that may be more abundant in cells lining lumina. The cytoplasm varies from amphophilic to eosinophilic and is characteristically granular, reflecting the presence of zymogen granules. In many instances, however, only minimal cytoplasmic granularity may be detectable. The nuclei are generally round to oval and relatively uniform, with marked nuclear pleomorphism being exceptional. A single, prominent, central nucleolus is a characteristic finding but not invariably present. The mitotic rate is variable (mean 14 per 10 high power fields, range 0 to >50 per 10 high power fields).

Zymogen granules are weakly positive with PAS staining, and resistant to diastase. Mucin production is generally not detectable with mucicarmine or Alcian blue stains and, if present, is limited to the luminal membrane in acinar or glandular formations. The histochemical stain for butyrate esterase can be used to identify active lipase within the tumour cells [936, 938]. Due to the scarcity of zymogen granules in many examples of acinar cell carcinoma, histochemical stains are relatively insensitive for documenting acinar differentiation, and very focal staining may be difficult to interpret with confidence.

Immunohistochemistry

Immunohistochemical identification of pancreatic enzyme production is helpful in confirming the diagnosis of acinar cell carcinoma. Antibodies against trypsin, chymotrypsin, lipase, and elastase have all been used [739, 810, 936, 1282]. Both trypsin and chymotrypsin are detectable in over 95% of cases; lipase is less commonly identified (approximately 70% of cases) [936]. Pancreatic stone protein is also commonly expressed [739]. In solid areas, immunohistochemical staining for enzymes may show diffuse cytoplasmic positivity, whereas the reaction product is restricted to the apical cytoplasm in acinar areas. Immunohistochemical markers of endocrine and ductal differentiation may also be detected in acinar cell carcinomas, generally in a minor cell population [739, 936]. Scattered individual cells stain for chromogranin or synaptophysin are found in over one third of lesions. Over half exhibit focal CEA and B72.3 expression [739, 936]. Uncommonly, there is immunohistochemical positivity for alpha-fetoprotein, generally in cases associated with elevations in serum alpha-fetoprotein [819].

Ultrastructure

Electron microscopy provides further evidence of enzyme production (675, 408, 936, 1978). Exocrine secretory features are consistently found, with abundant rough endoplasmic reticulum arranged in parallel arrays and relatively abundant mitochondria. Cellular polarization is generally evident, with basal basement membranes and apical lumina. Adjacent cells are joined by tight junctions. Although the distribution varies from cell to cell, most acinar cell carcinomas exhibit electron dense zymogen granules. In polarized cells, they are located in the apical cytoplasm, and the secretory contents may be seen within the luminal spaces where granules have fused with the apical membrane. The size range of zymogen granules in acinar cell carcinomas (125-1000 nm) is somewhat greater than that found in non-neoplastic acinar cells (250-1000 nm). In addition to typical zymogen granules, a second granule type, the irregular fibrillary granule, is detected ultrastructurally in many cases [302, 936, 938, 1477]. It has been suggested that irregular fibrillary granules may represent a recapitulation of the fetal zymogen granules, although attempts to document the presence of pancreatic enzymes within them by immunohistochemistry have been unconvincing [936, 938, 1032].

Acinar cell carcinoma variants

Acinar cell cystadenocarcinoma

Acinar cell cystadenocarcinomas are rare, grossly cystic neoplasms with cytoarchitectural features of acinar cell carcinomas [229, 825, 739, 1815].

Mixed acinar-endocrine carcinoma

Rare neoplasms have shown a substantial (greater than 25%) proportion of more than one cell type. These neoplasms have been designated ‘mixed carcinomas’, and, depending upon the cell types identified, as ‘mixed acinar-endocrine carcinoma’, ‘mixed acinar-ductal carcinoma’, or ‘mixed acinar-endocrine-ductal carcinoma’ [997, 1369, 2015]. Of these, the best characterized is the mixed acinar-endocrine carcinoma [997]. In many mixed acinar-endocrine carcinomas, the evidence for divergent differentiation is only provided by immunohistochemical staining. Although different regions of the tumours may suggest acinar or endocrine differentiation morphologically, many areas have intermediate features, and immunohistochemistry generally shows a mixture of cells expressing acinar or endocrine markers (or both). In exceptional cases, however, there is also morphological evidence of multiple lines of differentiation,
with some regions exhibiting obvious acinar features and other areas endocrine features. Most reported acinar-endocrine carcinomas have been composed predominantly of acinar elements based on the proportion of cells staining immunohistochemically (997). There are insufficient cases recorded to suggest that the biological behaviour of mixed acinar-endocrine carcinomas differs from that of pure acinar cell carcinomas.

**Precursor lesions**
No documented precursor lesions for acinar cell carcinomas have been defined. Initial suggestions that so-called atypical acinar cell nodules may represent preneoplastic lesions of acinar cells have not been substantiated by later studies (1094). Atypical acinar cell nodules occur either because of dilatation of the rough endoplasmic reticulum (resulting in reduced basophilia of the basal cytoplasm) or depletion of zymogen granules (resulting in reduced eosinophilia of the apical cytoplasm and an increase in nuclear:cytoplasmic ratio); these lesions are relatively common incidental findings in resected pancreases.

**Genetics**
In contrast to ductal adenocarcinomas, acinar cell carcinomas very rarely show KRAS mutations and TP53 immunoreactivity (739, 1485, 1920, 1921).

**Prognosis and predictive factors**
These neoplasms are aggressive, with a median survival of 18 months and a 5-year survival rate of less than 10% (739, 936). Approximately 50% of patients have metastases at the time of diagnosis, and an additional 25% develop metastatic disease following surgical resection of the primary tumour (936). The most important prognostic factor is tumour stage, with patients lacking lymph node or distant metastases surviving longer (936). Patients with the lipase hypersecretion syndrome were shown to have a particularly short survival, because most of these patients had widespread metastatic disease. Despite poor overall survival rates, there are anecdotal reports of survival for several years in the presence of metastatic disease, and responses to chemotherapy have been noted (936). Thus, the prognosis of acinar cell carcinoma may be somewhat less poor than that of ductal adenocarcinoma.

No specific grading system for acinar cell carcinomas has been proposed. No association between the extent of acinus formation and prognosis has been observed. There is an insufficient number of pediatric acinar cell carcinomas to allow an accurate assessment of the biological behaviour in children. Available data suggest that acinar cell carcinomas occurring under the age of 20 may be less aggressive than their adult counterparts (936, 1446).

---

*Fig. 10.30* Acinar cell carcinoma. Solid pattern with uniform round nuclei.

*Fig. 10.31* Acinar cell carcinoma showing immunoreactivity for chromogranin.
Pancreatoblastoma

Definition
A malignant epithelial tumour, generally affecting young children, composed of well-defined solid nests of cells with acinar formations and squamoid corpuscles, separated by stromal bands. Acinar differentiation prevails, often associated with lesser degrees of endocrine or ductal differentiation.

ICD-O code 8971/3

Epidemiology

Incidence
Pancreatoblastoma is an exceedingly rare tumour, less than 75 cases having been reported [782, 939, 2117]. However, it is among the most frequent pancreatic tumours in childhood, probably accounting for 30-50% of pancreatic neoplasms occurring in young children [631].

Age and sex distribution
The majority of pancreatoblastomas occur in children, most being under the age of 10. The median age of pediatric patients is approximately 4 years [742, 939], and only a few cases have been described in the second decade of life [782]. A number of congenital examples have also been documented [939]. Rarely, tumours histologically indistinguishable from pancreatoblastomas occur in adult patients ranging between 19 and 56 years of age [939, 1053, 1452]. There is a slight male predominance, with an M:F ratio of 1.3:1 [939].

Aetiology
The aetiology is unknown.

Localization
The head of the gland is affected in about 50% of cases, the remainder being equally divided between the body and the tail.

Clinical features
The presenting features of pancreatoblastoma are generally non-specific. Especially in the pediatric age group, many patients present with an incidentally detected abdominal mass [782, 939]. Related symptoms include pain, weight loss, and diarrhoea. The paraneoplastic syndromes associated with acinar cell carcinoma (lipase hypersecretion syndrome) and pancreatic endocrine neoplasms have not been described, but one patient developed Cushing syndrome [1478].

Radiologically, pancreatoblastomas are large, well-defined, lobulated tumours which may show calcifications on CT scan [1833, 2027, 2117]. There is no consistent elevation of serum tumour markers, but some cases have exhibited increased alpha-fetoprotein levels [802, 939].

Macroscopy
The size of pancreatoblastomas varies from 1.5-20 cm. Most tumours are solitary, solid neoplasms composed of well-defined lobules of soft, fleshy tissue separated by fibrous bands. Areas of necrosis may be prominent. Uncommonly the tumours are grossly cystic, a phenomenon reported in all cases associated with the Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome [432].

Histopathology
The epithelial elements of pancreatoblastomas are highly cellular and arranged in well-defined islands separated by stromal bands, producing a ‘geographic’ low power appearance. Solid, hypercellular areas composed of nests of polygonal cells alternate with regions showing more obvious acinar differentiation, with polarized cells surrounding small luminal spaces. In rare tumours, larger glandular spaces lined by mucinous cells may be seen [939]. Nuclear atypia is generally minimal.

Squamoid corpuscles. One of the most characteristic features of pancreatoblastoma is the ‘squamoid corpuscle’. These enigmatic structures vary from large islands of plump, epithelioid cells to whorled nests of spindled cells to frankly keratinizing squamous islands. The nuclei of the squamoid corpuscles are larger and more oval than those of the surrounding cells; nuclear clearing due to the accumulation of biotin may be seen [1895]. The frequency and composition of the squamoid corpuscles varies in different regions of the tumour and between different cases.

Stroma. Especially in pediatric cases, the stroma of pancreatoblastomas is often hypercellular, in some instances achieving a neoplastic appearance. Rarely, the presence of heterologous stromal elements, including neoplastic bone and cartilage, has been reported [127, 939].

Histochemistry and immunohistochemistry
Over 90% of pancreatoblastomas exhibit evidence of acinar differentiation in the form of PAS-positive, diastase resistant cytoplasmic granules as well as immunohistochemical staining for pancreatic enzymes, including trypsin, chymotrypsin, and lipase [939, 1282, 1400]. The staining may be focal, often limited to the apical cytoplasm in areas of the tumour with acinar formations. At least focal
immunoreactivity for markers of endocrine differentiation (chromogranin or synaptophysin) is found in over two-thirds of cases, and expression of markers of ductal differentiation such as CEA, DUPAN-2, or B72.3 is found in more than half of cases [939]. In most instances, the proportion of cells expressing acinar markers outnumbers the proportion expressing endocrine or ductal markers. In cases associated with elevations in the serum levels of alpha-fetoprotein, immunohistochemical positivity for AFP has been detectable [802, 939]. Immunohistochemical evaluation of the squamoid corpuscles has failed to define a reproducible line of differentiation for this component [939].

Relationship to acinar cell carcinoma
Both pancreatoblastomas and acinar cell carcinomas consistently exhibit acinar differentiation and may exhibit lesser degrees of endocrine and ductal differentiation [936, 939]. Histologically, acinar formations are characteristic of pancreatoblastoma, and the solid areas resemble the solid pattern of acinar cell carcinoma. Biologically, the two tumours are also similar, with a relatively favorable prognosis in childhood, but a very poor prognosis in adulthood. For these reasons, some observers have suggested that pancreatoblastoma represents the paediatric counterpart of acinar cell carcinoma. Although this proposal is attractive in many ways, pancreatoblastoma remains a separately definable neoplasm with characteristic histologic, immunohistochemical, and clinical features.

Ultrastructure
By electron microscopy, pancreatoblastomas generally exhibit evidence of acinar differentiation [939, 1758], with relatively abundant rough endoplasmic reticulum and mitochondria, and apically located dense zymogen granules. The zymogen granules may be round and uniform, resembling those of non-neoplastic cells. In addition, irregular fibrillary granules similar to those described in acinar cell carcinomas may be found [936, 939]. In rare cases, dense-core neurosecretory-type granules and muci-gen granules have also been observed [939]. Examination of the squamoid corpuscles has revealed tonofilaments but no evidence of a specific line of differentiation.

Genetic susceptibility
In several reported cases (all congenital examples), pancreatoblastomas have been a component of the Beckwith-Wiedeman syndrome [432].

Prognosis
Pancreatoblastomas are malignant tumours. Nodal or hepatic metastases are present in 35% of patients [782, 939]. More widespread dissemination may also occur. In pediatric patients lacking evidence of metastatic disease at first presentation, the prognosis is very good, most patients being cured by a combination of surgery and chemotherapy [894, 1299]. In the presence of metastatic disease or in adult patients with pancreatoblastomas, the outcome is usually fatal [312, 939], the mean survival being 1.5 years [939]. However, a favourable response to chemotherapy has been noted in some children [235, 2027].
Solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm

**Definition**
A usually benign neoplasm with predominant manifestation in young women, composed of monomorphic cells forming solid and pseudopapillary structures, frequently showing haemorrhagic-cystic changes and variably expressing epithelial, mesenchymal and endocrine markers.

**ICD-O codes**
- Solid pseudopapillary neoplasm 8452/1
- Solid pseudopapillary carcinoma     8452/3

**Synonyms**
- Solid-cystic tumour {946}, papillary-cystic tumour {170}, solid and papillary epithelial neoplasm.

**Epidemiology**
Solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm is uncommon but has been recognized with increasing frequency in recent years (946, 1192, 1358). It accounts for approximately 1-2% of all exocrine pancreatic tumours (359, 941, 1280). It occurs predominantly in adolescent girls and young women (mean 35 years; range 8-67 years) (1781, 1072). It is rare in men (mean, 35 years; range 25-72 years) (945, 1193, 1975). There is no apparent ethnic preference (978, 1395).

**Aetiology**
The aetiology is unknown. The striking sex and age distribution point to genetic and hormonal factors, but there are no reports indicating an association with endocrine disturbances including overproduction of oestrogen or progesterone. Moreover, only very few women developed a solid pseudopapillary neoplasm after long-term use of hormonal contraceptives (359, 436, 1655).

**Localization**
There is no preferential localization within the pancreas (1282, 1358).

**Clinical features**
Usually, the neoplasms are found incidentally on routine physical examination or they cause abdominal discomfort and pain (1358), occasionally after abdominal trauma (945). Jaundice is rare (1427), even in tumours that originate from the head of the pancreas, and there is no associated functional endocrine syndrome. All known tumour markers are normal.

Ultrasonography (US) and computed tomography (CT) reveal a sharply demarcated, variably solid and cystic mass without any internal septation (300). The tumour margin may contain calcifications. Administration of contrast medium results in enhancement of the solid tumour parts. On angiography, the neoplasms are usually hypovascular or mildly hypervascular lesions with displacement of surrounding vessels (2153). Fine needle aspiration cytology performed under radiological control shows monomorphic cells with round nuclei and eosinophilic or foamy cytoplasm (234, 2119, 2140).

**Macroscopy**
The neoplasms present as large, round, solitary masses (average size 8-10 cm; range, 3-18 cm), and are often fluctuant. They are usually encapsulated and well demarcated from the surrounding pancreas. Multiple tumours are exceptional (1427). The cut surfaces reveal lobulated, light brown solid areas, zones of haemorrhage and necrosis, and cystic spaces filled with necrotic debris. Occasionally, the haemorrhagic-cystic changes involve almost the entire lesion so that the neoplasm may be mistaken for a pseudocyst. The tumour wall may contain calcifications (1358). A few tumours have been found to be attached to the pancreas or even in extrapancreatic locations (812, 914, 945). Invasion of adjacent organs or the portal vein is rare (1655, 1684, 1701).

**Histopathology**
In large neoplasms, extensive necrosis is typical and the preserved tissue is usually found in the tumour periphery under the fibrous capsule. This tissue exhibits a solid monomorphic pattern with variable sclerosis. More centrally there is a pseudopapillary pattern, and these components often gradually merge into each other.
other. In both patterns, the uniform polyhedral cells are arranged around delicate, often hyalinized fibrovascular stalks with small vessels (1395). Neoplastic cells that are arranged radially around the minute fibrovascular stalks may resemble ‘ependymal’ rosettes. Luminal spaces are consistently absent. In the solid parts, disseminated aggregates of neoplastic cells with foamy cytoplasm or cholesterol crystals surrounded by foreign body cells may be found. The spaces between the pseudopapillary structures are filled with red blood cells. The hyalinized connective tissue strands may contain foci of calcification and even ossification (1193). The neoplastic cells have either eosinophilic or clear vacuolar cytoplasm. Occasionally they contain eosinophilic, diastase-resistant PAS-positive globules of varying size, which may also occur outside the cells. Glycogen or mucin cannot be detected. Grimelius positive cells may occur. The round to oval nuclei have finely dispersed chromatin and are often grooved or indented. Mitoses are usually rare, but in a few instances prominent mitotic activity is observed (1358). In rare cases, there is also vessel invasion (2140). The neoplastic tissue is usually well demarcated from the normal pancreas, although a fibrous capsule may be absent and invasion of tumour cell nests into the surrounding pancreatic tissue may occur (1193, 1358).

Criteria of malignancy
Although criteria of malignancy have not yet been clearly established, it appears that unequivocal perineural invasion, angioinvasion, or deep invasion into the surrounding tissue indicate malignant behaviour, and such lesions should be classified as solid-pseudopapillary carcinoma. Nishihara et al. (1358) compared the histological features of three metastasizing and 19 nonmetastasizing solid-pseudopapillary neoplasms, and found that venous invasion, degree of nuclear atypia, mitotic count and prominence of necrotic necrotic cell nests (cells with pyknotic nuclei and eosinophilic cytoplasm) were associated with malignancy. However, neoplasms in which the above-mentioned histological criteria of malignancy are not detected may also give rise to metastases. Consequently, benign appearing solid-pseudopapillary neoplasms must be classified as lesions of uncertain malignant potential.

Histochemistry and immunohistochemistry
The most consistently positive markers for solid-pseudopapillary neoplasms are alpha-1-antitrypsin, alpha-1-antichymotrypsin, neuron specific enolase (NSE), vimentin and progesterone receptors (306, 945, 963, 1226). The cellular reaction for alpha-1-antitrypsin and alpha-1-antichymotrypsin is always intense, but only involves small cell clusters or single cells, a finding that is characteristic of this neoplasm. Alpha-1-antitrypsin also stains the PAS-positive globules. Staining for NSE and vimentin, in contrast, is usually diffuse. Inconsistent results have been reported for epithelial markers, synaptophysin, pancreatic enzymes, islet cell hormones and other antigens such as CEA or CA 19.9. Most authors report negative results for chromogranin A, CEA, CA 19.9 and AFP. A few neoplasms have been found to express S-100 (945, 1226, 1358). Cytokeratin is detected in 30% (946) to 70% (963, 2195), depending on the method of antigen retrieval applied.
Usually, the staining for keratin is focal and faint. The keratin profile (CK 7, 8, 18 and 19) is that of the ductal cell (740, 1844). Positive immunoreactivity for trypsin, chymotrypsin, amylase and/or phospholipase A2 has been reported (166, 1072, 1192, 1226, 1844), but has not been confirmed by most other authors (812, 945, 1282). Similarly, focal positivity for glucagon, somatostatin and/or insulin has been described in some tumours (1226, 2021, 2147), but was not detected in most other cases (1072, 1282, 1844).

**Ultrastructure**
The neoplastic cells have round or markedly indented nuclei containing a small single nucleolus and a narrow rim of marginated heterochromatin. The cells show abundant cytoplasm, which is rich in mitochondria. Zymogen-like granules of variable sizes (500-3000 nm) are conspicuous, probably representing deposits of alpha-1-antitrypsin. The contents of these granules commonly disintegrate, forming multilamellated vesicles and lipid droplets (946, 1031, 1226, 2154). Neurosecretory-like granules have been described in a few tumours (867, 880, 1684, 2119, 2147). Intermediate cell junctions are rarely observed and microvilli are lacking, but small intercellular spaces are frequent.

**Genetics**
In contrast to infiltrating ductal carcinomas, solid-pseudopapillary neoplasms appear to have wild-type KRAS genes and do not immunorexpress p53 (512, 1007, 1039). An unbalanced translocation between chromosomes 13 and 17 resulting in a loss of 13q14→qter and 17p11→pter has been described in one solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm (616).

**Prognosis and predictive factors**
In general, the prognosis is good. After complete removal more than 95% of the patients are cured. Local spread or dissemination to the peritoneal cavity has been reported in the context of abdominal trauma and rupture of the tumour (1060). Even in patients who had local spread, recurrences (359, 999), or metastases (234, 1192, 1642), long disease-free periods have been recorded after initial diagnosis and resection. Only a few patients have died of a metastasizing solid-pseudopapillary neoplasm (1192, 1395).

**Histological criteria.** Perineural invasion, angioinvasion, or deep invasion into the surrounding tissue indicate malignant behaviour, and such lesions are classified as solid-pseudopapillary carcinoma. Venous invasion, a high degree of nuclear atypia, mitotic activity and prominence of necrobiotic cell nests (cells with pyknotic nuclei and eosinophilic cytoplasm) were reported to be associated with malignancy (1358).

**DNA content.** There is evidence that an aneuploid DNA content assessed by flow cytometry is associated with malignant behaviour, although the number of cases studied is small (867, 1358, 234).
Miscellaneous carcinomas of the pancreas

Oncocytic carcinoma
These lesions are characterized by large cells with granular eosinophilic cytoplasm and large nuclei with well-defined nucleoli. Ultrastructurally, the cells show abundant mitochondria and lack zymogen and neuroendocrine granules. Local invasiveness, lymph node and pulmonary metastasis can occur (1781). Differential diagnosis includes endocrine tumour (1454) and solid pseudopapillary tumour.

Nonmucinous, glycogen-poor cystadenocarcinoma
A large, encapsulated mass with cystic spaces lined by serous adenoma like component and malignant-appearing columnar epithelium. The tumour cells are negative for mucins and show oncocytic features by electron microscopy [533].

Choriocarcinoma
An aggressive tumour, associated with elevated levels of serum human chorionic gonadotrophin (hCG), composed of syncytiotrophoblastic cells intermingled with cytotrophoblastic cells immunoreactive for hCG. Choriocarcinoma can be ‘pure’ or associated with mucinous cystadenocarcinoma (1781, 2194).

Clear cell carcinoma
A carcinoma composed of clear cells, rich in glycogen and poor in mucin, morphologically resembling renal cell carcinoma (941). Adenocarcinomatous, anaplastic, or intraductal papillary components can be found (1781). A ductal phenotype has been suggested by the pattern of immunoreactivity for cytokeratins, the lack of vimentin expression, and the presence of KRAS mutation (1121).

Ciliated cell carcinoma
This lesion shows the pattern of ductal adenocarcinoma, but contains many ciliated cells, as demonstrated at the ultrastructural level (1781).

Microglandular carcinoma
Also known as microadenocarcinoma, this lesion is characterized by cribriform or microglandular pattern of growth (941). The same cases were reclassified with immunohistochemistry as adenocarcinoma, acinar cell carcinomas and endocrine carcinoma (1090). Microglandular carcinoma is best regarded as a pattern of growth rather than a distinctive entity.

Medullary carcinoma
This recently described carcinoma shows a syncytial growth pattern and lymphoepithelioma-like features (see chapter on ductal adenocarcinoma, other rare carcinomas) (590).

Mesenchymal tumours of the pancreas

Primary mesenchymal tumours of the pancreas are exceedingly rare. Leiomyosarcomas and malignant gastrointestinal stromal tumours appear to be the least uncommon.

Recently, solitary fibrous tumours, similar to those more commonly seen on the serosal surfaces of the pleura and peritoneum, have been described (1118). Histologically they show bland spindle cells in a collagenous background. The lesional cells are positive for CD34 but negative for KIT and desmin; focal actin positivity may occur.

Miscellaneous carcinomas and lymphoma

249
Lymphoma of the pancreas

Definition
Primary lymphoma of the pancreas is defined as an extranodal lymphoma arising in the pancreas with the bulk of the disease localized to this site. Contiguous lymph node involvement and distant spread may be seen but the primary clinical presentation is in the pancreas with therapy directed to this site.

Epidemiology
Primary lymphoma of the pancreas is very rare accounting for less than 0.5% of pancreatic tumours. As with primary lymphomas occurring elsewhere in the digestive tract, patients are more frequently elderly.

Aetiology
Immunodeficiency predisposes to pancreatic lymphoma, both in the setting of HIV infection and as post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorders following solid organ transplantation. Familial pancreatic lymphoma has been reported in a sibling pair (brother and sister) who each presented with a high-grade B-cell lymphoma in their seventh decade. Pancreatic lymphoma has also been described in a patient with short bowel syndrome.

Clinical features
The presentation of primary pancreatic lymphoma may mimic that of carcinoma or pancreatitis. Pain free jaundice can occur. Ultrasonography may show an echo-poor lesion.

Histopathology
Primary pancreatic lymphomas are usually of B phenotype. Lymphomas of various types have been described, including low-grade lymphomas of diffuse small cell type, follicle centre cell lymphoma, low-grade MALT lymphoma, and large B-cell lymphoma. Only extremely rare cases of pancreatic T-cell lymphoma have been reported, including a single case of anaplastic large cell lymphoma (CD30 positive) of T-cell type and a case of pancreatic involvement by adult T-cell leukaemia/lymphoma. The histology of these cases varies little from that seen where these lymphoma types are encountered more frequently.

Prognosis
The distinction between lymphoma and carcinoma is important, as pancreatic lymphomas are associated with better prognosis and may be curable even in advanced stages. Occasional cases of relapse following prolonged remission have been reported in cases treated by chemotherapy.

Secondary tumours of the pancreas

Epidemiology
Secondary tumours of the pancreas are in most cases part of an advanced metastatic disease. They account for 3-16% of all pancreatic malignancies, affecting males and females equally. In our experience based on combined autopsy and histology material, out of 610 neoplasms involving the pancreas 26 (4.25%) were secondary. Any age may be affected, but the highest incidence is in the 6th decade.

Localization
Any anatomic region of the pancreas may be involved and there is no site predilection. Lesions can be solitary, multiple, or diffuse.

Clinical features
There are no specific symptoms for secondary tumours of the pancreas. Abdominal pain, jaundice, and diabetes might be the first sign, or in some cases an attack of acute pancreatitis.

Origin
Both epithelial and non-epithelial secondary tumours occur in the pancreas. The pancreas may be involved by direct spread (e.g. from stomach, liver, adrenal gland, retroperitoneum) or by lymphatic or haematogenous spread from distant sites.

Histopathology
Both pancreatic and extrapancreatic tumours may appear as solid, cystic, or mixed lesions. Fine needle aspiration can provide a rapid diagnosis.

Prognosis
The lesions are most commonly detected by imaging studies. Fine needle aspiration can provide a rapid diagnosis.
unique as a primary site since it might give rise to late solitary metastases (1644, 218).

**Histopathology**

The main differential diagnostic problem is to distinguish metastases from primary pancreatic neoplasms. The most problematic tumours are metastases from the gastrointestinal tract, renal cell carcinomas, small cell carcinoma, and lymphomas (240, 645, 1781). Apart from the clinical and radiological signs (934), multiple tumour foci with an abrupt transition from normal pancreas to the neoplastic tissue without signs of chronic pancreatitis in the surrounding parenchyma support metastatic origin (2089). Immunohistochemistry specific for certain primary tumours may also be helpful (1190, 1707).

**Prognosis**

Since in most cases pancreatic metastases indicate an advanced neoplastic disease, the prognosis is generally poor. In cases of solitary metastases, combined adjuvant therapy and surgical resection might be beneficial (360, 674, 218, 1597).

---

**Fig. 10.38** Secondary tumours in the pancreas. A Metastatic small cell lung carcinoma. B Metastatic melanoma. C Metastatic renal cell carcinoma. D Metastatic gastric signet ring cell carcinoma.
Contributors

Dr Lauri A. AALTONEN *  
Department of Medical Genetics  
Haartman Institute, University of Helsinki  
PO Box 21 (Haartmaninkatu 3)  
SF-00014 Helsinki  
FINLAND  
Tel. +358 9 1912 6278  
Fax +358 9 1912 6677  
lauri.aaltonen@helsinki.fi

Dr Mark J. ARENDS  
Dept. of Histopathology, Box 235  
Addenbrooke's Hospital  
Hills Road  
CB2 2QO, Cambridge  
UNITED KINGDOM  
Tel. +44 1223 217176  
Fax +44 1223 216980  
mja40@cam.ac.uk

Dr Randall W. BURT  
Div. of Gastroenterology, Rm 4R118  
University of Utah Health Science Ctr.  
50 North Medical Drive  
Salt Lake City, UT 84132  
USA  
Tel. +1 801 581 7802  
Fax +1 801 581 7476  
randall.burt@hsc.utah.edu

Dr Guido ADLER  
Department of Medicine I  
University of Ulm  
Robert Koch Strasse 8  
D-89070 Ulm  
GERMANY  
Tel. +49 731 50 24300/24301  
Fax +49 731 50 24302  
guido.adler@medizin.uni-ulm.de

Dr Guido ADLER  
Department of Medicine I  
University of Ulm  
Robert Koch Strasse 8  
D-89070 Ulm  
GERMANY  
Tel. +49 731 50 24300/24301  
Fax +49 731 50 24302  
guido.adler@medizin.uni-ulm.de

Dr Jorge ALBORES-SAAVEDRA *  
Dept. of Pathology, Univ. of Texas  
Southwestern Medical Center  
5323 Harry Hines Blvd  
Dallas, TX 75235-9072  
USA  
Tel. +1 214 590 6585  
Fax +1 214 590 1411  
rmuril@mednet.swmed.edu

Dr Rudolf ARNOLD  
Zentrum für Innere Medizin  
Klinikum der Philipps Universitat Marburg  
Baldingerstrasse, P.O.B. 2360  
D-35033 Marburg  
GERMANY  
Tel. +49 6421 286 6480  
Fax +49 6421 286 8922  
arndr@mailer.uni-marburg.de

Dr Carlo CAPELLA *  
Department of Pathology  
University of Pavia at Varese  
Ospedale di Circolo  
I-21100 Varese  
ITALY  
Tel. +39 0332 278231 or 272  
Fax +39 0332 278599  
carlo.capella@ospedale.varese.it

Dr Mark J. ARENDS  
Dept. of Histopathology, Box 235  
Addenbrooke's Hospital  
Hills Road  
CB2 2QO, Cambridge  
UNITED KINGDOM  
Tel. +44 1223 217176  
Fax +44 1223 216980  
mja40@cam.ac.uk

Dr Marc Billaud  
Faculté de Médecine  
Lab. de Génétique et Cancer, UMR 5641  
8 avenue Rockefeller  
69373 Lyon  
FRANCE  
Tel. +33 4 78 77 72 14  
Fax +33 4 78 77 72 20  
billaud@univ-lyon1.fr

Dr Fatima CARNEIRO  
IPATIMUP  
Medical Faculty, University of Porto  
Rua Roberto Frias s/n  
4200 Porto  
PORTRUGAL  
Tel. +351 2509 0591  
Fax +351 2550 3940  
fcarneiro@ipatimup.pt

Dr Mary Ann CLARK  
Department of Pathology  
Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center  
1275 York Avenue  
Archives of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine  
Philadelphia, PA 19111-2188  
USA  
Tel. +1 215 706 3949  
Fax +1 215 706 3051  
mclark@mskcc.org

Dr Jean-Yves BLAY  
Centre Leon Berard  
Université Lyon I  
28 rue Laennec  
69008 Lyon  
FRANCE  
Tel. +33 4 78 78 27 57  
Fax +33 4 78 78 26 16  
blay@lyon.fnclcc.fr

Dr Hubert E. BLUM  
Department of Medicine II  
University Hospital  
Hugstetter Strasse, 55  
D-79106 Freiburg  
GERMANY  
Tel. +49 7612 703403  
Fax +49 7612 703610  
heblum@uki.uni-freiburg.de

Dr Andreas CHOTT  
Department of Clinical Pathology  
University of Vienna  
Waehringer Guertel 18-20  
A 1090 Vienna  
AUSTRIA  
Tel. +43 1 405 3402  
Fax +43 1 405 3402  
andreas.chott@akh-wien.ac.at

* The asterisk indicates participation in the Working Group Meeting on the WHO Classification of Tumours of the Digestive System that was held in Lyon, France, Nov 6-9, 1999.
Dr W.H. CHOW  
National Cancer Institute  
EPS 8100  
6120 Executive Blvd,  
Bethesda, MD 20892-7182  
USA  
Tel. +1 301 435 4708  
Fax +1 301 402 1819  
choww@exchange.nih.gov

Dr Charis ENG  
Human Cancer Genetics Program  
Ohio State University Cancer Ctr.  
420 W 12th Avenue, 690 MRF,  
Columbus, OH 43210  
USA  
Tel. +1 614 688 4508  
Fax +1 614 688 3205  
eng-1@medctr.osu.edu

Dr Franz FOGT  
Department of Pathology, Presbyterian  
Med. Center, Univ of Pennsylvania  
39th & Market Streets,  
Philadelphia, PA 19104-2699  
USA  
Tel. +1 215 662 8077  
Fax +1 215 662 1694  
fogt@mail.med.upenn.edu

Dr Pelayo CORREA  
Department of Pathology,  
Louisiana State Univ. Medical Center  
1901 Perdido Street,  
New Orleans, LA 70112  
USA  
Tel. +1 504 568 6035  
Fax +1 504 599 1278  
correa@isuhsc.edu

Dr Claus FENGER  
Dept. of Pathology  
Odense University Hospital  
Winslowparken 15  
DK-5000 Odense C,  
DENMARK  
Tel. +45 6541 4807  
Fax +45 6591 2943  
claus.fenger@ouh.dk

Dr M. FRISCH  
Viral Epidemiology Branch  
National Cancer Institute  
6120 Executive Blvd, EPS / 8015,  
Bethesda, MD 20852  
USA  
Tel. +1 301 594 7825  
Fax +1 301 402 0817  
frischm@mail.nih.gov

Dr G.T. DEANS  
Consulting Surgeon  
Stepping Hill Hospital  
Poplar Gr,  
Stockport SK2 7JE,  
UNITED KINGDOM  
Tel. +44 161 440 8820  
Fax +44 161 483 8576  
gtdeans@uk.gateway.net

Dr Cecilia FENOGLIO-PREISER  
Department of Pathology  
University of Cincinnati, School of Medicine  
231 Bethesda Ave, POB 670529  
Cincinnati, OH 45267-0529  
USA  
Tel. +1 513 558 4500  
Fax +1 513 558 2289  
cecilia.fenogliopreiser@uc.edu

Dr Helmut GABBERT  
Institute of Pathology  
Heinrich Heine University  
Moorenstr. 5,  
40225 Düsseldorf,  
GERMANY  
Tel. +49 211 811 8339  
Fax +49 211 811 8353  
gabbert@med.uni-duesseldorf.de

Dr Drs. Jean-François FLEJOU  
Serv. d’Anatomie et de Cytologie  
Pathologiques, Hôpital Saint Antoine  
184 rue du Faubourg St Antoine,  
75011 Paris,  
FRANCE  
Tel. +33 1 40 87 54 59  
Fax +33 1 40 87 00 77  
jean-francois.flejou@bjn-hop-paris.fr

Dr Robert M. GENTA  
Department of Pathology - 113  
Veterans Affairs Medical Center  
2002 Holcombe Blvd,  
Houston, TX 77030,  
USA  
Tel. +1 713 794 7113  
Fax +1 713 794 7101  
rmgenta@bcm.tmc.edu

Dr David GOLDGAR  
International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)  
150 Cours Albert Thomas,  
69372 Lyon,  
FRANCE  
Tel. +33 4 72 73 85 33  
Fax +33 4 72 73 83 42  
goldgar@iarc.fr
Dr David S. Klimstra
Department of Pathology
Memorial Sloan Kettering Cancer Center
1275 York Avenue
New York, NY 10021
USA
Tel. +1 212 639 2410
Fax +1 212 717 3203
klimstrd@mskcc.org

Dr Anthony S.Y. Leong
Discipline of Anatomical Pathology
University of Newcastle
Locked Bag 1
Newcastle 2310
AUSTRALIA
Tel. +61 2 4921 4000
Fax +61 2 4921 4440
aleong@mail.newcastle.edu.au

Dr Markku Miettinen *
Dept. of Soft Tissue Pathology
Armed Forces Institute of Pathology
Alaska Avenue at 14th St
Washington, DC 20306
USA
Tel. +1 202 782 2793
Fax +1 202 782 9182
miettenen@afip.osd.mil

Dr Günter Klöppel *
Institute of Pathology
University of Kiel
Michaelistrasse 11
D-24105 Kiel
GERMANY
Tel. +49 431 597 3400
Fax +49 431 597 3462
gkloeppel@path.uni-kiel.de

Dr Daniel S. Longnecker *
Department of Pathology
Dartmouth-Hitchcock Medical Center
Lebanon, NH 03756
USA
Tel. +1 603 650 7899
Fax +1 603 650 6120
daniel.s.longnecker@dartmouth.edu

Dr Ruggero Montesano
International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)
150 Cours Albert Thomas
69372 Lyon
FRANCE
Tel. +33 4 72 73 84 63
Fax +33 4 72 73 84 26
montesano@iarc.fr

Dr Masamichi Kojiro
Department of Pathology
School of Medicine, Kurume Univ.
67 Asahi-machi
8030-0001 Kurume
JAPAN
Tel. +81 942 317546
Fax +81 942 320905
kojiro@med.kurume-u.ac.jp

Dr Shin-ei Kudo *
Department of Gastroenterology
Akita Red Cross Hospital
222-1 Naeshirosawa-aza Saruta, Kamikitade
010-1495 Akita-City
JAPAN
Tel. +81 18 829 5000, ext 3325
Fax +81 18 829 5115
kudo-s@synap.ne.jp

Dr Hans K. Müller-Hermelink
Pathologisches Institut der Universität Würzburg
Josef-Schneider-Str. 2
D-97080 Würzburg
GERMANY
Tel. +49 931 201 3776
Fax +49 931 201 3440 /3505
path062@mail.uni-wuerzburg.de

Dr Marc-Claude Marti
Policlinique de Chirurgie
Hôpital Cantonal Universitaire
Rue Michel Servet
CH-1211 Geneva 4
SWITZERLAND
Tel. +41 22 372 7907
Fax +41 22 372 7909
marc-claude.marti@hcuge.ch

Dr Nubia Muñoz
International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)
150 Cours Albert Thomas
69372 Lyon
FRANCE
Tel. +33 4 72 73 84 04
Fax +33 4 72 73 84 45
munoz@iarc.fr

Dr Dr René Lambert *
International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)
150 Cours Albert Thomas
69372 Lyon
FRANCE
Tel. +33 4 72 73 85 14
Fax +33 4 72 73 86 50
lambert@iarc.fr

Dr Yusuke Nakamura
Laboratory of Molecular Medicine
Inst. of Medical Science, Univ. of Tokyo
4-6-1 Shirokanedai Minato-ku
Tokyo 108,
JAPAN
Tel. +81 3 5449 5372
Fax +81 3 5449 5433
yusuke@ims.u-tokyo.ac.jp

Dr Shin-ichi Nakamura
Division of Pathology
School of Medicine, Iwate Medical University
19-1 Uchimaru
020 Morioka,
JAPAN
Tel. +81 19 651 5111
Fax +81 19 629 1437
nakamura.shin@ma2.justnet.ne.jp

Dr Pierre Laurent Puig
U490 Laboratoire de Toxicol. Moleculaire
Faculté de Médecine, Université Paris V
45 rue des Saints Pères
75006 Paris, FRANCE
Tel. +33 1 42 96 20 01
Fax +33 1 42 96 20 72
pierre.laurent-puig@biomedicale.univ-paris5.fr

Dr Francis Megraud
Laboratoire de Bactéiologie
Hôpital Pellegrin
Place Amélie Raba Léon
33076 Bordeaux
FRANCE
Tel. +33 5 56 79 59 10
Fax +33 5 56 79 60 18
francis.megraud@chu-aquitaine.fr

Dr Dr Herman R. Menck
Commission on Cancer
American College of Surgeons
633 N Saint Clair Street
Chicago, IL 60611
USA
Tel. +1 312 664 4050
Fax +1 312 202 5009
mencky@aol.com

Dr Dr Ruggero Montesano
International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)
150 Cours Albert Thomas
69372 Lyon
FRANCE
Tel. +33 4 72 73 84 63
Fax +33 4 72 73 84 26
montesano@iarc.fr
Dr Tadakazu SHIMODA *
Department of Clinical Laboratory
National Cancer Center Hospital
5-1-1 Tsukiji Chuo Ku
104-0045 Tokyo
JAPAN
Tel. +81 3 3542 2511
Fax +81 3 5565 7029
tshimoda@gan2.ncc.gao.jp

Dr Rüdiger J. SIEWERT
Chirurgische Klinik
Klinikum rechts der Isar
Ismaningerstrasse 22
81675 München
GERMANY
Tel. +49 89 4140/2120
Fax +49 89 470 6298
catharina@nt1.chir.med.tu-muenchen.de

Dr Leslie H. SOBIN *
Division of Gastrointestinal Pathology
Armed Forces Institute of Pathology
Alaska Avenue at 14th St
Washington, DC 20306-6000
USA
Tel. +1 202 782 2880
Fax +1 202 782 9020
sobin@afip.osd.mil

Dr Enrico SOLCIA
Department of Human Pathology
University of Pavia
Policlinico San Matteo
I-27100 Pavia
ITALY
Tel. +39 038 252 8474
Fax +39 038 252 5866
apati@unipv.it

Dr Banchob SRIPA
Department of Pathology
Faculty of Medicine
Khon Kaen University
Khon Kaen 40002
THAILAND
Tel. +66 43 348388
Fax +66 43 348375
banchob@kkul.kku1.ac.th

Dr Parupudi V.J. SRIRAM
Department of Interdisciplinary Endoscopy
University Hospital Hamburg-Eppendorf
Martinistrasse 52
20246 Hamburg
GERMANY
Tel. +49 40 4280 33424
Fax +49 40 4280 34420

Dr H.J. STEIN
Department of Surgery
Technische Universität München
Ismaninger Str 22
D-81675 München
GERMANY
Tel. +49 89 4140 2120
Fax +49 89 4140 4865
stein@1.chir.med.tu-muenchen.de

Dr J. Thomas STOCKER *
Department of Pathology, Uniformed Services Univ of Health Sciences
4301 Jones Bridge Road
Bethesda, MD 20814-4799
USA
Tel. +1 301 295 3480
Fax +1 301 295 1640
jstocker@usuhs.mil

Dr Manfred STOLTE
Institut fur Pathologie
Klinikum Bayreuth
Preuschwitzer Str. 101
D-95445 Bayreuth
GERMANY
Tel. +49 921 400 5600
Fax +49 921 400 5609
pathologie.klinikum@bnbt.de

Dr Ian C. TALBOT *
Academic Dept. of Pathology
Imperial Cancer Research Fund
St Mark’s Hospital, Watford Road
Harrow, Middlesex HAL 3UJ
UNITED KINGDOM
Tel. +44 181 235 4220
Fax +44 181 235 4277
i.talbot@icrf.icnet.uk

Dr Neil D. THEISE
Department of Pathology, Room 461
New York University Medical Center
560 First Avenue
New York, NY 10016
USA
Tel. +1 212 263 8944
Fax +1 212 263 7916
neiltheise@aol.com

Dr H.J. STEIN
Department of Surgery
Technische Universität München
Ismaninger Str 22
D-81675 München
GERMANY
Tel. +49 89 4140 2120
Fax +49 89 4140 4865
stein@1.chir.med.tu-muenchen.de

Dr Vanchai VATANASAPT
Mekong Institute
Medical Faculty
Khon Kaen University
Khon Kaen 40002
THAILAND
Tel. +66 4324 1479
Fax +68 4324 3131
kambro@kkul.kku.ac.th

Dr Bert VOGELSTEIN
Johns Hopkins Oncology Center
424 North Bond Street
Baltimore, MD 21205
USA
Tel. +1 410 955 8877
Fax +1 410 955 0548
vogelbe@welchlink.welch.jhu.edu
Source of charts and photographs

1.
1.01 IARC Press, Lyon
1.02 IARC Press, Lyon
1.03 A-F T. Shimoda
1.04 H. Inoue
1.05 A, B H. Inoue
1.06 T. Shimoda
1.07 L.H. Sobin
1.08 H.E. Gabbert
1.09 A, B H. Watanabe
1.10 A L.H. Sobin
1.10 B, C T. Shimoda
1.11 A L.H. Sobin
1.11 B T. Shimoda
1.12 H.E. Gabbert
1.13 A I.C. Talbot
1.13 B T. Shimoda
1.13 C H.E. Gabbert
1.13 D I.C. Talbot
1.14 N.J. Carr
1.15 A-C H.E. Gabbert
1.16 J.K. Field
1.17 P. Hainaut
1.18 P. Hainaut
1.19 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
1.20 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
1.21 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
1.22 R. Lambert
1.23 A, B M. Werner
1.24 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
1.25 A L.H. Sobin
1.25 B M. Werner
1.26 L.H. Sobin
1.27 M. Werner
1.28 A, C M. Werner
1.28 B C. Fenoglio-Preiser
1.29 P. Anthony
1.30 M. Werner
1.31 A, B M. Miettinen
1.32 M. Miettinen
1.33 M. Miettinen
1.34 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
1.35 C. Fenger
1.36 N.J. Carr
2.
2.01 S.J. Spechler
2.02 H.J. Stein
2.03 S.J. Spechler
2.04 R. Lambert
2.05 A F. Fogt
2.05 B C.A. Rubio
2.06 M. Werner
3.
3.01 IARC Press, Lyon
3.02 IARC Press, Lyon
3.03 P. Correa
3.04 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.05 A, B H. Inoue
3.06 A-D H. Inoue
3.07 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.08 A I.C. Talbot
3.08 B N.A. Sheperd
3.09 A, B C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.09 C M. Sasako
3.09 D-F C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.10 A M. Sasako
3.10 B F. Carneiro
3.10 C M. Sasako
3.10 D F. Carneiro
3.11 A C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.11 B I.C. Talbot
3.11 C M. Sasako
3.11 D C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.12 A H. Watanabe
3.12 B C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.12 C M. Sasako
3.13 A H. Watanabe
3.13 B C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.13 C M. Sasako
3.13 D L.H. Sobin
3.14 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.15 L.H. Sobin
3.16 A, B L.H. Sobin
3.17 A, B F. Carneiro
3.18 A, B M. Sasako
3.18 B H. Watanabe
3.19 A, B M. Sasako
3.20 M. Rugge
3.21 I.C. Talbot
3.22 C.A. Rubio
3.23 A I.C. Talbot
3.23 B M. Rugge
3.24 A, B C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.24 B I.C. Talbot
3.24 C M. Rugge
3.25 A-D N.J. Carr
3.26 A, B N.J. Carr
3.27 J.R. Jass
3.28 A, B F. Carneiro
3.28 C H.E. Gabbert
3.29 H.E. Gabbert
3.30 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.31 L.H. Sobin
3.32 C. Capella
3.33 A J.R. Jass
3.33 B C. Capella
3.34 C. Capella
3.35 A S.R. Hamilton
3.35 B C. Capella
3.36 C. Capella
3.37 I.C. Talbot
3.38 K. Ishak
3.39 A. Wotherspoon
3.40 S.R. Hamilton
3.41 A, B A. Wotherspoon
3.42 A, B J.R. Jass
3.42 C, D A. Wotherspoon
3.43 M. Miettinen
3.44 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.45 A, B C. Fenger
3.45 A-C M. Miettinen
3.47 Lasota
3.48 A, B M. Miettinen
3.49 H. Watanabe
3.50 J.R. Jass
3.51 N.J. Carr
3.52 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
3.53 K. Ishak
3.54 L.H. Sobin
3.55 L.H. Sobin
4.
4.01 A L.H. Sobin
4.01 B S.R. Hamilton
4.02 C. Fenoglio-Preiser
4.03 A, B N.J. Carr
4.04 A L.H. Sobin
4.04 B N.J. Carr
4.05 I.C. Talbot
4.06 L.H. Sobin
4.07 A L. Aaltonen
4.07 B C. Capella
4.08 A, B J.R. Jass
4.09 A, B L.H. Sobin
4.10 L.H. Sobin
4.11 L. Aaltonen
4.12 C. Capella
4.13 A-D N.J. Carr
4.14 C. Capella
4.15 A N.J. Carr
4.15 B C. Capella
4.16 P. Vogt

Requests for permission to reproduce figures or charts should be directed to the respective contributor. For address see Contributors List.
8.06 A A. Kadar
8.06 B, C S. Hirohashi
8.06 D P. Vogt
8.07 S. Hirohashi
8.08 A, E, I S. Hirohashi
8.08 G, H K. Ishak
8.09 A K. Ishak
8.09 B S. Hirohashi
8.10 A, B S. Hirohashi
8.11 A, B H.P. Fischer
8.12 K. Ishak
8.13 S. Hirohashi
8.14 A-C S. Hirohashi
8.15 A, B S. Hirohashi
8.16 A, B S. Hirohashi
8.17 S. Hirohashi
8.18 A, B I.R. Wanless
8.19 S. Hirohashi
8.20 A, B I.R. Wanless
8.21 A, B I.R. Wanless
8.22 K. Ishak
8.23 S. Hirohashi
8.24 R. Montesano
8.25 H. Ohgaki
8.26 H. Ohgaki
8.27 S. Hirohashi
8.28 V. Vatanasapt
8.29 IARC Press, Lyon
8.30 S. Kudo
8.31 A, B Y. Nakanuma
8.32 A-C Y. Nakanuma
8.33 A, B Y. Nakanuma
8.34 A, B Y. Nakanuma
8.35 Y. Nakanuma
8.36 A Y. Nakanuma
8.36 B-D K. Ishak
8.37 Y. Nakanuma
8.38 A, B H.P. Fischer
8.39 H.P. Fischer
8.40 A, B P. Anthony
8.41 Y. Nakanuma
8.42 A, B H.P. Fischer
8.43 A, B K. Ishak
8.44 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.45 Y. Nakanuma
8.46 A, B Y. Nakanuma
8.47 K. Ishak
8.48 J.T. Stocker
8.49 J.T. Stocker
8.50 A, B J.T. Stocker
8.51 A, B J.T. Stocker
8.52 J.T. Stocker
8.53 K. Ishak
8.54 J.T. Stocker
8.55 J.T. Stocker
8.56 J.T. Stocker
8.57 J.T. Stocker
8.58 A, B J.T. Stocker
8.59 J.T. Stocker
8.60 K. Ishak
8.61 A J.T. Stocker
8.61 B-D K. Ishak
8.62 A-D K. Ishak
8.63 A, B K. Ishak
8.64 P. Anthony
8.65 K. Ishak
8.66 A-F K. Ishak
8.67 A-D K. Ishak
8.68 A-C K. Ishak
8.69 K. Ishak
8.70 A-D K. Ishak
8.71 A C. Wittekind
8.71 B-D H.P. Fischer
8.72 A, B K. Ishak
8.73 A, B K. Ishak
8.74 A, B P. Anthony
8.74 C C. Fenoglio-Preiser
8.74 D P. Anthony
8.74 E, F A. Kadar
8.75 A, B P. Anthony
8.76 A, B P. Anthony
8.77 P. Anthony
8.78 A, B P. Anthony
8.79 P. Anthony
8.80 P. Anthony
8.81 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.82 N. Soehendra
8.83 N. Soehendra
8.84 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.85 A-C J. Albores-Saavedra
8.86 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.87 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.88 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.89 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.90 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.91 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.92 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.93 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.94 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.95 A-C J. Albores-Saavedra
8.96 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.97 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.98 J. Albores-Saavedra
8.99 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.00 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.01 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.02 N. Soehendra
9.03 N. Soehendra
9.04 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.05 A-C J. Albores-Saavedra
9.06 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.07 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.08 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.09 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.10 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.11 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.12 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.13 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.14 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.15 A, B J. Albores-Saavedra
9.16 A, B J. Albores-Saavedra
9.17 A, B J. Albores-Saavedra
9.18 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.19 A-C H.P. Fischer
9.20 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.21 A-C J. Albores-Saavedra
9.22 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.23 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.24 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.25 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.26 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.27 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.28 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.29 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.30 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.31 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.32 J. Albores-Saavedra
9.33 A-B G. Kloppel
9.34 A, B G. Zamboni
9.35 D.S. Longnecker
9.36 P. Vogt
9.37 G. Kloppel
9.38 A-C A. Kadar
9.38 D P. Vogt
9.39 IARC Press, Lyon
9.40 A, B G. Kloppel
9.41 G. Kloppel
9.42 G. Kloppel
9.43 G. Kloppel
9.44 G. Kloppel
9.45 G. Kloppel
9.46 G. Kloppel
9.47 G. Kloppel
9.48 G. Kloppel
9.49 G. Kloppel
9.50 A, B J.T. Stocker
9.51 A, B J.T. Stocker
9.52 J.T. Stocker
9.53 K. Ishak
9.54 J.T. Stocker
9.55 J.T. Stocker
9.56 J.T. Stocker
9.57 J.T. Stocker
9.58 A, B J.T. Stocker
9.59 J.T. Stocker
9.60 K. Ishak
9.61 A J.T. Stocker
9.61 B-D K. Ishak
9.62 A-D K. Ishak
9.63 A, B K. Ishak
9.64 P. Anthony
10.01 IARC Press, Lyon
10.02 G. Kloppel
10.03 A, B G. Kloppel
10.04 G. Kloppel
10.05 D.S. Longnecker
10.06 A G. Kloppel
10.06 B P. Vogt
10.07 P. Vogt
10.08 A G. Kloppel
10.08 B P. Vogt
10.09 P. Vogt
10.10 A G. Zamboni
10.10 B P. Vogt
10.11 G. Zamboni
10.12 A G. Kloppel
10.12 B, C N. J. Carr
10.13 G. Kloppel
10.14 G. Kloppel
10.15 G. Zamboni
10.16 G. Zamboni
10.17 P. Vogt
10.18 G. Zamboni
10.19 G. Kloppel
10.20 G. Zamboni
10.21 A, B G. Zamboni
10.22 G. Kloppel
10.23 A D.S. Longnecker
10.24 G. Zamboni
10.25 G. Kloppel
10.26 G. Kloppel
10.27 G. Kloppel
10.28 G. Zamboni
10.29 D.S. Longnecker
10.30 D.S. Longnecker
10.31 G. Zamboni
10.32 A, B G. Zamboni
10.33 D.S. Longnecker
10.34 A, B G. Zamboni
10.35 D.S. Longnecker
10.36 P. Vogt
10.37 G. Kloppel
10.38 A-C A. Kadar
10.38 D P. Vogt

Source of charts and photographs 263
References

266 References
Peutz-Jeghers syndrome with feminizing 231.
Cantu JM, Rivera H, Ocampo-Campos  
disease and follicular gastritis. Lancet 347:  
Corazza GR, Gasbarrini G (1996). Coeliac  
DA, Wolfman NT, Kute TE (1990). Malignant  
234.
Frigerio B, Solcia E (1980). Gastric carci-  
233.
Capella C, Polak JM, Timson CM,  
232.
Redston MS, Yeo CJ, Kern SE (1994). Detection of K-ras mutations in the stool of  
268
patients with pancreatic adenocarcinoma  
2646-2647.
255. Calvert RJ, Evans PA, Randerston JA,  
231


References 271
272 References


4.8.2006  9:17  Page 273

References


References


4.8.2006 9:17  Page 277


278 References


References


Jejunum-n Challenging the genome. EMBO J 17: 6427-6436.


284 References


References 285


288 References


References 289
References


Cancer 58: 159-163.


Cancer 58: 159-163.


Hereditary Nonpolyposis Colorectal Cancer


References
294 References
supplement (p. 253-314)  4.8.2006  9:17  Page 295


1657. Santoro E, Sacchi M, Scutari F, Carboni F, Graziani F (1997). Primary small intestinal carcinoid tumors that is more specific than CgA. Mod Pathol 11: 728-734.


296 References


References

4.8.2006  9:17  Page 298

298

298

References


References


References 305
## Subject Index

### A

- AAPC, *see* Attenuated colorectal polyposis
- Aberrant crypt foci (ACF), 72, 111
- A-CAG, 53-57
- Acanthosis of the oesophagus, 133
- Acardia syndrome, 185, 188
- Acetaldehyde, 11
- ACF, 111
- Achalasia, 12, 26, 30
- Acidic fibroblast growth factor (aFGF), 79, 82
- Acinar cell carcinoma, 220, 224, 226, 241-245, 249
- Acinar cell cystadenocarcinoma, 242
- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 63, 139-142, 148, 154, 195
- Acral keratoses, 134
- ACTH, 27, 54, 78, 81, 214, 215
- Adenocanthoma, 45
- Adenocarcinoma in situ, 109
- Adenocarcinoma of the OG junction, 33
- Adenoid cystic carcinoma, 10, 24
- Adenoma-carcinoma sequence, 72, 97, 114, 136, 234
- Adenoma malignum of the uterine cervix, 75
- Adenomatoid ductal hyperplasia, 227
- Adenomatosis, 114, 168, 204, 211
- Adenomatous hyperplasia, 158, 167, 168, 227
- Adenomatous polyposis coli, 97, 116, 120, 188, 249
- Adenomatous polyposis, 120, 121, 124, 135, 136
- Adenomucinosis, 96
- Adenomyomatous hyperplasia, 211
- Adenosquamous carcinoma, 10, 24, 35, 38, 45, 70, 72, 104, 105, 109, 177, 204, 209, 220, 221, 225
- Adrenal adenomas, 56
- Adrenocortical carcinomas, 115
- Adult T-cell leukaemia/lymphoma, 250
- Advanced gastric cancer, 51
- AE 1, 153
- AFB1, 161, 170
- aFGF, 79, 82
- Aflatoxin B1, 159-161, 170
- AFP, *see* Alpha-fetoprotein
- Aggressive angiomylipoma, 154
- AIB1, 228, 229
- AIDS, *see* Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
- AJCC, 34, 51
- Akt/PKB, 134
- AKT2, 36, 228, 229
- Alanine aminotransferase (ALT), 162
- Albumin, 165, 200, 201
- Alcohol, 11, 21, 39, 71, 106, 159-161, 185, 199
- Alcohol embryopathy, 185
- Aldehyde dehydrogenase, 2, 11, 106
- ALK1, 88
- ALKS, 228
- Alkaline phosphatase (ALP), 162, 200
- Alpha 1-antichymotrypsin, 187, 195, 247
- Alpha 1-antitrypsin, 160, 165, 187, 201, 247, 248, 163, 184, 187 162, 163, 172, 184, 189, 200, 202, 245, 247
- Alpha-1-antitrypsin deficiency, 160, 170
- Alpha heavy chain disease (AHCD), 83
- Alpha-catenin, 180
- Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), 162, 165, 168, 208, 241, 242, 244, 245
- Alpha-irradiation, 174
- Alport syndrome, 29
- Amelanotic melanoma, 201
- Amphiregulin, 50
- Ampullary of Vater, 71, 72, 77, 205, 207, 220, 222, 237
- Ampullary somatostatin cell tumour, 79
- Amsterdam Criteria, 126
- Amylase, 235, 237, 248
- Amylin (IAPP), 226
- Anal adenocarcinomas, 151, 153
- Anal intraepithelial neoplasia (AIN), 150
- Anal squamous intraepithelial lesion (ASIL), 150
- Anal tag, 155
- Anaplastic large cell lymphoma, 250
- Androgenic-anabolic steroids, 198
- Angiomyolipoma, 158, 193
- Angiosarcoma, 70, 90, 104, 142, 158, 184, 191, 192, 196, 198, 201, 216
- Anisocytosis, 185
- Antioxidants, 106
- AP12-MLT, 86, 141
- APC, 25, 36, 49, 50, 74, 98, 111, 113, 114, 116, 120, 121, 123-125, 128, 171, 188
- APC germline mutation, 124
- APQ, 25
- Apomucin, 174
- Apoptosis, 15, 18, 41, 85, 116, 118, 119, 134, 149, 151, 170, 180
- Appendiceal adenocarcinoma, 95, 97
- Appendiceal EC-cell carcinoids, 99
- Appendiceal neumoma, 102
- Argentaffin, 27, 54, 55, 78, 81, 100, 138, 235
- Argentaffin, serotonin-producing, carcinoids, 78
- Argyrophil cells, 100
- Argyrophil tumours, 54
- Ashkenazi Jews, 114
- Aspartate amino transferase (AST), 162
- Aspergillus flavus, 161
- Aspergillus parasiticus, 161
- Astrocytoma, 123, 169
- Ataxia-telangiectasia, 170, 230

### B

- B73.2, 231, 240, 242, 245
- Back-to-back glands, 212
- Bannayan-Riley-Ruvalcaba syndrome (BRR), 134
- Barrett oesophagus, 20-26, 33, 34, 36
- Basal cell carcinoma, 153, 155
- Basal cell hyperplasia, 16
- Basaloid carcinoma, 149
- Basaloid squamous cell carcinoma, 10, 15
- Basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), 53, 79, 82, 172
- BAT26, 117, 127, 128
- BAX, 50, 116-118, 128
- B-cell lymphoma, 38, 60, 61, 83, 84, 86, 104, 140, 141, 190, 250
- B-cell MALT lymphomas, 57
- Bcl-1, 61, 85, 86, 140, 141
- Bcl-2, 27, 59, 61, 68, 116, 180, 190, 217
- Bcl-10, 61, 86, 141
- BCL3, 36
- BCL-6, 61, 141
- BDA, 179
- Beckwith-Wiedeman syndrome, 185, 188, 244, 245
- Ber EP4, 153, 155, 163
- Beta-catenin, 111, 113, 123, 171, 180
- Beta-endorphin, 138
- BFGF, *see* Basic fibroblast growth factor
- Bilateral talipes, 185
- Bile duct adenoma (BDA), 179
- Bile duct cystadenocarcinoma, 158, 182
- Bile duct cholangiocarcinoma, 182
- Bile reflux, 39
- Biliary adenofibroma, 179
- Biliary atresia, 170
- Biliary cystadenoma, 211
- Biliary intraepithelial neoplasia, 178

Subject Index 307
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biliary microhamartoma, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biliary papillomatosis, 158, 175, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilroth II operation, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blasatic cells, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood group A, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bornmann classification, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowen disease, 150, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bowenoid papulosis, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brain tumours, 115, 126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCA 1, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCA 2, 49, 116, 228-230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breast cancer, 66, 67, 115, 133, 134, 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budd-Chiari syndrome, 185, 191, 196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burkitt lymphoma, 61, 70, 83, 85, 86, 104, 139, 140, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burkitt-like/atypical Burkitt-lymphoma, 70, 86, 104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buschke-Lowenstein tumour, 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bussey-Gardner polyposis, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byler syndrome, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. sinensis, 173, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA 19-9, 182, 212, 222, 224, 231, 233, 235-237, 240, 247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA 15-3, 235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA 125, 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CagA, 40, 41, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cajal cells, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcitonin, 27, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cAMP-dependent protein kinase (PKA), 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAR-5, 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrate metabolism disorders, 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoembryonic antigen, 163, 187, 209, 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoid, 82, 137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinoma in situ, 10, 14, 15, 22, 38, 70, 94, 97, 104, 146, 150, 158, 167, 202, 204, 205, 211-214, 220, 227, 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinomas with 'medullary' histology, 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinomatous cirrhosis, 132, 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinosarcoma, 14, 110, 158, 198, 209, 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac tumour syndrome, 191</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caroli disease, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caspase 5, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catenins, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cathepsin D, 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cathepsin-L, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cavernous haemangioma, 191, 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCL, 27, 59, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD2, 88, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD3, 88, 127, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD4, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD5, 27, 59, 61, 85, 86, 88, 140, 190, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD7, 88, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD8, 88, 127, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD10, 27, 59, 61, 85, 86, 140, 190, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD11c, 85, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD16, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD19, 85, 86, 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD20, 27, 59, 85, 86, 140, 190, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD21, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD22, 86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD23, 59, 85, 86, 190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD30, 88, 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD31, 29, 90, 142, 195, 196, 198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD34, 28, 29, 63, 65, 90, 142, 143, 164, 169, 185, 192, 194-196, 198, 202, 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD35, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD43, 27, 59, 85, 140, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD44, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD56, 88, 190, 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD68, 164, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD79a, 27, 59, 86, 190, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD95, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD103, 61, 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD117, 28, 63, 65, 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD138 (syndecan-1), 141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD141, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDK4, 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN2A, 17, 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEA, see Carcinoembryonic antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cell cycle control, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrocye-like (CCL) cell, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellular leiomyoma, 62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c-erbB-2, 19, 25, 36, 51, 151, 180, 213, 224, 238, 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar dysplastic gangliocytoma, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children's Cancer Study Group (CCSG) classification, 187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholangiocarcinoma, 159, 164, 170, 173-175, 177, 179-181, 183, 196, 201, 202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholangiography, 175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholangiolocellular carcinoma, 177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholangitis, 174, 175, 178, 206, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholate stasis, 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterolthiasis, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chondrosarcoma, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choriocarcinoma, 45, 110, 201, 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chorionic gonadotrophin, 78, 184, 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromoendoscopy, 12, 107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromogranin A, 54, 55, 78, 81, 100, 101, 155, 167, 215, 232, 247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chromosomal instability, 116, 117, 128, 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic alpha-irradiation, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic atrophic gastritis, 46, 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic cholestasis, 169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic cholestatic syndromes, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic gastritis, 33, 40, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pancreatitis, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic ulcerative colitis, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHRPE, see Congenital hypertrophy of the retinal pigment epithelium, 125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chymotrypsin, 224, 242, 244, 248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciliated cell carcinoma, 226, 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circularisation, 238, 240, 247, 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenocarcinoma, 95, 98, 182, 183, 204, 208, 211, 220, 234-236, 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystadenoma, 97, 98, 158, 182, 183, 204, 208, 211, 220, 231-234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic disease fluid protein, 153, 157, 202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystothioninuria, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytochrome P-450, 106, 161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytotheratin, 44, 92, 149, 163, 176, 181, 202, 209, 224, 225, 231, 236, 238, 240, 247, 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytokeratin 7, 20, 92, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DALM, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCC (deleted in colon cancer), 36, 49, 114, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-cell, 77, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DCIS, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Des-gamma-carboxyprothrombin (DCP), 162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desmoid tumour, 120-122, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desmoplasia, 45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Diabetes mellitus, 78, 194, 221, 235
Diffuse carcinoma, 39, 44
Diffuse hyperplasia, 97, 112
Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL), 24, 38, 39, 42, 60, 61, 70, 83, 84, 86, 104, 140, 141, 215
DLC1 gene, 17, 18
DNA methylation, 172
DNA methyltransferase, 172
DNA mismatch repair, 117, 129, 228, 229
DNA repair errors (RER), 116
DNMT1, 172
Down syndrome, 185
DPC4, 132, 228, 229, 240
Down syndrome, 185
Dystrophic gangliocytoma of the cerebellum, 131
Dysplastic gangliocytoma of the cerebellum, 132
Dysplastic nodules, 158, 167-169

E

Early gastric cancer, 41, 45, 51
EBV see Epstein-Barr virus
E-cadherin, 25, 49, 50, 116, 123, 129, 172, 180, 224
EC-cell, 55, 79-82, 100, 137, 138
Gastrin, 53-56, 77-82, 100, 137, 138
Gastrointestinal stromal tumour, 78
Gastrointestinal autonomic nerve tumour
Gastrointestinal tumours, 134
Gastrointestinal polyposis syndromes, 134
Gastrointestinal stromal tumour (GIST), 10, 28, 29, 62, 64, 65, 70, 94, 104, 142
Gastrointestinal tumour
Gastrointestinal tumours, 134
Genetic instability, 171
Genitourinary tumours, 134
GERD (high risk group for adenocarcinoma), 33, 34, 36
Germline APC mutation, 115
Germline CDH1 mutations, 49
Germline mutations, 49, 73, 115, 123, 124, 128, 129, 132, 228, 229
Giant (malignant) condyloma, 149
Giant cell carcinoma, 225
GIST, see Gastrointestinal stromal tumour
Glicentin, 81, 100, 138
Globoid extracellular collagen accumulations, 90
Globular hyaline bodies, 165
Glucomannan, 38, 65
GLP-1, 100, 138
GLP-2, 100, 138
Glucagon, 78, 81, 100, 101, 202, 248
Glucagon-like peptide and PP/PYY-producing
Globinoid capsularis, 194, 196, 198
Glutathione S-transferase, 25, 106
E1A gene, 58
Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), 17, 18, 25, 36, 79, 213
Epidermoid cysts, 120, 121
Epidermoid metaplasia, 227
Epithelial membrane antigen (EMA), 153, 163, 215, 236, 238, 240
Epithelioid granulomas, 152
Epithelioid haemangioendothelioma, 158, 191, 195
Epstein Barr virus, 61, 85, 87, 141, 174, 177, 190, 194
Erythrocytosis, 162
Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), 48, 49, 71-74, 97, 114, 120-127, 130, 135, 170, 188
Familial atypical multiple mole melanoma (FAMMM), 228
Familial breast cancer, 230
Gastrinoma, 53-57, 70, 94, 104, 142
Gastro-oesophageal reflux, 20, 21, 33
G-cell (gastroin-producing) tumours, 53, 54, 77, 78
Gastritis, 40, 46
Gastric adenocarcinoma, 42
Gastric adenomas, 47, 122
Gastric mucin MUC5AC, 136
Gastric adenocarcinoma, 221, 223-227, 230, 235, 243
Duodenal gastrin-cell tumours, 78
DUPAN-2, 222, 224, 236, 240, 245
Dye endoscopy, 47
Dysphagia, 12, 23, 26-28, 30, 34
Dysplasia associated lesion or mass (DALM), 114
Dysplastic gangliocytoma of the cerebellum, 132
Dysplastic nodules, 158, 167-169

Subject Index 309
Heterozygous alpha-antitrypsin deficiency, 185
HIV-8, see Human herpesvirus
HIC-1 (hypermethylated-in-cancer) tumour suppressor gene, 172
High-frequency microsatellite instability (MSI-H), 117
High-grade B-cell lymphomas, 57
High-grade dysplasia, 49
High-grade glandular intraepithelial neoplasia, 70, 104
High-grade intraepithelial neoplasia, 15, 23, 114, 212, 227
High-grade lymphoma, 60
Histamine, 54
Histidine decarboxylase, 54
HIV, 29, 58, 65, 85, 86, 102, 139, 141, 147, 148, 154, 185, 190, 250
HLA, 151
HMB-45, 151, 154, 193, 199, 201
HMHS, 50, 73, 74, 117, 136
hMSH2, 50, 73, 74
hMSH3, 50
HNPCC, see Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer
Hodgkin disease, 57, 61
Horseshoe kidney, 185
Hot beverages, 11
HP, 171
HPV, see Human papillomavirus
HST-1, 17
HST-2, 17
Human herpesvirus (HHV-8), 8, 90, 142, 195
Human leukocyte antigens (HLAs), 151
Human papillomavirus (HPV), 11, 16, 147, 151-153
5-Hydroxy-tryptophan, 54
Hypercalcemia, 26, 162, 165, 222
Hyperchromasia, 178, 185, 195
Hypertrichosis, 53, 55, 56, 77
Hypermethylation, 25, 50, 172, 228, 229
Hyperplasia, 54, 158, 178, 210
Hyperplastic (metaplastic) polyp, 48, 94, 97, 112, 113, 135, 136
Hyperplastic nodule, 168
Hyperplastic polyposis, 135, 136
Hypertrrophic osteoarthropathy, 131
Hypoalbuminemia, 132
Hypoglycemia, 162, 185, 222
Hyperkalaemia-achlor-hydria (WDHA) syndrome, 26
IGF-1 receptors, 82
IGF1, 36
IGF2, 128, 172
Hepatitis D virus (HDV), 160
Hepatitis C virus (HCV), 159-161, 170, 174, 190
Hepatitis B virus (HBV), 159, 160
Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), 159-161
Hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg), 160
Hepatitis B virus (HBV), 159, 160
Hepatitis C virus (HCV), 159-161, 170, 174, 190
Hepatitis D virus (HDV), 160
Hepatoblastoma, 122, 124, 158, 184-188
Hepatocellular adenoma, 158, 188-187, 184, 188
Hepatocellular carcinoma, 158-173, 175-177, 180, 181, 184, 185, 193, 199-201, 201
Hepatocyte growth factor, 50
Hepatocyte growth factor receptor (MET), 180
Hepatoid adenocarcinoma, 45
Hepatolithiasis, 174-176, 178, 180, 182
Hepatomegaly, 162, 190, 191, 196, 200
Hepatosplenitic T-cell lymphoma, 190
HER-2/neu, 36, 228, 229
Hereditary diffuse gastric carcinoma (HDGC), 49
Hereditary haemorrhagic telangiectasia, 170
Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), 49, 52, 73, 97, 114, 117, 123, 126-128, 132-134
Hereditary pancreatitis, 221, 228, 230
Hereditary tyrosinaemia, 170
Hernia, 185, 188
Heterocyclic amines, 106
IGFRII, 50
Immunoglobulin heavy-chain (IgH), 86
Immunoproliferative small intestinal disease (IPSID), 83, 84, 86, 139
Immunosuppression, 58
In situ carcinoma, 10, 70, 104, 146, 158, 204, 212, 220
In vitro protein synthesis (IVPS) testing, 125
Incomplete squamous metaplasia, 227
Infantile haemangiendothelioma, 158, 184, 187, 191, 192
Inflammatory Bowel disease (IBD), 83, 87, 88, 105, 113, 137, 142, 152
Inflammatory myoepithelial polypl, 155
Inflammatory polyplys, 113
Inflammatory pseudotumour, 158, 191, 194
Inguinal hernia, 185
Inorganic arsenic, 196
Insulin, 78, 82, 136, 172, 199, 202, 248
Insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1), 82, 199
Insulin-like growth factor-II receptor, 172
Int-2, 19
Integrin, 17, 134
Interleukin-1, 8, 40
Interleukin-1-a, cripto, 50
International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O), 10, 38, 70, 94, 104, 146, 158, 204, 220
Intestinal cells of Cajal, 62, 216
Intestinal carcinoma, 42, 44
Intestinal duplication, 72
Intestinal metastasis, 20, 21, 33-36, 40, 44, 46-48, 238
Intestinal mucin MUC4, 136
Intestinal T-cell lymphoma (ITL), 87
Intraductal papillary cholangiocarcinoma, 175
Intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasms (IPMNs), 226, 234
Intraductal papillary neoplasms, 237
Intraductal papillary-mucinous adenoma, 220, 2252, 37, 239
Intraductal papillary-mucinous carcinoma, 220, 228, 237, 239
Intraepithelial neoplasia in Barrett oesophagus, 21
Intraglandular carcinoma, 35
Intrahepatic (peripheral) cholangiocarcinoma, 158, 165, 173-180
Intrahepatic bile duct adenoma, 158
Intrahepatic metastases, 163, 166-167, 174
Intrahepatic peribiliary cysts, 179
Intramuscular carcinoma, 48
Intramuscular neoplasia, 109
Intussusception, 75, 76, 83, 130
Invasive ductal adenocarcinoma, 227
Invasive mucinous cystadenocarcinoma, 235, 236
IPSID, see Immunoproliferative small intestinal disease
Irradiation, 106
Isosexual precocity, 185

310 Subject Index
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-acetyltransferases, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural killer (NK) cell lymphomas, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCAM, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative for intraepithelial neoplasia, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephroblastomas, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEPPK, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neural adhesion molecule (NCAM), 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurilemmoma, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroblastoma, 185, 186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroendocrine tumour, 155, 153, 199-201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurofibroma, 142, 154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurofibromatosis, 64, 65, 79, 128, 142, 170, 216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurofibromatosis type I (NF1), 65, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurokinin A, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurona, 94, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuron specific enolase (NSE), 247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurotensin, 78, 81, 138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitric oxide (NO), 40, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitric oxide synthase, 36, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrosamines, 11, 21, 39-41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N-nitroso compounds, 40, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nodular regenerative hyperplasia (NRH), 158, 169, 184, 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nodular transformation, 158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nodule-in-nodule, 166, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-ECL-cell gastric carcinoids, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-biliary cirrhosis, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Hodgkin lymphoma, 57, 83, 85, 190, 202, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-medullary thyroid carcinoma, 132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonmucinous, glycogen-poor cyst-adenocarcinoma, 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRAS, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRTK1, 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nucleotide instability, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nutrition, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O. viverrini, see Opisthorchis viverrini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Octreotide, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oesophagitis, 11, 16, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oesophageal junction, 20, 21, 32-36, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oestrogen receptor, 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovarian cancer, 104, 112, 113, 138, 210, 229, 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, 48, 49, 70, 73-75, 97, 104, 112, 113, 138, 210, 229, 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistent ductus arteriosus, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phaeochromocytoma, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phospholipase A2, 248</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-triphosphate (PIP3), 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI3 kinase pathway, 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PikZ type, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLA2G2A, 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (PAI-1), 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleomorphic large cell carcinoma, 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMS2 (Postmeiotic segregation 2), 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMS1 (Postmeiotic segregation 1), 124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMS2 (Postmeiotic segregation 2), 124, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma, 110, 127, 176, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly differentiated HCC, 166, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population-based study, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porphyria cutanea tarda (PCT), 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcelain gallbladder, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porphyria cutanea tarda (PCT), 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porphyrin metabolism, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postirritative aldosterone (PCT), 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP cells, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP/PYY immunoreactive cells, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCNA, 18, 36, 185, 238, 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDGF, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pectin excavatum, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peliosis hepatis-like change, 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pen A type, 46, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pen B type, 46, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peutz-Jeghers syndrome, 48, 49, 70, 73-75, 97, 104, 112, 113, 138, 210, 229, 230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma, 110, 127, 176, 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poorly differentiated neuroendocrine carcinoma, 221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Population-based study, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porcelain gallbladder, 207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porphyria cutanea tarda (PCT), 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porphyrin metabolism, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postirritative aldosterone (PCT), 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP cells, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP/PYY immunoreactive cells, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCNA, 18, 36, 185, 238, 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDGF, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pectin excavatum, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peliosis hepatis-like change, 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pen A type, 46, 51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sarcomatous ICC, 177
Sarcomatous HCC, 165
Sarcoma, 28, 29, 62, 64, 90, 115, 133, 142, 143,
Reflux, 20, 22, 25, 33, 39, 206
Recurrent pyogenic cholangitis, 174
Rectal L-cells, 138
Reactive oxygen species, 106
Rectal carcinoids, 137
Rectal L-cells, 138
Recurrent pyogenic cholangitis, 174
Reed-Sternberg-like cells, 84
Reflex, 20, 22, 25, 33, 39, 206
Reflex oesophagitis, 33
Renal cell carcinoma, 165, 199, 201, 249, 251
Replacing growth, 167
Rhabdoid tumour, 158
Rhabdomyoma, 154
Rhabdomyosarcoma, 10, 28, 29, 154, 158, 186,
204, 209
Ril, 129
S
S-100, 29, 63, 65, 78, 90, 100-102, 137, 151, 154,
187, 201, 216, 232, 247
Saccharomyces cerevisiae SNF1 kinase, 76
Sarcoma, 28, 29, 62, 64, 90, 115, 133, 142, 143,
158, 165, 177, 186, 194, 195, 199, 201, 202,
209, 216, 236
Sarcomatoid carcinoma, 110, 225
Sarcomatoid HCC, 165
Sarcomatous HCC, 165
Sarcomatous ICC, 177
SCC, see Squamous cell carcinoma
Schnitzel-Geidion syndrome, 185
Schwannomas, 38, 85
Sclerosing hepatic carcinoma, 165
Sebaceous gland tumours, 126
Secondary squamous cell carcinoma (SCC), 13
Secretory phospholipase Pla2g2a, 124
SEER data, 28, 62, 64, 71, 74, 90, 95, 98, 99,
105, 142, 160, 196, 216
Serotonin, 54, 55, 80, 101, 101, 137, 138, 208,
210, 211, 213, 215, 226
Serotonin-producing enterochromaffin (EC)-cell carcinoids, 80, 99
Serous cystadenocarcinoma, 231, 233
Serous cystadenoma, 224, 231
Serious microcystic adenoma, 231, 233
Serious olygocystic adenoma, 232, 233
Serrated adenoma, 135, 136
Serrated adenomatous polyposis, 136
Sertoli cell tumours of the testis, 75
Serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase (SGOT), 200
Severe ductal dysplasia, 227
Sex cord tumours with annular tubules (SCTAT) of the ovary, 75
Signet-ring cell carcinoma, 38, 39, 44, 67,
70, 71, 94-96, 104, 105, 109, 111, 177, 204,
208, 213, 220, 221, 225
Signet-ring cells, 24, 43, 49, 96, 177, 215
Signet-ring lymphoma, 44
Situs inversus, 170
Skeinoid fibers, 90
Skin angioblastomas, 56
Slow acetylation genotypes, 125
SMAD2, 132, 229
SMAD3, 132
SMAD4, 74, 132
SMAD4/DPC4 tumour suppressor gene, 132
Small bowel adenocarcinomas, 74
Small cell (anaplastic) carcinoma, 149
Small cell carcinoma (poorly differentiated
dedocrine neoplasm), 10, 24, 26, 27, 35, 38,
45, 53-55, 70, 72, 77, 78, 80, 94, 104, 105, 117,
137, 138, 146, 149, 200-202, 204, 209,
214-216, 251
Small cell dysplasia, 168
Small cell undifferentiated hepatoblastoma, 186
Small intestinal lymphomas, 83, 86
Small lymphocytic lymphoma, 86
Smoking, 26, 106, 147, 159, 221
Snare polypectomy, 108
Soft tissue sarcomas, 63, 115
Solid pseudopapillary tumour, 220, 246, 249
Solid-cystic tumour, 246
Solitary fibrous tumour, 158, 191, 194
Somatostatin, 54, 77-81, 100, 138, 202, 210,
215, 248
Somatostatin cell tumours, 70, 77-80
Soto syndrome, 170
Span-1, 222, 224
Speckled penis, 134
Sphincter of Oddi, 80, 205, 206
Spindle cell carcinoma, 10, 14, 15, 110
Spindle cell lipoma, 154
Splenomegaly, 162, 196, 202
Squamous columnar junction, 21, 32
Squamous cell carcinoma, 10-19, 14-16,
24-25, 30, 38, 45, 70, 104, 105, 109, 114,
146-151, 153, 155, 177, 201, 202, 204, 209
Squamous cell dysplasia, 150
Squamous cell papilloma, 10, 16, 153
Squamous metaplasia, 227
STK11, 49, 75, 76, 228-230
Substance P, 81, 82, 100, 138
Survivin, 118
Sustentacular cells, 79, 100, 137, 216
Synovial sarcoma, 29
Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine (SNOMED), 10, 38, 70, 94, 104, 146, 158,
204, 220
T
Tachykinins, 81
TGF beta, 224, 225
T-cell leukaemia/lymphoma (ATLL), 61
T-cell lymphoma, 27, 61, 70, 83, 87, 88, 190
T-cell receptor gene, 190
Telomerase, 51, 178, 180
Tensin, 133
Teratoma, 158, 187, 220
Terminal hepatic venules (THV), 196
Thrombospondin, 174, 178, 196-198
Thymidylate synthetase, 118
Thyroid cancer, 133
Thyroid carcinoma, 124, 133
TIA-1, 190
Tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases, 118
Tissue-type plasminogen activator, 118
TNF, 199
TNM classification, 10, 13, 18, 19, 24, 38,
51, 52, 70, 72, 94, 95, 104, 109, 119, 146, 148,
156, 162, 187, 204, 205, 207, 220, 223
Tobacco, 11, 17, 21, 39, 147, 228
TOC, 17, 18
Toluidine blue, 12
Topoisomerase II alpha, 114
TP53, 17-19, 25, 36, 49, 50, 86, 101-114, 116,
119, 124, 138, 136, 141, 160, 162, 170-172,
179, 180, 188, 198, 208, 213, 214, 216,
228, 229, 232, 240, 243
TP53 mutations, 17, 25, 50, 114, 116, 170, 180,
188, 198
Trabecular pattern, 100, 164-167
Transcription-coupled repair, 129
Transforming growth factor receptor, 50, 132,
228, 229
Transforming growth factor, 36, 50, 53, 74, 79,
82, 185, 172
Trichilemmoma, 128, 132-134
Triomys 3, 61, 86, 141, 172
Triomys 18, 185, 1882, 129
Triomys 21, 50, 188, 172
Trypsin, 172, 224, 232, 242, 244, 248
TSHR, 172, 362
Tuberculosis, 193
Tubular adenocarcinomas, 43
Tubular adenoma, intestinal type, 210

Subject Index 313
Tubular adenoma, pyloric-gland type, 210
Tubular carcinoma, 94, 99-101, 204
Tubulo-papillary adenoma, 211
Tumour infiltrating (intra-epithelial) lymphocytes (TIL), 127
Tumour malformation, 191, 192
Tumour necrosis factor (TNF), 199
Turcot syndrome, 120, 123, 126, 129
Tylosis, 12, 17
Tylosis oesophageal cancer (TOC) gene, 17
Type 1a glycogen storage disease, 185, 188
Type A (insular) argentaffin carcinoid of the ileum, 82
Type I ECL-cell carcinoids, 53
Type II ECL-cell carcinoids, 53-56
Type III ECL-cell carcinoids, 53, 54, 57
Type IV collagen, 164

U

UEA 1, 153, 185
Ulcerative colitis, 22, 71, 83, 95, 97, 106, 114, 137, 139, 152, 174, 206, 207
Umbilical hernia, 185
Umbilication, 201
Undifferentiated "embryonal" sarcoma, 184
Undifferentiated (anaplastic) carcinoma, 220, 221, 225
Undifferentiated carcinoma, 10, 38, 45, 70, 94, 104, 105, 110, 146, 158, 165, 204, 209
Undifferentiated carcinoma with osteoclast-like giant cells, 220, 221, 225
Uncryptal adenomas, 121
UPA, 25
Urease, 40
Urokinase, 118
Uterine leiomyomas, 132

V

VacA, 40
Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), 172
Vascular leiomyosarcoma, 201
Vasoactive intestinal peptide, 202
Verrucous (squamous) carcinoma, 10, 14, 149
Vesicular monoamine transporter type 2 (VMAT-2), 54
VHL, see Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome
Villiform hyperplasia, 22
Vimentin, 165, 183, 187, 224, 225, 232, 236, 247, 249
Vinyl chloride monomer, 196, 198
Vinyl chloride monomer (VCM), 196
Viral protein E6, 151
Virulent cagA vacA s1a H. pylori, 41
Von Hippel-Lindau syndrome, 114, 216, 231, 232
Von Meyenburg complex (biliary microhamartoma), 174, 178
Von Recklinghausen disease, 79
Von Willebrand factor, 90, 196

W

WDHA, see Hypokalaemia-achlor-hydria syndrome
Well differentiated endocrine carcinomas (malignant carcinoids), 215
Well differentiated endocrine neoplasm, 26, 27, 38, 54, 70, 94, 137
Well differentiated HCC, 166
Well differentiated tubular adenocarcinomas, 35
Western type B-cell lymphoma of MALT, 70
WGA, 78
Wilms tumour, 185
Wilson's disease, 170
Wingless/Wnt pathway, 123, 171

X

Xanthomas, 44

Y

Yolk sac tumour, 158

Z

Z line, 20, 21
ZES, 53-56, 77-79
Zinc-2-glycoprotein, 202
Zollinger-Ellison Syndrome (ZES), 53, 77, 214, 216